

Digitized Automation for a Changing World

AX-8 Series Operation Manual



AX-8 Series Operation Manual

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 Product Introduction

| 1.1 0 | verview1· | -2 |
|-------|--|----|
| 1.1.1 | Related Manuals 1 | -2 |
| 1.1.2 | Model Descriptions | -3 |
| 1.2 D | IADesigner-AX Software Overview1 | -6 |
| 1.2.1 | Features | -6 |
| 1.3 E | lectrical Safety Precautions1 | -7 |
| 1.3.1 | Electrical Safety Precautions (English)1 | -7 |
| 1.3.2 | Précautions de sécurité électrique (Français)1 | -8 |

Chapter 2 Specifications and System Configurations

| 2.1 | Ge | eneral Specifications | 2-2 |
|------|------|--|-----|
| 2.2 | CP | 2 Module Specifications | 2-4 |
| 2.2. | 1 F | Functional Specifications | 2-4 |
| 2.2. | 2 6 | Electrical Specifications | 2-9 |
| 2.2. | .3 (| CPU Module Profiles 2- | -11 |
| 2.2. | .4 (| CPU Module Input/Output Terminals 2- | -14 |
| 2.2. | 5 \ | Wiring Configuration 2- | -15 |
| 2. | 2.5. | .1 AX-800EP0000T Wiring 2- | -15 |
| 2. | 2.5. | .2 AX-800EP0000P Wiring 2- | -16 |
| 2. | 2.5. | .3 AX-800EP0000T, AX-800EP0000P Wiring | -17 |
| 2. | 2.5. | .4 AX-8H1E30CD2T Wiring 2- | -19 |

Chapter 3 Installing Hardware and Getting Started

| 3.1 | Ins | stalling Hardware3 | 3-2 |
|------|------|--|-----|
| 3.1. | 1 | Installing and Uninstalling an SD Card | 3-2 |
| 3.1. | 2 | Installing on a Mounting Rail | 3-3 |
| 3.1. | 3 | Installing in the Control Cabinet | 3-5 |
| 3. | 1.3. | 1 Installation on a DIN Rail | 3-5 |
| 3. | 1.3. | 2 Installation in the Control Cabinet | 3-6 |
| 3. | 1.3. | 3 Ambient Temperature Requirements for the Control Cabinet | 3-7 |

| | 3.1.3 | .4 Measures to Enhance Anti-interference Ability | -7 |
|-----|-------|---|----|
| | 3.1.3 | .5 Dimension Requirements for the Control Cabinet | -7 |
| 3.2 | In | stalling and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX3 | -8 |
| 3. | 2.1 | Installing DIADesigner-AX 3 | -9 |
| 3. | 2.2 | Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX | 14 |
| 3.3 | Ge | etting Started and Setting up Communication | 15 |
| 3. | 3.1 | Getting Started | 15 |
| 3. | 3.2 | Setting up Communication | 16 |

Chapter 4 Basic Operation

| 4.1 Ir | ntro | duction to DIADesigner-AX | |
|--------|------------------|---------------------------|------|
| 4.1.1 | Cre | ating a New Project | 4-3 |
| 4.2 Se | ettir | igs on the Device Page | |
| 4.2.1 | CPL | J Parameter Settings | 4-6 |
| 4.2.1 | 1.1 | Communication Settings | 4-6 |
| 4.2.1 | .2 | Applications | 4-9 |
| 4.2.1 | .3 | Backup and Restore | 4-10 |
| 4.2.1 | .4 | Files | 4-11 |
| 4.2.1 | 1.5 | Log | 4-11 |
| 4.2.1 | .6 | PLC Settings | 4-13 |
| 4.2.1 | .7 | PLC Shell | 4-15 |
| 4.2.1 | .8 | User and Groups | 4-16 |
| 4.2.1 | .9 | Access Rights | 4-20 |
| 4.2.1 | .10 | Symbol Rights | 4-26 |
| 4.2.1 | 1.11 | System Settings | 4-28 |
| 4.2.1 | .12 | System Parameters | 4-30 |
| 4.2.1 | .13 | Task Deployment | 4-31 |
| 4.2.1 | 1.14 | Status | 4-32 |
| 4.2.1 | .15 | Information | 4-32 |
| 4.3 Da | ata [·] | Type and Variables | 4-33 |
| 4.3.1 | Dat | а Туре | 4-33 |
| 4.3.2 | Var | iables | 4-34 |
| 4.3.2 | 2.1 | Declaration of Variables | 4-34 |
| 4.3.2 | 2.2 | Address Assignment | 4-35 |
| 4.3.2 | 2.3 | Variables | 4-37 |
| 4.3.2 | 2.4 | User-defined Data Type | 4-42 |

| 4.3.2 | 2.5 | Timing for the Variable being Cleared to Zero 4 | -45 |
|-------|-----|---|-----|
| 4.3.2 | 2.6 | Timing for the Default Value to be Valid 4 | -45 |
| | | 4 | |
| 4.4.1 | Tas | k Configuration 4 | -46 |
| 4.4.1 | 1.1 | Task Type 4 | -46 |
| 4.4.1 | 1.2 | Bus Cycle Task 4 | -47 |
| 4.4.1 | 1.3 | Watchdog 4 | -48 |
| 4.4.1 | 1.4 | Motion Instructions for Each Type of Task 4 | -49 |
| 4.5 R | | e Manager4 | |
| 4.5.1 | Rec | ipe Manager 4 | -54 |
| 4.5.2 | Rec | ipe Definition 4 | -56 |
| 4.5.3 | Rec | ipeManCommands 4 | -58 |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Chapter 5 Hardware Configuration

| 5.1 | Hardware Configuration5 | -2 |
|------|--|----|
| 5.1. | Environment of Hardware Configuration5 | -2 |

Chapter 6 Network Configuration

| 6-2 | 1 Network Configuration | 6.1 N |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-------|
| | 6.1.1 Introduction | 6.1.1 |
| | 6.1.2 Basic Knowledge | 6.1.2 |
| | 6.1.3 Creating a Network Topology | 6.1.3 |
| | 6.1.3.1 Creating Station Nodes | 6.1. |
| | 6.1.3.2 Creating Connections | 6.1. |

Chapter 7 Basic Settings & Operation of Motion Control

| 7.1 | Overview of Motion Control Instructions | 7-4 |
|------|---|------|
| 7.1. | .1 Motion Control Instructions | |
| 7.1. | .2 Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions | 7-4 |
| 7.1. | .3 Categories of Motion Control Instructions | |
| | | |
| 7.2 | Creating Motion Control Project | 7-5 |
| 7.2. | 2.1 Flowchart | |
| 7.2. | 2.2 Process for Creating a Project | 7-5 |
| | | |
| 7.3 | Commissioning | 7-10 |
| 7.3. | 3.1 Procedure for Commissioning | 7-10 |

| 7.3.2 Exa | ample of Axis Parameter Settings | 7-10 |
|-----------|---|------|
| 7.3.3 Per | forming Axes Commissioning | 7-11 |
| 7.4 Motic | on Control Device | 7-15 |
| 7.4.1 Axi | s Setting | 7-15 |
| 7.4.2 Axi | s Introduction | 7-15 |
| 7.4.2.1 | Introduction to Axis Parameters | 7-16 |
| 7.4.2.2 | Axis Application in the Program | 7-25 |
| 7.4.3 Pro | cedure for Single-axis Configuration | 7-26 |
| 7.4.4 Axi | s Group Settings | 7-33 |
| 7.4.4.1 | Introduction to Axis Group Parameters | 7-33 |
| 7.4.4.2 | Using Axis Groups in the Program | 7-35 |
| 7.4.5 Pro | cess for Axis Group Configuration | 7-36 |
| 7.5 Motic | on Axis Variables | 7-41 |
| 7.5.1 Va | riables for Single Axis | 7-41 |
| 7.5.2 Va | riables for Axis Group | 7-44 |
| 7.6 Motic | on Control Programming | 7-47 |
| 7.6.1 Mo | tion Control Program | 7-47 |
| 7.6.1.1 | DIADesigner-AX Programming Structure and Types | 7-47 |
| 7.6.1.2 | POU in DIADesigner-AX | 7-48 |
| 7.6.1.3 | Adding POU in DIADesigner-AX | 7-49 |
| 7.6.1.4 | PDO Mapping | 7-51 |
| 7.6.2 Axi | s State Transition | 7-52 |
| 7.6.2.1 | Axis State | 7-52 |
| 7.6.2.2 | Axis Group State | 7-54 |
| 7.6.3 Exe | ecution and Status of Motion Control Instructions | 7-56 |
| 7.6.3.1 | Basic Rules for Instruction Execution | 7-56 |
| 7.6.3.2 | Timing Diagram for Inputs / Outputs | 7-58 |
| 7.6.3.3 | Repeated Execution of a Single Motion Control Instruction | 7-59 |
| 7.6.3.4 | Multi-execution of Motion Control Instructions | 7-59 |
| 7.6.3.5 | Synchronous Execution of Motion Control Instructions | 7-60 |
| 7.6.4 Pos | ition | 7-65 |
| 7.6.4.1 | Types of Position | 7-65 |
| 7.6.5 Car | n Tables and Framework | 7-66 |
| 7.6.5.1 | E-CAM Framework | 7-66 |
| 7.6.5.2 | E-CAM Establishment | 7-67 |
| 7.7 Motic | on Control Functions | 7-71 |

| 7.7.1 Sys | stem Structure | . 7-71 |
|-----------|--|--------|
| 7.7.2 Sir | ngle-axis Control | . 7-71 |
| 7.7.2.1 | Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode | . 7-71 |
| 7.7.2.2 | Profile Position Mode | . 7-72 |
| 7.7.2.3 | Positioning | . 7-72 |
| 7.7.2.4 | Stop Method | . 7-74 |
| 7.7.2.5 | MC_GearIn | . 7-76 |
| 7.7.2.6 | MC_GearInPos | . 7-78 |
| 7.7.2.7 | MC_CamIn | . 7-79 |
| 7.7.3 Vel | locity Control | . 7-88 |
| 7.7.3.1 | CSP Mode | . 7-88 |
| 7.7.3.2 | CSV Mode | . 7-89 |
| 7.7.3.3 | Profile Velocity Mode | . 7-89 |
| 7.7.4 Tor | que Control | . 7-90 |
| 7.7.5 Cor | mmon Functions for Single-axis Control | . 7-91 |
| 7.7.5.1 | Position Command | . 7-91 |
| 7.7.5.2 | Velocity Command | . 7-93 |
| 7.7.5.3 | Acceleration and Deceleration Command | . 7-94 |
| 7.7.5.4 | Jerk Command | . 7-95 |
| 7.7.5.5 | Axis Direction | . 7-96 |
| 7.7.6 Axi | is Group Control | . 7-98 |
| 7.7.6.1 | Linear Interpolation | . 7-98 |
| 7.7.6.2 | Helical Interpolation | . 7-99 |
| 7.7.6.3 | Stop Command for Axis Group | 7-101 |
| 7.7.7 Hig | gh-speed I/O | 7-102 |
| 7.7.7.1 | I/O Configuration | 7-102 |
| 7.7.7.2 | DIO Settings | 7-103 |
| 7.7.7.3 | SSI Encoder Settings | 7-104 |
| 7.7.7.4 | Pulse Encoder Settings | 7-105 |
| 7.7.7.5 | Capture / Compare Settings | 7-109 |
| 7.7.8 Oth | her Features | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.1 | Changing Current Position | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.2 | Software Limit | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.3 | Position Lag Settings | 7-111 |
| 7.7.8.4 | Cam Switch | 7-112 |
| 7.7.8.5 | Position Capture | 7-113 |
| 7.8 Prog | ramming Example | 7-114 |

| 7.8.1 Dev | vice Framework |
|-----------|---|
| 7.8.1.1 | Utilization |
| 7.8.1.2 | Configuration7-114 |
| 7.8.2 Exa | mples7-115 |
| 7.8.2.1 | Servo On |
| 7.8.2.2 | Resetting and Monitoring Single-axis Errors7-117 |
| 7.8.2.3 | Monitoring Instruction Errors7-121 |
| 7.8.2.4 | Quick Stop for Single Axis7-123 |
| 7.8.2.5 | Homing |
| 7.8.2.6 | Absolute Positioning |
| 7.8.2.7 | Switching Cam Tables during Cam Operation7-130 |
| 7.8.2.8 | Executing Master Phase Offset during Cam Operation7-138 |
| 7.8.2.9 | Changing Current Position in Movement7-146 |
| 7.8.2.10 | Performing Superimposition during Gear Engagement7-151 |

Chapter 8 OPC UA Server

| 8.1 | Ο | PC UA Server | . 8-2 |
|----------|------------|---|----------------|
| 8. | 1.1 | Creating a Project for OPC UA Access | . 8-2 |
| 8.2 | Co | onnection Settings | . 8-4 |
| 8. | 2.1 | Setting Up a Connection with UaExpert | . 8-4 |
| | | | |
| 8.3 | Se | etting up an Encrypted Connection | . 8-7 |
| | | Setting up an Encrypted Connection Setting up User Account and Password | |
| 8. | 3.1 | | . 8-7 |
| 8. 8. | 3.1 3.2 | Setting up User Account and Password | . 8-7 . 8-8 |

Chapter 9 Communication

| 9.1 | Introductio | on to EtherCAT Communication | 9-3 |
|-------|--------------|--------------------------------|------|
| 9.1.1 | Features | of EtherCAT Fieldbus | 9-3 |
| 9.1.2 | 2 Setting up | p EtherCAT Master | 9-4 |
| 9.1.3 | 8 Setting up | p EtherCAT Slave | 9-6 |
| 9.1.4 | Backup Pa | arameters for EtherCAT Slave | 9-9 |
| 9.1 | .4.1 Data | Backup Procedure | 9-9 |
| 9.1 | .4.2 Intro | duction to Backup and Restore | 9-10 |
| | 9.1.4.2.1 | Operation for Backup Funcion | 9-12 |
| | 9.1.4.2.2 | Operation for Restore Function | 9-14 |

| 9.2 Intro | duction to Modbus Serial Communication | 9-16 |
|------------|---|------|
| 9.2.1 Mod | dbus Serial Port | 9-16 |
| 9.2.1.1 | Adding Delta Modbus COM | 9-16 |
| 9.2.1.2 | Setting up Delta Modbus COM | 9-18 |
| 9.2.2 Mod | dbus Serial Master | 9-20 |
| 9.2.2.1 | Adding Delta Modbus Master/Slave COM | 9-20 |
| 9.2.2.2 | Setting up Modbus Serial Master | 9-23 |
| 9.2.2.3 | Setting up Modbus Serial Slave | 9-26 |
| 9.2.3 Mod | dbus Serial Slave | 9-32 |
| 9.2.3.1 | Adding a Modbus Serial Device | 9-32 |
| 9.2.3.2 | Setting up the Modbus Serial Device | 9-34 |
| 9.3 Intro | duction to Ethernet Communication | 9-36 |
| 9.3.1 Eth | ernet | 9-36 |
| 9.3.1.1 | Adding an Ethernet Adapter Device | 9-36 |
| 9.3.1.2 | Setting up the Ethernet | |
| 9.3.2 Mod | dbus TCP Master | |
| 9.3.2.1 | Adding a Modbus TCP Master/Slave | 9-41 |
| 9.3.2.2 | Setting up the Modbus TCP Master | 9-45 |
| 9.3.2.3 | Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave | 9-46 |
| 9.3.3 Mod | dbus TCP Slave | 9-51 |
| 9.3.3.1 | Adding a Modbus TCP Slave Device | 9-52 |
| 9.3.3.2 | Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave Device | 9-54 |
| 9.4 Ether | Net/IP | 9-56 |
| 9.4.1 Intr | roduction to EtherNet/IP | 9-56 |
| 9.4.1.1 | EtherNet/IP Overview | 9-56 |
| 9.4.1.2 | Definition | 9-56 |
| 9.4.1.3 | Features of Ethernet | 9-57 |
| 9.4.1. | 3.1 Delta EIP Structure | 9-57 |
| 9.4.1. | 3.2 Features of EIP | 9-57 |
| 9.4.2 Eth | erNet/IP Scanner Function | 9-58 |
| 9.4.2.1 | Setting up AX-8 Series PLC | 9-58 |
| 9.4.2. | 1.1 Hardware Configuration | 9-58 |
| 9.4.2. | 1.2 Read-Write Setting for Implicit Messages | 9-59 |
| 9.4.2. | 1.3 CIP Object Read-Write for Explicit Messages | 9-61 |
| 9.4.3 Ada | apter Function | 9-62 |
| 9.4.3.1 | Create an EDS File | 9-62 |
| 9.4.3.2 | Import an EDS File | 9-67 |

| 9.5 Netw | vork Security | 9-84 |
|----------|---|------|
| | | |
| 9.4.5.2 | Delta EIP Product List (Scanners Supported) | 9-83 |
| 9.4.5.1 | Delta EIP Product List (Adapters Supported) | 9-83 |
| 9.4.5 De | Ita EIP Product List | 9-83 |
| 9.4.4.6 | Ethernet Link Object (Class ID: F6 Hex) | 9-80 |
| 9.4.4.5 | TCP/IP Interface Object (Class ID: F5 Hex) | 9-77 |
| 9.4.4.4 | Assembly Object (Class ID: 04 Hex) | 9-76 |
| 9.4.4.3 | Identity Object (Class ID: 01 Hex) | 9-74 |
| 9.4.4.2 | Data Type | 9-71 |
| 9.4.4.1 | Object List | 9-70 |
| 9.4.4 CI | P Object | 9-70 |
| | | |

Appendix A Troubleshooting

| A.1 Tr | oubleshooting | A-2 |
|--------|---|-----|
| A.1.1 | Basic Troubleshooting Steps | |
| A.1.2 | Clear Error States | A-2 |
| A.1.3 | Troubleshooting SOP | A-3 |
| A.1.4 | Viewing Log | A-3 |
| A.2 Tr | oubleshooting of CPU Modules | A-5 |
| A.2.1 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds | |
| A.2.2 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 2 Seconds | A-6 |
| A.2.2 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 1 Second | A-6 |
| A.3 Tr | oubleshooting of Funciton Blocks | A-7 |
| A.3.1 | DL_CmpAX8xxEDrv | A-7 |
| A.3.2 | Motion Control Related Instructions | A-8 |

Appendix B BIOS Settings

| B.1 | Basi | ic Settings and Operation of BIOS | B-2 |
|-------|------|-----------------------------------|------|
| B.1. | 1 | Main | B-3 |
| B.1. | 2 | Advanced | B-4 |
| B.1. | 3 | Chipset | B-5 |
| B.1.4 | 4 | Security | B-8 |
| B.1. | 5 | Boot | B-9 |
| B.1. | 6 | Save & Exit B | 3-10 |

Appendix C Settings and Operation of Windows/Linux

| | | Settings of UWFC-2 |
|---|--|---|
| C.1 | | IWF Execution via PAC_ToolC-2 |
| C.1 | | C-2 |
| C.1 | .3 E | nable UWFC-3 |
| C.1 | .4 C | Disable UWFC-4 |
| C.1 | .5 F | ix UWFC-4 |
| C.2 | Displa | ay Language SettingsC-5 |
| C.3 | UWF | Exclusion SettingsC-6 |
| C.4 | Repla | ce Original Project with USB Backup ProjectC-7 |
| C.4 | .1 R | C-7 |
| C.4 | .2 C | create a Project from DIADesigner-AXC-8 |
| C.4 | .3 C | create an USB Backup ProjectC-9 |
| C.4 | .4 P | roject Mode C-10 |
| C.4 | .5 P | roject ReplacementC-11 |
| C.5 | Wind | ows System OperationC-12 |
| | | |
| C.6 | IP Ad | dress SettingsC-13 |
| C.6 C.6 | | Idress SettingsC-13 Nodify through Project DownloadC-13 |
| | .1 N | . |
| C.6 | .1 № .2 № | Nodify through Project Download C-13 |
| C.6 C.6 | .1 M .2 M Reset | Iodify through Project Download C-13 Iodify through Windows Settings C-13 |
| C.6 C.6 C.7 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C | Iodify through Project Download C-13 Iodify through Windows Settings C-13 IP Address C-14 |
| C.6 C.6 C.7 C.7 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 It IP Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 |
| C.6 C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R Repla | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 In Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-15 |
| C.6 C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 | .1 M .2 M .1 C .2 R Repla .1 R | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 It IP Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-15 Ince Original Project with Backup Project C-16 |
| C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R Repla .1 R .2 C | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 IP Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-15 ICC Original Project with Backup Project C-16 Retrieve a Project C-16 |
| C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.8 C.8 C.8 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R Repla .1 R .2 C .3 P | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 IP Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-15 Ince Original Project with Backup Project C-16 Retrieve a Project C-16 Create a Backup Project C-16 |
| C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R Repla .1 R .2 C .3 P Linux | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-15 Rec Original Project with Backup Project C-16 Retrieve a Project C-16 Retrieve a Backup Project C-16 Create Backup Project C-16 Create A Backup Project C |
| C.6 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.7 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 C.8 | .1 M .2 M Reset .1 C .2 R Repla .1 R .2 C .3 P Linux | Modify through Project Download C-13 Modify through Windows Settings C-13 IP Address C-14 Connection Denied to PLC C-14 Restore PLC C-16 Rece Original Project with Backup Project C-16 Retrieve a Project C-16 Retrieve a Backup Project C-16 Retrieve a Backup Project C-16 System Operation C-17 |

Chapter 1 Product Introduction

Table of Contents

| 1.1 Ov | verview | 1-2 |
|---------|---|-----|
| 1.1.1 | Related Manuals | |
| 1.1.2 | Model Descriptions | 1-3 |
| 1.2 DI | ADesigner-AX Software Overview | 1-6 |
| 1.2.1 | Features | 1-6 |
| 1.3 El€ | ectrical Safety Precautions | 1-7 |
| 1.3.1 | Electrical Safety Precautions (English) | |
| 1.3.2 | Précautions de sécurité électrique (Français) | |

1.1 Overview

This manual introduces the AX-8 Series CPU functions, devices, module tables, troubleshooting, and so forth.

1.1.1 Related Manuals

The related manuals for AX-8 Series programmable logic controllers are listed below.

• AX-8 Series Operation Manual

This manual introduces CPU functions, devices, module tables, electrical specifications, appearances and dimension, basic concept of motion control, basic configurations, troubleshooting, and so forth.

• DIADesigner-AX User Manual

This manual introduces the use of the software, and programming languages, including Ladder Diagram (LD), Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Structured Text (ST), and Function Block Diagram (FBD), as well as Program Organization Unit (POU), tasks and editing techniques for motion control programs.

• AX Series Motion Controller Manual

This introduces single-axis and multi-axe instructions for programming the AX Series Motion Controllers.

• AX Series Standard Instructions Manual

This introduces standard instructions for programming the AX Series Controllers.

| Classification | Model Name | Description |
|-------------------|--|---|
| AX-8 Series | AX-800EP0PB1T AX-800EP0PC1T | NPN output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| Logic Controller | AX-800EP0PB1P AX-800EP0PC1P | PNP output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| | AX-816EP0CB1T AX-816EP0MB1T AX-816EP0CC1T AX-816EP0MC1T | 16-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| AX-8 Series | AX-832EP0CB1T AX-832EP0MB1T AX-832EP0CC1T AX-832EP0MC1T | 32-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| Motion Controller | AX-864EP0CB1T AX-864EP0MB1T AX-864EP0CC1T AX-864EP0MC1T | 64-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| | AX-816EP0CB1P AX-816EP0MB1P AX-816EP0CC1P AX-816EP0MC1P | 16-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |

1.1.2 Model Descriptions

| Classification | Model Name | Description |
|----------------|---------------|---|
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | AX-832EP0CB1P | 32-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-832EP0MB1P | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-832EP0CC1P | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | AX-832EP0MC1P | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | 64-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, |
| | AX-864EP0CB1P | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-864EP0MB1P | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-864EP0CC1P | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | AX-864EP0MC1P | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | 16-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, |
| | | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-816EP0CE1T | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-816EP0ME1T | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; removable terminal blocks |
| | | |
| | | 32-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-832EP0CE1T | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-832EP0ME1T | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | 64-axis motion controller CPU module, NPN output, |
| | | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-864EP0CE1T | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-864EP0ME1T | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | AX-816EP0CE1P | 16-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, |
| | AX-816EP0ME1P | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |

| Classification | Model Name | Description |
|----------------|---------------|--|
| | | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | 32-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, |
| | | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-832EP0CE1P | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-832EP0ME1P | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | 64-axis motion controller CPU module, PNP output, |
| | | inbuilt with 1x Relative Encoder, 1x SSI, 8x DI (1MHz), 8x |
| | AX-864EP0CE1P | DO (100KHz), 2x Ethernet port, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-422 |
| | AX-864EP0ME1P | / 485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 512MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |
| | | NPN output, 8x DI (1KHz), 4x DO (1KHz), 2x Ethernet |
| | AX-8H1E30CD2T | port, 2x EtherCAT, 1x RS-485, 4x USB, SD interface. |
| | | Program capacity: 512MB; data capacity: 1024MB; |
| | | removable terminal blocks |

1.2 DI ADesigner-AX Software Overview

Conformed to IEC 61131-3, DIADesigner-AX is a new programming tool for a new generation Delta PLC. With the abundant applied instructions and an adequate motion function library, DIADesigner-AX provides a friendly and multilingual programming interface for a more convenient and efficient development environment.

1.2.1 Features

DIADesigner-AX is applicable to AX series.

- Support all the programming languages that IEC 61131-3 defines, including FBD, LD, ST, and SFC, as well as POU, tasks and other programming language standard.
- Powerful and proven function library for various applications.
- Input assistance for the input and configuration.
- User-friendly programming with mouse and keyboard in IEC 61131-3 supported programming languages.
- Extensive debugging and online features for the fast optimization of the application code and to speed up testing and commissioning.
- Numerous security features for the protection of the source code and for safeguarding the operation of the controller.
- Programmable devices from different manufacturers.
- The user interface is extendible and adaptable without leaving the framework.
- Transparent internal structures of the development tool and the available components.
- Many seamlessly integrated tools for different kinds of automation tasks.

Two built-in configuration tools:

- HWCONFIG: the hardware configurations and parameter managements for the system.
- NWCONFIG: the network configurations and data exchange management for the system.

Providing various solutions for motion control including PLCopen, MC function block, G-code editor, E-CAM editor, positioning planning chart tool and many more.

- Support PLCopen POUs for single and multi-axis motions
- Support PLCopen POUs for add-on functions, including diagnostics, stop, and CAM controller
- Additional POUs for different tasks including monitoring dynamic data, following error, operating CAMs and CAM controllers
- Integrated graphical CAM editor with loads of configuration options
- Virtual and logical axes are supported.
- Integrated drivers for numerous Modbus and EtherCAT protocols
- Configuration of the drives as standard field devices.

1.3 Electrical Safety Precautions

1.3.1 Electrical Safety Precautions (English)

- In order to prevent possible severe damage caused by electric shocks, please first unplug the host power cable from the power outlet before moving the host.
- Confirm that all power cables have been unplugged before connecting or disconnecting any signal cables from the host.
- Confirm that the voltage setting of the power supply is adjusted to the standard voltage value used in this country/region. If you are unsure of the supplied voltage value of your region, please consult your local power company staff.
- If the power supply is damaged, do not attempt to fix it by yourself. Please contact Delta's professional technical service staff or the dealer.
- Restart Instructions: Pressing and holding down the reset button for 2 seconds will force restart.
- It is recommended to install this product inside a cabinet or inside an external case in order to block external collisions.
- This product is applicable to industrial automation equipment and applications. Please read this Operational Manual carefully and perform installation according to the instructions in order to prevent danger from occurring.
- If this product is not operated in accordance with the instructions described in the Manual, it will cause damage to the equipment or abnormal functions.
- The installation that the safety of any system incorporating the equipment is the responsibility of the assembler of the system.
- If the equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.
- Wipe clean with dry cloth to keep the product from humidity.
- Terminal block is mating with Plug and suitable for 16 AWG to 22 AWG. Torque value 0.5N·m Use Copper Conductors Only. The temperature rating of the input connection cable should higher than 105°C.
- To prevent electric shock, make sure to cut off the power to the module and the common input / output points before removing the module or the connected wires.
- This product uses DC power only. Do not use AC power for the product.
- Use the power adapters that comply with the power supply requirements of UL 61010-1, UL 61010-2-201, UL 62368-1, Class 2, SELV, LE, or LPS for this product.
- The power for the PLC and the common input / output points should be two independent power supplies and within the rated voltage. If you are uncertain of the voltage in your area, contact local electrical technicians

1.3.2 Précautions de sécurité électrique (Français)

- Afin déviter déventuels dommages graves causés par des chocs électriques, veuillez dabord débrancher le câble dalimentation de lhôte de la prise de courant avant de déplacer lhôte.
- Vérifiez que tous les câbles dalimentation ont été débranchés avant de connecter ou de déconnecter tout câble de signal de lhôte.
- Vérifiez que le réglage de la tension de lalimentation est ajusté à la valeur de tension standard utilisée dans ce pays / cette région. Si vous nêtes pas sûr de la valeur de tension fournie dans votre région, veuillez consulter le personnel de votre compagnie délectricité locale.
- Si le bloc dalimentation est endommagé, nessayez pas de le réparer vous-même. Veuillez contacter le service technique professionnel de Delta ou le revendeur.
- Instructions de redémarrage: Appuyez et maintenez enfoncé le bouton de réinitialisation pendant 2 secondes pour forcer le redémarrage.
- Il est recommandé dinstaller ce produit à lintérieur dune armoire ou à lintérieur dun boîtier externe afin de bloquer les collisions externes.
- Ce produit est applicable aux équipements et applications dautomatisation industrielle. Veuillez lire attentivement ce manuel dutilisation et effectuer linstallation conformément aux instructions afin déviter tout danger.
- Si ce produit nest pas utilisé conformément aux instructions décrites dans le manuel, il endommagera léquipement ou des fonctions anormales.
- linstallation selon laquelle la sécurité de tout système intégrant léquipement est à la charge de lassembleur du système.
- Si léquip ement est utilisé dune manière non spécifiée par le fabricant, la protection fournie par léquipement peut être altérée.
- Essuyez avec un chiffon sec pour protéger le produit de lhumidité.
- Le bornier se couple avec la fiche et convient pour les fils de calibre 16 à 22 AWG. La valeur de couple est de 0.5 N·m. Utilisez uniquement des conducteurs en cuivre. La température nominale du câble de connexion dentrée doit être supérieure à 105°C.
- Pour éviter les chocs électriques, assurez-vous de couper lalimentation du module et des points dentrée/sortie communs avant de retirer le module ou les fils connectés.
- Ce produit utilise uniquement une alimentation en courant continu. Ne pas utiliser une alimentation en courant alternatif pour ce produit.
- Utilisez les adaptateurs dalimentation conformes aux exigences dalimentation électrique de UL 61010-1, UL 61010-2-201, UL 62368-1, Class 2, SELV, LE, ou LPS pour ce produit.
- Lalimentation du PLC et des points dentrée/sortie communs doit être assurée par deux sources dalimentation indépendantes et dans la plage de tension nominale. Si vous nêtes pas certain de la tension dans votre région, contactez les techniciens en électricité locaux.

Chapter 2 Specifications and System Configurations

Table of Contents

| 2.1 | Gen | eral Specifications | 2-2 |
|-----|---------|---------------------------------------|------|
| 2.2 | CPU | J Module Specifications | 2-4 |
| 2.2 | .1 I | Functional Specifications | 2-4 |
| 2.2 | .2 I | Electrical Specifications | 2-9 |
| 2.2 | .3 (| CPU Module Profiles | 2-11 |
| 2.2 | 2.4 (| CPU Module Input/Output Terminals | 2-14 |
| 2.2 | .5 \ | Wiring Configuration | 2-15 |
| 2 | 2.2.5. | 1 AX-800EP0000T Wiring | 2-15 |
| 2 | 2.2.5.2 | 2 AX-800EP0000P Wiring | 2-16 |
| 2 | 2.2.5.3 | 3 AX-800EP0000T, AX-800EP0000P Wiring | 2-17 |
| 2 | 2.2.5.4 | 4 AX-8H1E30CD2T Wiring | 2-19 |

2.1 General Specifications

| ltem | Specifications | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Operating temperature | 0 ~ 50°C*1 | | | |
| Storage temperature | -20 ~ 70°C | | | |
| Operating humidity | 5 ~ 95% No condensation | | | |
| Storage humidity | 5 ~ 95% No condensation | | | |
| Work environment | No corrosive gas exists. | | | |
| Installation location | In a control cabinet | | | |
| Pollution degree | 2 | | | |
| Ingress protection (IP ratings) | IP20 | | | |
| EMC Standard (electromagnetic compatibility) | Refer to the tables of EMI, EMS, and conducted immunity test below. | | | |
| Vibration resistance | Tested with: $5Hz \leq f \leq 8.4Hz$, constant amplitude 3.5mm; $8.4Hz \leq f \leq 150Hz$, constant acceleration 1g Duration of oscillation: 10 sweep cycles per axis in each direction of the 3 mutually perpendicular axes International Standard IEC 61131-2 & IEC 60068-2-6 (TEST Fc) | | | |
| Shock resistance | Tested with: Half-sine wave: Strength of shock 15g peak value, 11 ms duration; Shock direction: The shocks in each direction per axis, on 3 mutually perpendicular axes (total of 18 shocks) International Standard IEC 61131-2 & IEC 60068-2-27 (TEST Fc) | | | |
| Safety | Conforms to IEC 61131-2, UL 61010-1 | | | |
| Ambient air temperature-barometric pressure-altitudeOperation: 1,080 ~ 795hPa (-1,000 ~ 2,000m) Storage: 1,080 ~ 660hPa (-1,000 ~ 3,500m) | | | | |
| Silicone flammability rating | UL94V-2 | | | |

*1: Leave the AX-8 Series PLC in an environment within the operating temperature for at least one hour before use to ensure the AX-8 Series PLC temperature is within the operating temperature.

• EMI

| Port | Frequency range | Frequency range Level (normative) | | |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|--|
| Enclosure port | 30 ~ 230MHz | 40dB (μV/m) quasi-peak | | |
| (radiated; measured at a distance of 10 meters) | 230 ~ 1,000MHz | 47dB (μV/m) quasi-peak | IEC 61000-6-4 | |
| AC power port | | 79dB (μV) quasi-peak | | |
| (conducted) | 0.15 ~ 0.5MHz | 66dB (μV) average | IEC 61000-6-4 | |

| | 73dB (μV) quasi-peak | |
|-------------|----------------------|--|
| 0.5 ~ 30MHz | 60dB (μV) average | |

• EMS

| Environmental phenomenon | Reference standard | Test | | Test level |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| | | Contact | | ±4kV |
| Electrostatic discharge | IEC 61000-4-2 | | Air | |
| Radiofrequency | IEC 61000-4-3 | 80% AM, 1kHz | 2.0 ~ 2.7GHz | 1V/m |
| electromagnetic field - | | | 1.4 ~ 2.0GHz | 3V/m |
| Amplitude modulation | | sinusoidal | 80 ~ 1,000MHz | 10V/m |
| Power frequency | IEC 61000-4-8 | 60Hz | | 30A/m |
| magnetic field | IEC 01000-4-8 | 50Hz | | 30A/m |

• Conducted immunity test

| Environmental phenomenon | | Fast transient burst | High energy surge | Radio frequency interference |
|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Reference s | tandard | IEC 61000-4-4 | IEC 61000-4-5 | IEC 61000-4-6 |
| Interface / Port | Specific interface / Port | Test level | Test level | Test level |
| Data communication | Shielded cable | 1kV | 1kV CM | 10V |
| Digital and analog I/O | All shielded lines (to the earth) | 1kV | 1kV CM | 10V |
| Equipment power | DC power | 2kV | 0.5kV CM 0.5kV DM | 10V |
| I/O power and auxiliary power output | DC I/O and DC auxiliary power | 2kV | 0.5kV CM 0.5kV DM | 10V |

2.2 CPU Module Specifications

2.2.1 Functional Specifications

Motion Controller CPU Module

| Туре | | | AX-8mnEP0MB1y⁺¹ AX-8mnEP0CE1y⁺¹ AX-8mnEP0ME1y⁺¹ | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---|---|--|--|
| | | LD instruction | | 1.573ns | 0.4ns |
| Process time | Execution time | instru | metic Ictions data type) | 1.660ns | 0.4ns |
| | Pro | ogram capacit | у | 1GB (variable memory included) | 512MB |
| | | Retentiv | Retain | 96KB (Retain + Persist) | 1.5MB |
| Program | Variable memory | e | Persist | 96KB (Retain + Persist) | 2.0MB |
| | | Non-re | etentive | 1GB (program capacity included) | 1024MB |
| | Device memory (%M) | Size | | 5MB | 0.5MB (retentive) |
| | | Maximum nu controlled | | mn=16: 16 axes mn=32: 32 axes mn=64: 64 axes | 128 axes |
| | | EtherCA | AT axes ^{*2} | mn=16: 16 axes mn=32: 32 axes mn=64: 64 axes | 128 axes |
| | Number of controlled | Pulse C | Out axes | 0 | |
| axes | | Maximum number of axes for linear interpolation axis control | | 6 axes | |
| Control | | Maximum r axes for interpolatio | | 6 axes (3 slave axes) | |
| | Maximum | number of axis | s groups | 8 g | roups |
| | Motio | Motion control period | | communication cycle | od as that is used for the of data processing for erCAT. |
| | САМ | Number Maximum of CAM points per data CAM | | 32,76 | 7 points |

| Туре | | | AX-8mnEP0MB1y⁺¹ AX-8mnEP0CE1y⁺¹ AX-8mnEP0ME1y⁺¹ | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---|---|-----------------------|
| | | points | table | | |
| | | | Maximum points for all CAM tables | 655,34 | 10 points |
| | | | number of tables | 1 | 60 |
| | 1 | Number of port | ts | | 2 |
| | Phy | ysical media ty | vpes | IEEE 802.3 / 802. | 3u / 802.3ab 1Gbps |
| | | Topology | | Star a | and line |
| Ethernet port | Tra | ansmission sp | eed | 10 / 100 / | 1,000Mbps |
| | | Cable | | Category 5e or late | er, 100 meters (max.) |
| | Communication protocols | | ARP, IP, TCP, UDP, Modbus TCP, EtherNet/IP, OPC UA | | |
| | Number of ports | | 4 | | |
| USB port | Туре | | USB 2.0 (0.5A) | USB 3.0 (1.0A / 2 ports shared) | |
| | Number of ports | | 1 | | |
| | | Baud rate | | 9,600 / 19,200 / 38,400 / 57,600 / 115,200bps | |
| Isolated RS-485 port | Serial o | communicatior | n format | Stop bit: 1, 2; Parity bit: None, Odd, Even; Data bit: 7, 8 | |
| | Communication protocols | | Master (Modbus ASCII/RTU) Slave (Modbus RTU) | Modbus ASCII/RTU | |
| | I | Number of port | ts | 1 | 0 |
| | Baud rate | | 9,600 / 19,200 / 38,400 / 57,600 / 76,800 / 115,200bps | N/A | |
| Isolated RS-422 port Serial con | | I communication format | | Stop bit: 1, 2; Parity bit: None, Odd, Even; Data bit: 7, 8 | N/A |
| | Communication protocols | | Master (Modbus ASCII/RTU) Slave (Modbus RTU) | N/A | |

| Туре | | | AX-8mnEP0MB1y ^{*1} AX-8mnEP0CE1y ^{*1} AX-8mnEP0ME1y ^{*1} | AX-8H1E30CD2T |
|-------------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------------------|
| | Nu | mber of ports | 1 | 2 |
| | EtherCAT Master | | Cla | ass B |
| | Physi | cal media types | IEEE 802.3 / 802. | 3u / 802.3ab 1Gbps |
| EtherCAT | Trans | smission speed | 100 | Mbps |
| port | | Тороlоду | Line, daisy chai | in, and branching |
| | | Cable | Category 5e or late | er, 100 meters (max.) |
| | Maximur | n number of Slaves | 256 | 512 |
| | Comn | nunication cycle | 250µs ∼ (unit ca | n be set to 250µs) |
| | Modbus TCP | Maximum number of connections | 20 (0 | |
| ТСР | Socket | Maximum number of TCP connections | 32 (Server + Client) | |
| TCP | Modbus TCP | Maximum data length per connection | 100 words | |
| | Socket | Maximum data length per instruction | 8КВ | |
| | | Maximum number of connections (Scanner) | 32+32 | |
| | | Maximum number of connections (Adapter) | 32+32 | |
| | CIP I/O Connection | Requested Packet Interval (RPI) | AX-8mnEP0MB1y: 10ms ~ 100ms AX-8mnEP0CE1y, AX-8mnEP0ME1y: 1ms ~ 100ms | 1ms~100ms |
| EtherNet/IP | | Maximum Transmission Speed | AX-8mnEP0MB1y: 12,800pps AX-8mnEP0CE1y, AX-8mnEP0ME1y: 32,000pps | 64,000pps |
| | | Maximum data length per connection | Default: 100 bytes Input: 509 bytes (T→O) Output: 505 bytes (O→T) (O: Originator; T: Target) | |
| | CIP Explicit Message | Class 3 / UCMM | Get_Attribute_Single (FB) Get_Attributes_All (FB) Set_Attribute_Single (FB) Set_Attributes_All (FB) | |

| | Туре | | AX-8mnEP0MB1y*1 AX-8mnEP0CE1y*1 AX-8mnEP0ME1y*1 | AX-8H1E30CD2T |
|----------------------|--|---|--|--|
| | | CIP objects supported | Manager, Port, TCP/IP | er, Assembly, Connection Interface, Ethernet Link, r Specific |
| | Supported | profiles and models | | OPC Foundation: Model for IEC 61131-3 |
| | Endpoints | and connecting ports | TCP: 4840 (Reconfigur | able via configuration file) |
| | Maximum nun | nber of sessions (Client) | | 5 |
| | Maximum nur | nber of monitored items | 1, | 000 |
| | Sampling rate | e of the monitored items (ms) | 100 / 300 / 500 / 1 | ,000 / 2,500 / 5,000 |
| | Maximum nu | Imber of subscriptions | 1 | 00 |
| | | umber of variables that be published | 10 | ,000 |
| | | mber of value attributes an be published | 10,000 | |
| OPC UA server | Maximum number of structur definitions that can be published | | 100 | |
| 361761 | | hat variable can not be published | | ill limit messages to about aximum for values, too. erface variables |
| | Secu | rity policy/mode | None Sign - Basic256Sha256 SignAndEncrypt - Basic256Sha2566 | |
| | | Authentication | X | 509 |
| | Application authenticati on | Number of storable certificates | Trusted certificates: 32 Issuer certificates: 32 Rejected certificates: 32 | |
| | User authenticati on | Authentication | "Anonymous" or with user name and password | |
| | Number of I/O extension modules supported | | 1 | I/A |
| I/O configuration | I/O | data capacity | | 072 bytes I,072 bytes |
| | Inbuilt I/O | Encoder | 1-CH EA± / EB± / | N/A |

| Туре | | AX-8mnEP0MB1y ^{*1} AX-8mnEP0CE1y ^{*1} AX-8mnEP0ME1y ^{*1} | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
|--------------------|--|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | | | EZ± 1MHz | |
| | | SSI | 1 set (shared with RS-422) | |
| | | High-speed counter | 1 | |
| | | Pulse out | 0 | |
| Memory card | SD card type | | - | Card Slot 3.0 Interface) |
| Real-time clock | Year, Month, Date, Hour, Minute, Second, Week | | Inbu | lt RTC |

*1: mn can be 16, 32, or 64, representing the number of axes for the controller.

*2: EtherCAT axes include positioning and synchronous axes. The maximum number of axes is listed below.

| Item Model | Maximum number of positioning axes | Maximum number of synchronous axes | Maximum number of positioning and synchronous axes |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| AX-816EP0*1 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| AX-832EP0*2 | 32 | 32 | 32 |
| AX-864EP0*3 | 64 | 64 | 64 |
| AX-8H1E30CD2T | 128 | 128 | 128 |

*1: AX-816EP0 includes AX-816EP0 and series PLC.

*2: AX-832EP0 includes AX-832EP0 and series PLC.

*3: AX-864EP0 includes AX-864EP0 and series PLC.

2.2.2 Electrical Specifications

| Item | Model | AX-800EP0000T | AX-800EP0000P | AX-8H1E30CD2T |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Supply voltage | | 24VDC (-15% ~ +20%) | | |
| Power con | Power consumption (W) | | 4V/1.2A) | 72W (24V/3A) |
| M(a; a; b; t, (a)) | Net weight*1 | 750g | | 1000g |
| Weight (g) | Gross weight*2 | 110 |)0g | 1400g |

*1: Including terminal blocks.

*2: Including terminal blocks and all packaging.

• Electrical specifications for the inputs on the digital input/output module

| Item | Model | AX-800EP0000T | AX-800EP0000P | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--|
| Number of inputs | | 8 | | | |
| Connector | type | Removable terminal blocks | | | |
| Input ty | ре | Digital input | | | |
| Input fo | Input form | | PNP (Source) | NPN (Sink) | |
| Input voltage/current | | 24VDC, 5 mA/CH (-15% ~ +20%) | | | |
| | OFF→ON | > 15VDC | | | |
| Action level | Action level ON→OFF | | < 5VDC | | |
| | OFF→ON | 200 | Ons | 450µs | |
| Response time ON→OFF | | 150ns | | 350µs | |
| Maximum input frequency | | 200KHz | | 1KHz | |
| Isolation method | | Optocoupler isolation | | | |

• Electrical specifications for the outputs on the digital input/output module

| Item | Model | AX-800EP0000T | AX-800EP0000P | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
|------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Number o | Number of outputs | | 8 | 4 | |
| Connect | or type | Removable terminal blocks | | | |
| Output | t type | Digital output | | | |
| Output form | | NPN (Sink) | PNP (Source) | NPN (Sink) | |
| Volta | Voltage | | 24VDC | | |
| Maximum ou | Maximum output current | | 50mA/CH | 100mA/CH | |
| Response | OFF→ON | Ton ≤ 1µs @ 24V/100mA | Ton ≤ 1.3µs @ 24V/50mA | Ton ≤ 60µs @ 24V/100mA | |
| time | ON→OFF | Toff ≤ 1µs @ 24V/100mA | Toff ≤ 2.6µs @ 24V/50mA | Toff ≤ 130µs @ 24V/100mA | |
| Isolation method | | | Optocoup | ler isolation | |

• Electrical specifications for the inputs of the encoder

| Item | Model | AX-8□□EP0□□□T | AX-8==EP0===P |
|--|--------|-----------------------|---------------|
| Input signal | | Differential | |
| Endpoints | | 1-CH EA± / EB± / EZ± | |
| Deen en es time | OFF→ON | 150ns | |
| Response time ON→OFF 150ns | | Ons | |
| Isolation method | | Optocoupler isolation | |

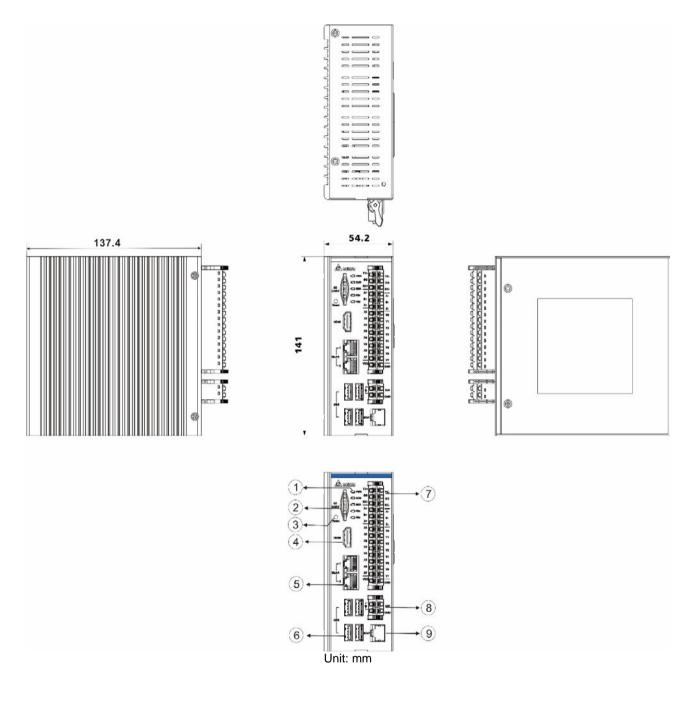
• Electrical specifications for other parts

| Model | | AX-800EP0000T | AX-800EP0000P | AX-8H1E30CD2T |
|---------------------------------|--|---|--|---|
| | CPU Intel Celeron J1900 Quad Core 2.00GHz | | Intel I3 TigerLaker UP3 Dual Core 3.00GHz | |
| Main | BIOS | | AMI | BIOS |
| system | Memory | DDR3L 4GB | DDR3L 2GB | LPDDR4X 4GB |
| | Retentive memory | 96KB MRAM | | 4MB |
| | Network interface | 2x IEEE 802.3 / 802.3u / 802.3ab 1Gbps | | 2x IEEE 802.3 / 802.3u / 802.3ab 1Gbps |
| Communi cation interface | Fieldbus interface | 1x EtherCAT | | 2x EtherCAT |
| | USB | 4x USB 2.0 | | 4x USB 3.0 |
| | Serial port | 1x Isolated RS-485 / 422 | | 1x Isolated RS-485 |
| Display interface | | 1x HDMI 1.4a | | 1x HDMI 2.0 |
| Extension interface | | 1x SD Card Slot (SD Card 3.0 Interface) | | 1x SD Card Slot (SD Card 3.0 Interface) |
| Storage device ^{*1} | SSD | 1x M.2 2242 type B&M-key SATA SSD (SATA 2.0 Interface) | N/A | 1x M.2 SATA 32GB |
| | eMMC | N/A | 1x eMMC 8GB | N/A |

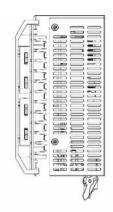
*1: You should write file to an SD card or USB rather than to SSD or eMMC when necessary.

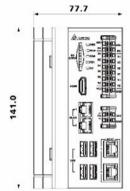
2.2.3 CPU Module Profiles

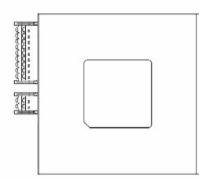
• AX-800EP0

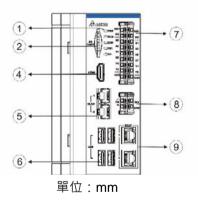


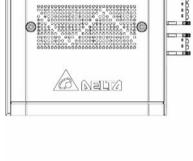
• AX-8H1E30CD2T











140.5

| Nerrelean | Nama | Description | | |
|-----------|--|--|---|--|
| Number | Name | AX-8□□EP0 | AX-8H1E30CD2T | |
| | POWER LED | Indicates the power status of the CPU module (Orange) ON: power on. OFF: power off. | | |
| | RUN LED | Indicates the operation status of the CPU module (Green) ON: the module is running. OFF: the module is stopped. | | |
| | ERROR LED | module (Red) module. he module. | | |
| 1 | FB1 LED FB2 LED ^{*1} / FB1 LED SD LED ^{*1} | Indicates FB communication status FB1 OFF: NO communication over EtherCAT FB1 ON: normal communication over EtherCAT FB1 Blinking: abnormal communication over EtherCAT FB2 OFF: NO communication over Modbus FB2 ON: communication over Modbus | Indicates FB communication status FB1 OFF: NO communication over EtherCAT FB1 ON: normal communication over EtherCAT FB1 Blinking: abnormal communication over EtherCAT SD LED OFF: SD card detached SD LED ON: SD card attached | |
| 2 | SD Card Slot | Provides an interface for an SD card | | |
| 3 | Reset | Reset button | N/A | |
| 4 | HDMI | For display output | | |
| 5 | Ethernet Port | Ethernet Switch communication port LINK indicator (Green): ON: the network connection is est OFF: the network connection is N ACT indicator (Orange): Blinking: data transmission (sendi OFF: NO data transmission | OT established. | |
| 6 | USB Port | USB 2.0 port USB 3.0 port | | |
| _ | COM Port | Provides an interface for RS-422 Provides an interface for RS-48 communication | | |
| 7 | Input terminals | For input wiring | | |
| | Output terminals | For output wiring | | |
| 8 | Power supply | For power supply | | |
| 9 | EtherCAT Port | EtherCAT communication port LINK indicator (Green): ON: the network connection is established. OFF: the network connection is NOT established. ACT indicator (Orange): Blinking: data transmission (sending/receiving) OFF: NO data transmission | | |

*1: FB2 LED is exclusive to AX-8 - EP0 series while SD LED is exclusive to AX-8H1E30CD2T series.



)I

US

IC IC

| AX-8 | | |
|--------|---------|------|
| | GPIC |) |
| | TX+ | TX- |
| | SG | SG |
| | RX+ | RX- |
| | A+ | A- |
| | B+ | B- |
| | Z+ | Z- |
| | X0 | YO |
| | X1 | Y1 |
| | X2 | Y2 |
| | X3 | Y3 |
| | X4 | Y4 |
| | X5 | Y5 |
| | X6 | Y6 |
| | Х7 | Y7 |
| | VCC | GND |
| AX-8H1 | E30CD2T | |
| | GPIC |) |
| | 485+ | 485- |
| | SG | SG |
| | X0 | X1 |
| | X2 | X3 |

X2

X4

X6

Y0

Y2

VCC

Х3

X5

X7

Y1

Y3

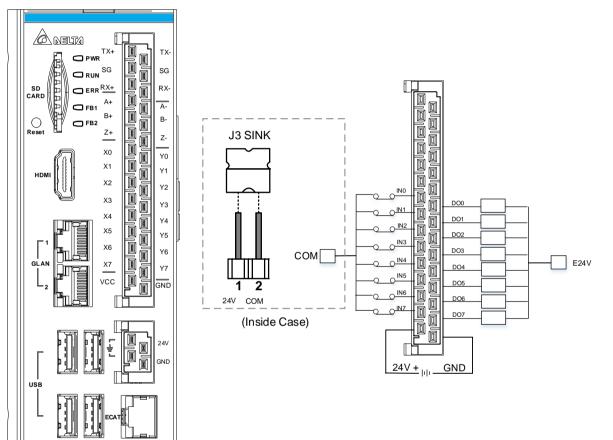
GND

2.2.5 Wiring Configuration

| ng |
|----|
| |

| Input type | NPN (Sink) |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Input voltage/current | 24VDC, 5mA |
| Output type | NPN (Sink) |
| Voltage/current | 24VDC, 100mA |

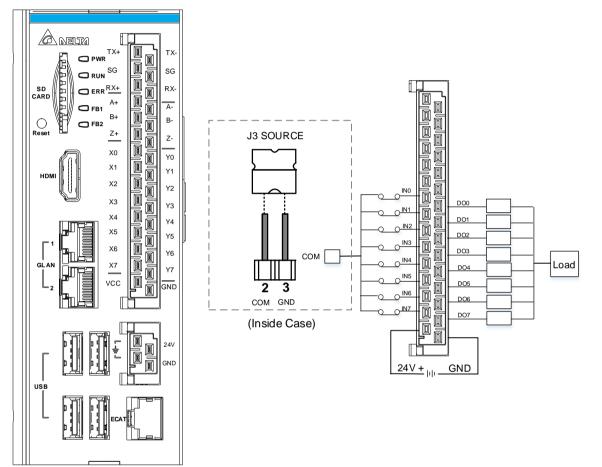
General Input / Output Wiring



2.2.5.2 AX-800EP0000P Wiring

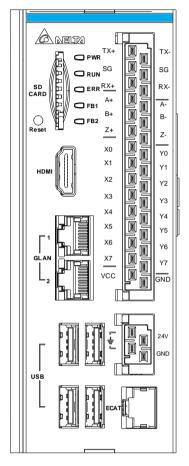
| Input type | PNP (Source) |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Input voltage/current | 24VDC, 5mA |
| Output type | PNP (Source) |
| Voltage/current | 24VDC, 50mA |

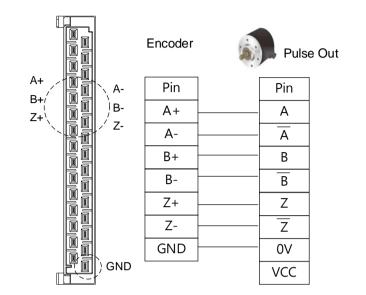
General Input / Output Wiring



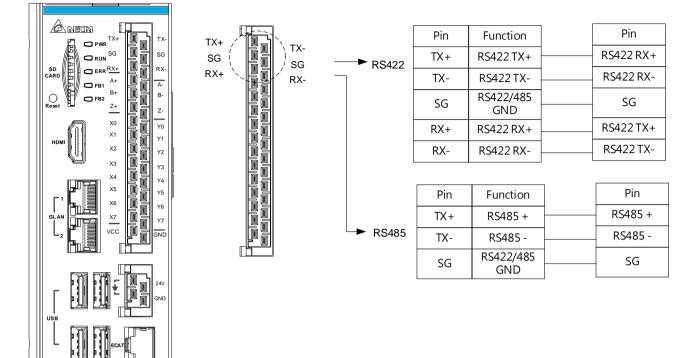
2.2.5.3 AX-800EP0000T, AX-800EP0000P Wiring

• Encoder Wiring (5V supported only)





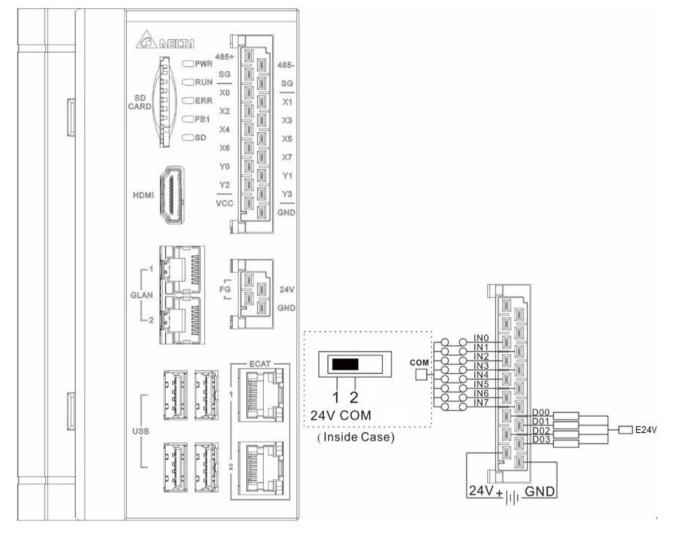
• RS-422 / RS-485 Wiring



| | C |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Input type | NPN (Sink) |
| Input voltage/current | 24VDC, 5mA |
| Output type | NPN (Sink) |
| Voltage/current | 24VDC, 100mA |

2.2.5.4 AX-8H1E30CD2T Wiring

• General Input / Output Wiring



2

MEMO

3

Chapter 3 Installing Hardware and Getting Started

Table of Contents

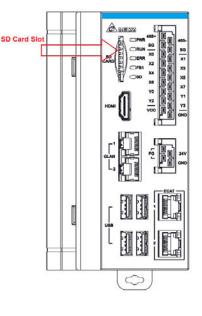
| 3.1 | Ins | talling Hardware | 3-2 |
|-----|-------|---|------|
| 3. | 1.1 | Installing and Uninstalling an SD Card | 3-2 |
| 3. | 1.2 | Installing on a Mounting Rail | 3-3 |
| 3. | 1.3 | Installing in the Control Cabinet | 3-5 |
| | 3.1.3 | .1 Installation on a DIN Rail | 3-5 |
| | 3.1.3 | .2 Installation in the Control Cabinet | 3-6 |
| | 3.1.3 | .3 Ambient Temperature Requirements for the Control Cabinet | 3-7 |
| | 3.1.3 | .4 Measures to Enhance Anti-interference Ability | 3-7 |
| | 3.1.3 | .5 Dimension Requirements for the Control Cabinet | 3-7 |
| 3.2 | Ins | talling and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX | 3-8 |
| 3. | 2.1 | Installing DIADesigner-AX | 3-9 |
| 3. | 2.2 | Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX | 3-14 |
| 3.3 | Get | ting Started and Setting up Communication | 3-15 |
| 3. | 3.1 | Getting Started | 3-15 |
| 3. | 3.2 | Setting up Communication | 3-16 |

3.1 Installing Hardware

3.1.1 Installing and Uninstalling an SD Card

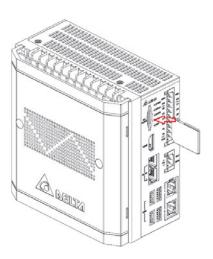
• SD card slot of the CPU module

The SD card slot is on the front side of the AX-8 Series PLC as indicated by the arrow below.



• Installing an SD card

Insert an SD card vertically into the card slot and push it to the end of the slot until it clicks. Be sure the SD card is fixed firmly in the slot; if the SD card is loose, it is not installed correctly. With a foolproof design, the SD card can only be inserted in one direction. Do not force to push the SD card into the slot in the wrong direction or you may damage the controller/card. Please refer to the figure below for instruction.

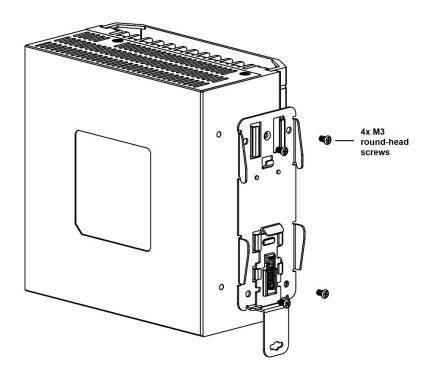


• Uninstalling an SD card

Push the SD card further into the slot to eject the card.

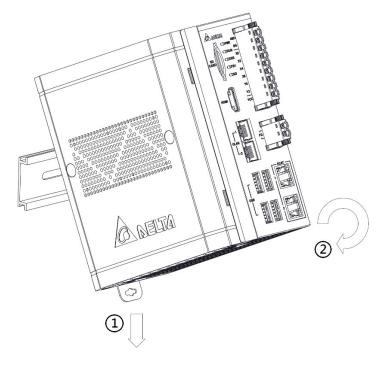
3.1.2 Installing on a Mounting Rail

Turn to the back side of the AX-8 Series PLC as shown in the figure below. Screw the fixing clip set onto the AX-8 Series PLC with M3 round-head screws.



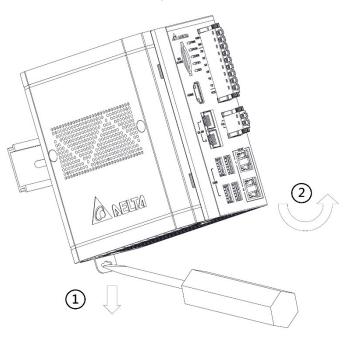
Installation

- 1. Pull out the fixing clip at the rear of the AX-8 Series PLC. Then edge the mounting rail with the horizontal slots which are also at the rear of the AX-8 Series PLC in direction ①.
- 2. Push the AX-8 Series PLC in direction O till it clicks to lock it firmly on the mounting rail.



• Uninstallation

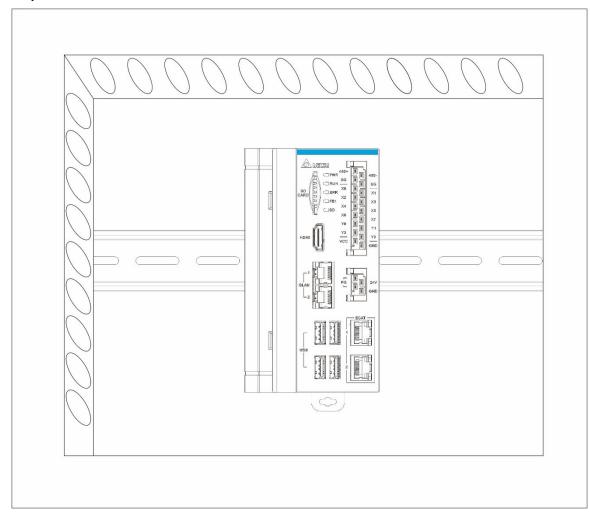
Pull down the fixing clip at the rear of the AX-8 Series PLC in direction ① with the tip of a screwdriver. Then pull the AX-8 Series PLC in direction ② to remove it from the mounting rail.

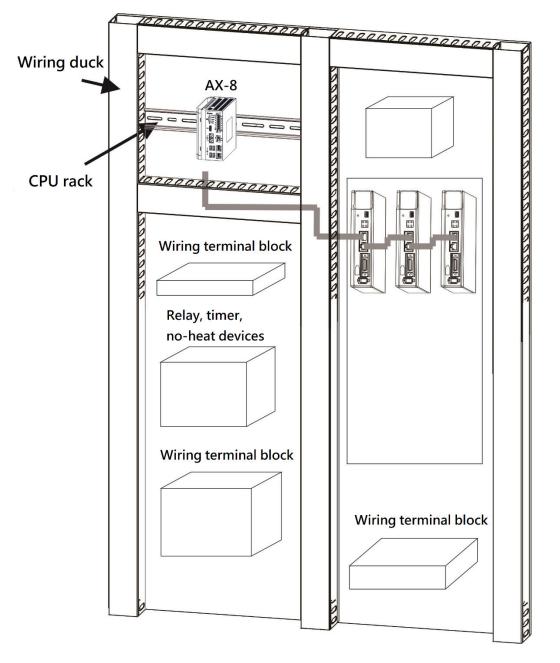


3.1.3 Installing in the Control Cabinet

3.1.3.1 Installation on a DIN Rail

Pull out the fixing clip at the rear of the AX-8 Series PLC. Then edge the DIN rail with the horizontal slots which are also at the rear of the AX-8 Series PLC. Push the AX-8 Series PLC to fit with the DIN rail till it clicks to have the AX-8 Series PLC firmly installed on the DIN rail.





3.1.3.2 Installation in the Control Cabinet

3.1.3.3 Ambient Temperature Requirements for the Control Cabinet

• Requirements for installing AX-8 Series PLC in the control cabinet

🕂 Warning

- The ambient temperature of the control cabinet should be 0 ~ 50°C and the humidity should be 5 ~ 95%.
- Avoid installing AX-8 Series PLC near equipment with high temperature.
- Keep sufficient space for air ventilation.
- Install fans or air conditioner if the ambient temperature exceeds 55°C.
- AX-8 Series PLC is for indoor use only.
- Install the control cabinet around 1.0 ~ 2.0m in height for easier installation and operation.
- Keep away from the high-voltage equipment or power equipment during installation.
- Disconnect power supply of the control cabinet before installation.

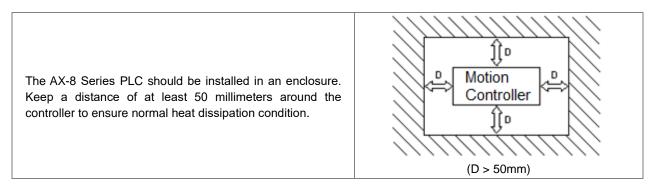
3.1.3.4 Measures to Enhance Anti-interference Ability

<u>∧</u> Warning

- Avoid installing the AX-8 Series PLC in the control cabinet with high-voltage equipment.
- Keep a distance of at least 200mm from the power wires during installation.
- The control cabinet should be grounded.
- Use the AX-8 Series PLC in accordance with the specified instructions by the manufacturer or the protection provided may be compromised.

3.1.3.5 Dimension Requirements for the Control Cabinet

Internal installation



3

3.2 Installing and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX

Before starting the development work of AX-8 Series system, you must acquire the software **DIADesigner-AX**, which is the integrated platform for program development, hardware and network configuration.

• System requirements

The table below indicates the system requirements for DIADesigner-AX installation.

| ltem | System Requirements | |
|------------------|---|--|
| Version*1 | DIADesigner-AX V1.0.0.0 or later | |
| Operating System | Windows 7 / 8.1 / 10 (32/64 bits) | |
| CPU | Intel Celeron 540 1.8GHz (min.) Intel Core i5 M520 2.4GHz (min.) | |
| Memory | 2GB or above (4GB or above is recommended) | |
| Hard Disk Drive | 10GB or above | |
| Monitor | Resolution: 1920 x 1080 pixels is recommended | |
| Keyboard/Mouse | General keyboard and mouse or Windows-compatible devices | |
| PC interface | Ethernet, USB, Serial port (depending on product interface) | |
| Software | Microsoft .Net Framework 4.6.2 | |

*1: The latest version available is V1.4 as of this writing. Please refer to the official website - DIAStudio for later releases.

3.2.1 Installing DIADesigner-AX

Before installation, ensure the computer used for installing DIADesigner-AX meets the minimum system requirements listed in section 3.2 and has been equipped with DIAInstaller.

DIAInstaller is used to easily download, install, and update all DIAStudio software including DIADesigner-AX. You can download **DIAStudio** for **DIAInstaller** from <u>https://diastudio.deltaww.com/home/downloads</u>.

You have to sign in or sign up before accessing the download page.

| Sign in with your existing account | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| Email Address | | | |
| Password | Forgot your password? | | |
| Password | | | |
| | Sign in | | |
| Don't have a | an account? Sign up now | | |

After login, click **DIAStudio** download button to download **DIAInstaller** as the image shown below.

E Software

| Software Name | Description | OS | Issue Date | File |
|------------------|--|--------------------|------------|------|
| COMMGR V2.2.1 | COMMGR V2.2.1 | Windows 10 64 bits | 2023/02/20 | \$ |
| DIAStudio V1.2.2 | DIAStudio Software download and Installation Tool | Windows 10 64 bits | 2023/06/16 | \$ |

Follow the steps below to install DIADesigner-AX.

1. Double-click **DIAInstaller** icon to check the latest version of DIADesigner-AX.

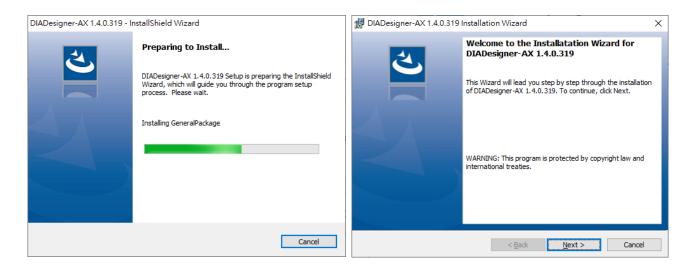
2. Click **Download**.

| DIASt | udio | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------|------------|--------|
| Information | Product Name | Issue Date | Release Version | Installed Version | Size | | |
| i | DIADesigner | 2022/08 | 1.2 2 |] | 1.3 GB | ↓ Download | Jinst |
| i | DIADesigner-AX | 2023/03 | 1.4 2 |] | 1.2 GB | ↓ Download | 🛃 Inst |
| i | DIASelector | 2023/03 | 1.3 2 |] | 666.5 MB | ↓ Download | Ins |
| 1 | DIAScreen | 2022/12 | 1.3 2 |] | 1.2 GB | ➡ Download | s Ins |
| i | COMMGR | 2022/08 | 2.2 2.2 |] | 317.7 MB | ➡ Download | Ins |

3. After DIADesigner-AX is downloaded and grayed out, click Install.

| Ø DIAInstaller | | | | | | - 🗆 🗙 |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| \$ | DIAInstall | er | | | C | NELT A |
| Software List | DIAStudio | | | | Engl | ish 🔹 顏忠 許 |
| | Information Product Nam | e Issue Date | Release Version Installe | ed Version Size | | |
| ţ <u>ô</u> } | 1 DIADesigner | 2022/08 | 1.2 | 1.3 GB | Download | Linstall |
| Option | 1 DIADesigner- | AX 2023/03 | 1.4 | 1.2 GB | Downloaded | Lange Install |
| Sold Barrier | 1 DIASelector | 2023/03 | 1.3 💙 🖓 | 666.5 MB | Download | Install |
| Tool | 1 DIAScreen | 2022/12 | 1.3 | 1.2 GB | Download | Install |
| | 1 COMMGR | 2022/08 | 2.2 | 317.7 MB | ➡ Download | Install |
| Software Manual | | | | | | |
| ال About | | | | Cpen I | Download Path | Check for Updates |

4. An InstallShield Wizard shows up and starts installing. Click Next after completion.



5. The window of License Agreement shows up. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement and click Next.

| 🛃 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard X | 😸 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard 🛛 🗙 |
|---|--|
| Software License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully. | Software License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully. |
| Software License Agreement | License Agreement for the usage of a CODESYS Software or CODESYS |
| This Software License Agreement (hereinafter referred to as "Agreement") is a | Software Package |
| legal undertaking between User (including but not limited to an individual, an | |
| entity and any individual using the Software on behalf of such entity) and Delta | General Terms of License (End User License |
| Electronics, Inc. (hereinafter referred to as "Delta") for the use of software | Agreement) for the supplied Software. Please read this Software User Agreement carefully before using |
| provided by Delta (hereinafter referred to as "Software"). User will be deemed to v | the supplied Software. Downloading or installation of |
| I accept the terms in the license agreement | accept the terms in the license agreement Print |
| O I do not accept the terms in the license agreement | OI do not accept the terms in the license agreement Open Source Licenses |
| InstallShield | InstallShield |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel |

6. The window of Very important information shows up. Select I have read the information and click Next.

| 👹 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installat | tion Wizard | | × |
|--|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| Very important information | | | 4 |
| Please read the following information c | arefully. | | |
| COMPATIBILITY INFORMATION | | | |
| | | | |
| CDS-81849 SysFile.lsConfig | File should che | ck absolute pa | th too |
| For more details see Advisory 2022 website: https://customers.codesy 17089&token=cc5041e24fc744a39 | s.com/index.php | elD=dumpFile | &t=f&f= |
| CDS-81306 CLONE - OPC Server | : Secure passw | ord used for P | LC login 🛛 🗡 |
| I have read the information | | | Print |
| ○ I have not rea <u>d</u> the information yet | | | _ |
| InstallShield | | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack | <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel |

7. Click Change... to change the download path. Or leave the default path unchanged. Click Next.

| 🔀 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard | × | 记 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard X |
|---|--------|--|
| Destination Folder Click Next to install to this folder, or click Change to install to a different folder. | と | Change Current Destination Folder Browse to the destination folder. |
| Install DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 to: C:\Program Files\Delta Industrial Automation\DIAStudio\DIADesigner-AX 1.4\ | hange | Look in: |
| | Cancel | OK Cancel |

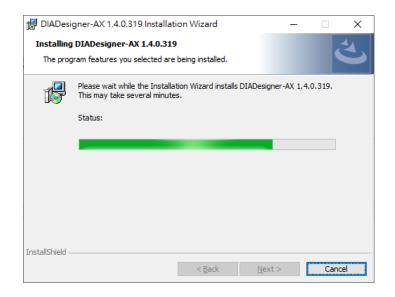
8. The window of Setup Type shows up as the image shown below. Select the one you need and then click Next.

| 🔀 DIADesigner-/ | AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard | × | | |
|---|---|-------|--|--|
| Setup Type Choose the setup type that best suits your needs. | | | | |
| Please select a | setup type. | | | |
| ● <u>Complete</u> | All program features will be installed. (Requires the most disk space.) | | | |
| ○ Cu <u>s</u> tom | Choose which program features you want installed and where they will be installed. Recommended for advanced users. | | | |
| InstallShield | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C | ancel | | |

9. The window of Ready to Install the Program appears as below. Click Install to continue.

| 🔀 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 Installation Wizard | × |
|---|------------------------------|
| Ready to Install the Program | 4. |
| The wizard is ready to begin installation. | |
| Click Install to begin the installation. | |
| If you want to review or change any of your installation settings exit the wizard. | , dick Back. Click Cancel to |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| InstallShield | |
| < <u>B</u> ack | Install Cancel |

10. It may take some time to install.



11. After installation, the window of InstallShield Wizard Completed appears. Click Finish to complete the installation.

| 🔀 DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319 In | stallation Wizard | × |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| ځ | Installation Wizard Completed This Wizard has successfully installed DIADesigner-AX 1.4.0.319. Click Finish to exit the wizard. | |
| | < Back Finish Cancel | |

3.2.2 Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX

Follow the steps below to uninstall DIADesigner-AX.

1. Double-click **DIAInstaller** icon to open and then click **Uninstall**.

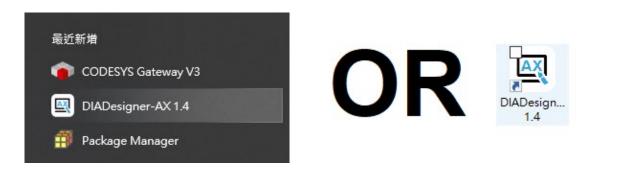
| 😵 DIAInstaller | | | | | | | - - × |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------|------------------------|-------------------|
| \$ | DIAInstaller | | | | | C | A DELTA |
| Software List | DIAStudio | | | | | | English Sign In |
| | Information Product Name | Issue Date | Release Version | Installed Version | Size | | |
| | DIADesigner | 2022/08 | 1.2 2 |] | 1.3 GB | ↓ Download | Install |
| Option | DIADesigner-AX | 2023/03 | 1.4 💙 🕃 | 1.4.0 | 1.2 GB | U Start Application | Uninstall |
| × | İ DIASelector | 2023/03 | 1.3 💙 ? |] | 666.5 MB | ➡ Download | Install |
| Tool | İ DIAScreen | 2022/12 | 1.3 💙 🕄 |] | 1.2 GB | ➡ Download | |
| | L COMMGR | 2022/08 | 2.2 2.2 |] | 317.7 MB | ➡ Download | stall |
| Ĩ | | | | | | | |
| Software Manual | | | | | | | |
| ی About | | | | | 🚰 Оре | n Download Path | Check for Updates |

2. The system will remove DIADesigner-AX from your computer in the background automatically.

3.3 Getting Started and Setting up Communication

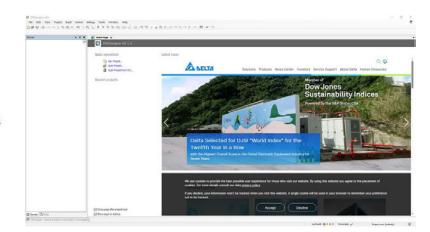
3.3.1 Getting Started

After DIADesigner-AX is successfully installed, click **Start** Start Star



After the display of the welcome page, you can see the homepage as below. Refer to **Chapter 4** for more details on operation.





3

3.3.2 Setting up Communication

After DIADesigner-AX is successfully installed, the system creates an execution file CODESYS Gateway V3 under the folder of Delta Industrial Automation and GatewaySysTray.exe in the folder of Program Files. Double-click either one to start the Gateway.

Hereafter, the Gateway is started automatically whenever you turn on your computer. Its icon shall appear on the taskbar. If not, go to the execution file CODESYS Gateway V3 under the folder of Delta Industrial Automation or GatewaySysTray.exe in the Program Files folder to start the Gateway manually.

| | | 🔤 « Program Files → Delta Industrial A | utomation > DIAStudio > | DIADesigner-AX 1.4 | > GatewayPL |
|-----------------|-----|--|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| | | 2稱 ^ | 修改日期 | 類型 | 大小 |
| | | PCAN_Basic | 2023/8/17 下午 04:38 | 檔案資料夾 | |
| | | SourceLicenses | 2023/8/17 下午 04:38 | 檔案資料夾 | |
| | | tempCFG | 2023/8/17 下午 04:38 | 檔案資料夾 | |
| | | CmpBlkDrvCanClient.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 424 KI |
| | | CmpBlkDrvCanServer.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 420 K |
| | | CmpBlkDrvUsb.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 425 K |
| | | CmpEL6751CanDrv.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 414 K |
| | | CmplxxatCANDrv.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 422 K |
| | | CmpKvaserCANDrv.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 421 K |
| | | CmpPCANBasicDrv.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 420 K |
| | | Gateway.cfg | 2023/8/17 下午 04:39 | CFG 檔案 | 1 K |
| | | GatewayService.exe | 2022/9/28 上午 07:25 | 應用程式 | 4,067 K |
| | | 💿 GatewaySysTray.exe | 2022/9/28 上午 07:25 | 應用程式 | 1,235 K |
| ESYS Gateway V3 | OR |] qt.conf | 2021/2/10 下午 05:42 | CONF 檔案 | 1 K |
| | OIX | ServiceControl.exe | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式 | 751 K |
| | | SysGraphicWindowQt.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 876 KI |
| | | SysNativeCommonControlsQt.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 429 K |
| | | SysPipeWindows.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 417 K |
| | | SysSvgRendererQt.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 417 K |
| | | SysSvgRendererWin.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 809 K |
| | | SysWindowFileDialogQt.dll | 2022/9/28 下午 04:25 | 應用程式擴充 | 412 K |

 \bigcirc

0

.64

You can click the Gateway icon **I** on the taskbar to check its status. The icon is in red when the Gateway is started.

de



Click Stop Gateway if you need to stop gateway working. The icon turns grey when the gateway is stopped.

| Start Gateway Stop Gateway | Start Gateway Stop Gateway |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Exit Gateway Control | Exit Gateway Control |
| About | About |
| 🄹 😹 🔿 | > 茄 🗇 |

If you need to discontinue the execution of GatewaySysTray completely, select **Exit Gateway Control** and the icon will disappear from the taskbar.



Get into the software **DIADesigner-AX** and open or create a project to see the project-setting page. Double-click **Device** (Product Name) in the left-hand column to open the device-setting page. The Gateway status is under the **Communication Settings** tab. If the Gateway is started, its light is green. If the Gateway is stopped, its light is red.

| Devices | → ∓ X | Device X | | |
|---|--------------|---|---|--|
| ⊟-{} <i>TCPMODBUS</i> = ∭ Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | • | Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway + Device + | |
| Perice (AX-BACEPO Linux SM Series) A Itetrionic Configuration A Ether CAT Filter A polaciton Device (AX-BACE (Configuration) Device (Device) Device (Configuration) Device (Configuration) Device (Device) Device (Configuration) Device (| | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment | Scan Network Gateway Device - Gateway Dr-Address Iocalicat 1217 | AX8TestRename (active) Device Name: AX8TestRename Device Address: 000A Device Address: 000A Device Address: 000A Target Type: 16F7 0412 Target Type: 1012 Target Version: 3.5.18.30 |
| ModbusTCP_Slave_Device (ModbusTCP Slave Device) ModbusTCP_Slave_Device (ModbusTCP Slave Device) ModbusTCP_Slave_Device (ModbusTCP Slave Device) ModbusTCP_Slave_Device (Builtin_Piles_Encoder) | | System IEC Objects | | Delta Electronics Target Version: |

To configure the Local Gateway, click **Gateway** and select **Configure the Local Gateway...** to open the setting window.

| service ackup and Restore les rg c Settings | Device X Ethernet | | | | |
|--|--|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| pplications pdkup and Restore es es eg g C Settings Gateway Gateway Gateway. Gateway. Gateway. Gateway. Gateway. Gateway. Gateway. DP-Address: Iocalhost Composition Com | mmunication Settings | Scan Network | Gateway 👻 D | evice 🔻 | |
| redup and Restore es rg C Settings Gateway-1 IP-Address: localhost | plications | | | | |
| Interface Setting Interface Setting Interface Setting Interface Default UDP interface Name Default UDP interface To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and down | | | | | - I - |
| Ites Gateway Gateway Gateway Gateway Costings Gateway Configuration Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway Cost Gateway C | ackup and Restore | | Configure | | |
| Image: Contract of the second seco | es | | • | | |
| C Settings IP-Address: Iocalhost Gateway Configuration Interface Setting Interface Name Default UDP interface Name To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and down | g | | | | Gateway |
| Gateway Configuration Interface Image: Setting Image: Default UDP interface Name Default UDP interface To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and down | C Sattings | | | | |
| Interface Setting Image: Default UDP interface Default UDP interface Name Default UDP interface | ic settings | | | | |
| Image: Second state Name Default UDP interface | Gateway Configuration | | | | × |
| Name Default UDP interface | Interface | Se | etting | | |
| To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and down | | - | · | | |
| To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and down keys. | | | | | |
| | To display additional informatic keys. | n about any item l | isted above, sele | ect it with your mous | e or up and down |

You can create a different port such as COM Port for connection. Click Add, select Add Interface... and then use the drop-down list above to select COM Port to add.

| Gateway Configuration | | × | | Gateway Configuration | | × |
|--|---|----------------|---|---|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Interface Job Construction | Setting Default UDP interface | | ♦ | Interface Name COM Port COM Port Shared Memory UDP interface TCP Interface USB Port CAN Chemt | Setting Default UDP interface | |
| To display additional information about any ikeys. Add Interface Add Configuration Setting Add Delete Up | tem listed above, select it with your mouse | or up and down | | Add Dekte Up | Down | OK Cencel |

After COM Port is added, you can set up its name, baud rate and the corresponding port. Click **OK** once the setting is done. You should Stop/Start GateSysTray again to ensure the following actions, such as Scan Network, work properly. Please refer to the previous steps to run GateSysTray again.

| Interface | Setting | |
|--|---|----------------|
| 😑 🎫 UDP interface | | |
| Name | Default UDP interface | |
| 😑 🎫 COM Port | | |
| Name | Com<1> | |
| Baudrate | 57600 | |
| Port | 1 | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| To display additional information | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information - keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |
| To display additional information keys. | about any item listed above, select it with your mous | e or up and do |

3

You can also add configuration settings under COM Port. Right-click the **COM Port** icon **Port**, click **Add** and select **Add Configuration Setting...** to add the setting items. After that, you can further define the setting values. Click **OK** once the setting is done.

| To display additional information about any item listed above, select it with your mouse or up and dow keys. | vn 🖃 🎫 COM Port | |
|--|--|--------|
| | Name | Com<1> |
| B Add Interface | Baudrate | 57600 |
| Add Configuration Setting | Port | 1 |
| | Enable auto addressing 🗸 🗸 | |
| | Enable auto addressing Local address | |
| | Parity | |
| | Stop bits Enable half-duplex auto negotiate | |
| | Enable RTS toggle handshaking Timeout | |

After the configurations of Local Gateway are nailed down, go to the **Scan Network** tab to bring out network scanned results on the **Select Device** setting page. Select **AX-816EP0ME1T** and then click **OK**.

| Communication Settings Scan Network Gateway • Device • Applications Backup and Restore Files Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings System Settings Scan Network Gateway • Device • Image: Control of the control o | |
|--|---|
| Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics Licensed Software Metrics Device Name: AX-816EPOME1T [000A] Device Address: | |
| Backup and Restore Files Log Dg PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics Device Name: AX-816EPOME1T [000A] Device Address: | |
| Files Gateway Log Gateway PLC Settings Select Device PLC Shell Select the Network Path to the Controller Licensed Software Metrics Max-816EPOME1T [000A] | |
| Log Select Device Select Device Select the Network Path to the Controller PLC Shell Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Scan Network Licensed Software Metrics Image: Ax-816EP0ME1T [000A] Device Address: Vink | |
| PLC Settings Select the Network Path to the Controller PLC Shell Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Scan Network Licensed Software Metrics Max-816EP0ME1T Scan Network | × |
| PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Device Address: Scan Network Wink Device Address: | |
| Licensed Software Metrics Wink Wink | |
| | |
| | |
| Right Settings IP-Address: 192, 168,0,10 | |
| System Parameters 192.168.1.10 | |
| System IEC Objects MAC-Address: 00:18:23:86:8b:da | |
| Task Deployment 00:18:23:86:8b:db | |
| Status Block driver: UDP | |
| Information Encrypted Communication: | |
| | |
| Hide non-matching devices, filter by Target ID | |

| Device X | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------------------------|
| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway - De | evice 👻 | | |
| Applications | | | Г | |
| Backup and Restore | | • | _ | |
| Files | | | | |
| Log | | Gateway | ~ | AX-816EP0ME1T (active) |
| PLC Settings | | IP-Address: localhost | | Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T |
| PLC Shell | | Port: | | Device Address: |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | 1217 | | 000A IP-Address: |
| System Settings | | | | 192.168.0.10 192.168.1.10 |
| Right Settings | | | | MAC-Address: 00:18:23:86:8b:da |
| System Parameters | | | | 00:18:23:86:8b:db Target ID: |
| System IEC Objects | | | | 16F7 0412 |
| Task Deployment | | | | Target Type: 4102 |
| Status | | | | Target Vendor: Delta Electronics |
| Information | | | | Target Version: 3.5.18.30 |
| | | | _ L | |

If the connection is successfully established, the status light is green with the device information shown below.

МЕМО



Chapter 4 Basic Operation

Table of Contents

| 4.1 | Introduct | ion to DIADesigner-AX4-3 |
|-----|-------------|--|
| 4.1 | .1 Creati | ng a New Project 4-3 |
| 4.2 | Settings of | on the Device Page4-5 |
| 4.2 | .1 CPU Pa | arameter Settings |
| | 4.2.1.1 | Communication Settings |
| | 4.2.1.2 | Applications |
| | 4.2.1.3 | Backup and Restore 4-10 |
| | 4.2.1.4 | Files |
| | 4.2.1.5 | Log 4-11 |
| | 4.2.1.6 | PLC Settings 4-13 |
| | 4.2.1.7 | PLC Shell 4-15 |
| | 4.2.1.8 | User and Groups 4-16 |
| | 4.2.1.9 | Access Rights 4-20 |
| | 4.2.1.10 | Symbol Rights 4-26 |
| | 4.2.1.11 | System Settings 4-28 |
| | 4.2.1.12 | System Parameters 4-30 |
| | 4.2.1.13 | Task Deployment 4-31 |
| | 4.2.1.14 | Status |
| | 4.2.1.15 | Information |
| 4.3 | Data Type | e and Variables4-33 |
| 4.3 | .1 Data T | Гуре 4-33 |
| 4.3 | .2 Variab | les |
| | 4.3.2.1 | Declaration of Variables |
| | 4.3.2.2 | Address Assignment 4-35 |
| | 4.3.2.3 | Variables |
| | 4.3.2.4 | User-defined Data Type 4-42 |
| | 4.3.2.5 | Timing for the Variable being Cleared to Zero 4-45 |
| | 4.3.2.6 | Timing for the Default Value to be Valid 4-45 |
| 4.4 | Task | |
| 4.4 | .1 Task C | Configuration 4-46 |
| | 4.4.1.1 | Task Type 4-46 |
| | 4.4.1.2 | Bus Cycle Task 4-47 |
| | 4.4.1.3 | Watchdog 4-48 |
| | 4.4.1.4 | Motion Instructions for Each Type of Task 4-49 |
| 4.5 | Recipe Ma | anager |
| 4.5 | .1 Recipe | e Manager |

| 4.5.2 | Recipe Definition | 4-56 |
|-------|-------------------|------|
| 4.5.3 | RecipeManCommands | 4-58 |

4.1 Introduction to DIADesigner-AX

DIADesigner-AX is an open platform for PLC development system and the core for industrial automation. The adaptable DIADesigner-AX provides an easy way to create professional engineering of IEC 61131-3 automation projects. Based on the IEC 61131-3 data structure and the high-level language programming, DIADesigner-AX is strong in functionality, easy to develop, reliable, extendable and open for development. Integrated with components such as visualization and safety solution, DIADesigner-AX offers a variety of user-friendly engineering functions for your professional applications in controller development system sectors including PLC and motion control.

In DIADesigner-AX, you can customize the user interface by arranging the window layout and the appearance of menus, toolbars and commands according to your requirements.

4.1.1 Creating a New Project

1. Double-click the DIADesigner-AX icon 🔤 to open the software. To create a new project, click **New Project** 🛅 on the Start Page or click **File** on the toolbar and select **New Project** (Ctrl+N).

| File | Edit View Project Buil | d Online Debug | <u>I</u> ools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp |
|------|------------------------|----------------|---|
| | New Project | Ctrl+N | ■ 4 4 4 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |
| 2 | Open Project | Ctrl+O | |
| | Close Project | | Start Page X |
| 53 | Save Project | Ctrl+S | DIADesigner-AX 1.4 |
| | Save Project as | | DIADesigner-AX 1.4 |
| | Project Archive | • | |
| | Source Upload | | Basic operations |
| | Source Download | | The New Project |
| 6 | Print | | 🞯 Open Project |
| | Print Preview | | Open Project from PLC |
| D | Page Setup | | |
| | Recent Projects | • | Recent projects |
| | Exit | Alt+F4 | 1 |

2. A window with two sections, Categories and Templates, will pop up. Click **Projects** in the Categories section and choose **Standard project** in the Templates section. After that, create a name and specify a location for the project and then click **OK**.

| | 1 | Templates |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| | oraries ojects | Empty project Standard project |
| | | |
| A project o Name | Untitled1 | one application, and an empty implementation for PLC_PRG |

3. The Standard Project dialog then appears. Select the device and the programming language from the drop-down lists. Click **OK** after selection, the system will generate a cyclic task with a default PLC_PRG.

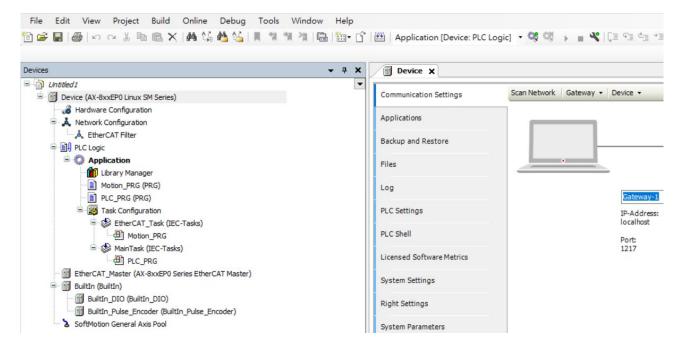
| Standard Project | | × |
|------------------|--|--------|
| | You are about to create a new standard project. This wizard will create the following objects within this project: | |
| | One programmable device as specified below Two programs PLC_PRG and Motion_PRG in the language specified below One cyclic task which calls PLC_PRG and one cyclic task which calls Motion_PRG ••• | |
| Information | | |
| Name | AX-8xxEPO Linux SM Series | |
| Vendor | Delta Electronics, Inc | |
| Description | CODESYS Control from Delta Electronics | |
| Device | AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series | \sim |
| Version | 3.5.15.54 | \sim |
| PLC_PRG in | 3 - F | \sim |
| | Continuous Function Chart (CPC) Continuous Function Chart (CPC) - page-oriented Function Block Diagram (FBD) Ladder Logic Diagram (LD) | |
| | Sequential Function Chart (SFC) Structured Text (ST) | |

 After a new project is created, a project management area will be added on the left-hand side. All the options are listed in nodes. If nothing appears in the project management area, click View > Devices (Alt+0) on the toolbar to open it.

| File Edit View Project Build Online Debug Tools Window Help Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Devices Image: Device (AX-StocEP0 Linux SM Series) Image: Section (Device: American (Device: PLC Logic)) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) age: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section (Device: PLC Logic) Image: Section |
|---|
| Devices |
| |
| Constraints Configuration Con |
| Arrow Arr |
| A Network Configuration A EtherCAT Filter |
| A EtherCAT Filter |
| |
| |
| E Dip PCC Logic |
| P C Application |
| 1 Library Manager |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) PIC_PRG (PRG) PIC_PRG (PRG) |
| E PLC_PRG (PRG) |
| |
| - Bi Motion_RRG |
| E S ManTask (EC-Tasks) |
| - AT PLC PRG |
| TetherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) |
| 🖙 👘 Builtín (Builtín) |
| - Builtn_DIO Builtn_DIO) |
| Bultin_Pulse_Encoder (Bultin_Pulse_Encoder) |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |

4.2 Settings on the Device Page

In this section, all setting items on the Device page will be introduced respectively.



4.2.1 CPU Parameter Settings

4.2.1.1 Communication Settings

On the **Communication Settings** page, you can define method for communication between DIADesigner-AX and the controller. Use the drop-down list of the Gateway tab to add new gateways, manage existing gateways or configure local gateways. You can simply specify an IP address (e.g. 192.168.1.5) or its device name (e.g. AX-816EP0ME1T) in the field under the image of controller. After that, DIADesigner-AX will automatically scan for the controller within the network of the Gateway.

| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway - | Device 🔻 | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|
| Applications | | | | | |
| Backup and Restore | | | | | |
| Files | | Inclusion inclusion | • | • | |
| Log | | Gateway | ~ | TWTC 1NB0 194 | - |
| PLC Settings | | IP-Address: localhost | | Press ENTER to set active pat | |
| PLC Shell | | Port: | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | 1217 | | | |

Connection Status

The dots in the bottom right corner of the images of Gateway and the controller indicate the connection status.

- Red: unable to establish connection.
- Green: connection is established.
- Black: unknown connection status.

| Device X | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway + Device + | | | | |
| Applications | | | | | |
| Backup and Restore | | | | | |
| Files | | | | | |
| Log | Gateway Gateway TWTC1NB0128 | | | | |
| PLC Settings | IP-Address: Press ENTER to set active path localhost | | | | |
| PLC Shell | Port: 1217 | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | | | | |
| Tab Description | | | | | |
| Coop notwork | Click Scan Network to open the Select Device window. All configured gateways with the associated | | | | |
| Scan network | controllers are listed here. You can select a target device from the list. | | | | |

| | The following setting items are included in this menu: |
|---------|---|
| | Add New Gateway: add and define a new gateway channel. |
| Gateway | Manage Gateways: an overview of all gateways is provided. You can add / delete entries or |
| - | change the order here. |
| | • Configure the Local Gateway: click to open the Gateway Configuration page. You can |
| | configure the block drivers for the local gateway here. |
| | The following setting items are included in this menu: |
| | Options |
| | - Add Current Device to Favorites: add the selected device to the list of favorite devices. |
| | - Manage Favorite Devices: click to open a list of all preferred devices. You can add / delete |
| | entries or change their order here. The device on the top is set as default. |
| | - Filter Network Scans by Target ID: only the device whose target ID is the same as the |
| | current device configured in the project is displayed. |
| | - Confirmed Online Mode: DIADesigner-AX requires you to confirm when calling the |
| | following online commands for safety purposes: |
| | Force values, Write values, Multiple loading, Remove force list, Single cycle, Start, and Stop. |
| | - Store Communication Settings in Project: |
| | In the project, which can be reused |
| | on the same computer later. If you use this project on another computer, the valid path must |
| | be reset. |
| | DIADesigner-AX stores the communication settings in the locally installed options and |
| Device | user can reuse this setting on the same computer. |
| | ■ Rename Active Device |
| | Click to open the Change Device Name window. |
| | Send Echo Service |
| | DIADesigner-AX sends five echo services like the networking utility, Ping, to the controller to |
| | test network connections. These services are sent without data packet in the beginning and then |
| | sent with packet. The scope of data packets depends on the communication buffer of the |
| | controller. Information about each and the average response time for the transmission is shown |
| | on a new dialog box. |
| | ■ Encrypted Communication |
| | Communication to the controller is encrypted. A certificate is required to log in to the controller. |
| | If the certificate is not available, an error message will show up, prompting whether the certificate |
| | should be displayed / installed or not. |
| | Encrypted Communication is disabled when the Enforce Encrypted Communication option in |
| | the Security Level list is selected (View > Security Screen). |
| | |

4

| - | Change Runtime Security Policy | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| | Click to open the Ch | ange Runtime Security Policy window to set encrypted communication | |
| | for the device. The configuration of the controller will also be changed if the communicat | | |
| | policy is modified. | | |
| | Communication | | |
| | Current policy | The currently selected policy for communication encryption. | |
| | New policy | No encryption: encrypted communication is NOT supported. Optional encryption: both encrypted and unencrypted communications are supported. Enforced encryption: only encrypted communication is supported. | |
| | | Device User Management | |
| | Current policy | The currently selected policy for user management. | |
| | New policy | Optional user management: users can decide whether to activate encrypted communication or not. Enforced user management: encrypted communication must be activated. | |

4.2.1.2 Applications

| Device X | | |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| Communication Settings | | |
| Applications | Applications on the PLC | |
| Backup and Restore | <gateway configured="" not="" properly=""></gateway> | |
| Files | | |
| Log | | |
| PLC Settings | | |
| PLC Shell | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | |
| System Settings | | |
| Right Settings | | |
| System Parameters | | |
| System IEC Objects | | |
| Task Deployment | | |
| Status | | > |

You can check and manage the applications on the controller on this page.

| Item | Description | | |
|-----------------------|---|--|--|
| 🙆 Refresh List | To have the controller scanned for applications to update the list accordingly. | | |
| X Remove | To delete the application selected in the list. | | |
| 🕅 Remove All | To delete all listed applications on the controller. | | |
| Details | To check the attributes defined for the application on the Information tab. | | |
| Content ^{*1} | To check additional information about the differences between the latest generated code and the application code that exists on the controller, which are displayed in a comparison view. | | |

*1: It is required to click **Application** under **Applications on the PLC** to activate **Content** button (**Application** > **Properties** > **Application generation options**).

4.2.1.3 Backup and Restore

You can backup and restore the application-specific files on the controller by saving and reading zip archive.

| Device X | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Communication Settings | Backup - Restore - | | |
| Applications | Target Information | - | |
| Backup and Restore | Type Version | | |
| Files | Backup Information | | |
| Log | File name Size of active files | 0 bytes | |
| PLC Settings | Mode | No information | |
| PLC Shell | Comment | ^ | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | | |
| System Settings | Active Component | File Size Requires STOP | |
| Right Settings | | | |

| Tab | Description |
|---------|---|
| Backup | The items on the drop-down list are as follows: |
| | Read Backup Information from Device: searching and listing all application-specific |
| | files in the PIcLogic directory. |
| | Create Backup File and Save to Disc: compressing the chosen files into a backup |
| | zip file. (The file extension is .tbf, i.e. Target Backup File). |
| | Save Backup File to Device: saving the backup file to the controller. |
| Restore | The items on the drop-down list are as follows: |
| | • Load Backup File from Disc: selecting one backup file from the list found on the disk |
| | to view its content. |
| | Load Backup File from Device: selecting one backup file from the list found on the |
| | controller to view its content. |
| | Restore Backup to Device: restoring the backup file to the controller. |

• Target Information

| ID | Device ID |
|---------|----------------|
| Туре | Device type |
| Version | Device version |

Backup Information

| File name | Storage path for the backup file |
|----------------------|---|
| Size of active files | Total size of the backup files set as active in the table |
| Mode | The scope for backup |

| File name Storage path for the backup file | |
|--|--|
| Comment | Optional entry for comment of the backup file; saved in the meta.info file and can be read |
| | when the files are restored |

4.2.1.4 Files

This section is for file transfer between the computer and the controller via DIADesigner-AX.

| Size | e Modifie | |
|------|-----------|----|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | >> |
| | | << |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

| Location | Current file path in the computer system | |
|------------------|--|--|
| Location | The files with its name, size, and date modified are listed in the subdirectories below. | |
| | To create a new file folder | |
| × | To delete the selected files or folders | |
| -\$ 7 | To update the list of files and folders in the set path (Location) | |
| >> | To write files to the controller | |
| << | To restore files from the controller | |

4.2.1.5 Log

In Log, it lists the events that occurred in the target system, including:

- Events which have occurred from system startup to shutdown (components loaded including version)
- Record of application operation including application download, online change, etc.
- Custom entries
- Log entries from I/O driver

• Log entries from data sources

| Communication Settings | Component | ts 🕶 🐨 🕆 🖶 🙁 0 🤤 9 | 97 😢 0 🚯 33 🕦 0 Search in messages 🔍 🔍 /delta/codesyscontrol.log | ▼ UTC Time f f f |
|---------------------------|-----------|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| Applications | Severity | Time Stamp | Description | Component |
| Applications | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:20 | App StartDone | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| Backup and Restore | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:20 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:20 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Files | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | App StopDone 4 | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StopDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Log | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStop!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | App StartDone | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| PLC Settings | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| PLC Shell | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:19 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| PLC Shell | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:18 | App StopDone 4 | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| Licensed Software Metrics | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:18 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StopDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:18 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStop!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| System Settings | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:17 | App StartDone | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| 1 | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:17 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Right Settings | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:17 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:16 | App StopDone 4 | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| System Parameters | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:16 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StopDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 10:01:16 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStop!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Task Deployment | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:20 | App StartDone | CmpAXCxxPxxDrvLinux |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:20 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Status | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:20 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart!! | IoDrvDeltaModbusTCPM |
| Information | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |
| Information | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |
| | • | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |
| | • | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |
| | 0 | 25.05.2023 09:18:18 | sendethframe(1): send error, No buffer space available | SysEthernet |

| Auto scrolling: ON | Displaying all available log entries. |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| | |

| Item | Description | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| UTC time | Standard setting; the time stamp is converted into the local time on the computer as indicated by the time zone of the operating system. The time stamp of the runtime system is displayed. | |
| Severity | Five categories based on the severity of the event: Information Varning Stror Error Exception Debugging You can show or hide each category by clicking the corresponding buttons in the bar. The number of log entries of the category concerned is shown on each button. | |
| Time stamp | Date and time (e.g. 03.05.2023 20:10:31) | |
| Description | Description of the event | |
| Components | The library names used at runtime, e.g. CmpApp | |
| Drop-down list with component names | To display the events related to the selected components | |
| . | To refresh the log list | |
| Ê | To export the list contents to an XML file | |
| Ĩ | To import an XML file to the list (Log) | |

4.2.1.6 PLC Settings

The basic settings for PLC configuration can be completed here. For instance, settings for I/O handling and bus cycle task.

| 1 | Application for I/O handling | Application ~ | |
|---|------------------------------|---|--|
| 2 | PLC Settings | | |
| | Behavior for outputs in stop | Keep current values V | |
| | Always update variables | Disabled (update only if used in a task) $\qquad \qquad \lor$ | |
| | Bus Cycle Options | | |
| 3 | Bus cycle task | MainTask ~ | |
| 0 | Additional Settings | | |
| 4 | Generate force variables fo | r IO mapping 🔄 Enable diagnosis for devices | |
| | Show I/O warnings as error | s Enable symbolic access for IOs | |

① Application for I/O handling

| ltem | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Application for I/O handling | Application for managing I/O operation |

2 PLC Settings

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Update I/O while in stop | When PLC is in stop, DIADesigner-AX does NOT refresh the values of I/O channels. When PLO is in stop, DIADesigner AX still arfore the values of I/O |
| | When PLC is in stop, DIADesigner-AX still refreshes the values of I/O channels. The outputs are set to the predefined default values if the watchdog detects a malfunction. |
| Behavior for outputs in stop | The way to deal with the output channels when the controller is in stop: Keep current values: the current values are retained. Set all outputs to default: the default values resulting from the I/O mapping are assigned. Execute program: you can control the output values via a program contained in the project, which DIADesigner-AX executes in the stopped state. Enter the program name in the field on the right side. |
| Always update variables | Global setting, which defines whether or not DIADesigner-AX updates the I/O variables in the bus cycle task. This setting is effective for I/O variables of the slaves and modules only when their update settings are defined as Disabled . |

| Item | Description |
|------|--|
| | Disabled (update only if used in a task): DIADesigner-AX updates the |
| | I/O variables only if they are used in a task. |
| | Enabled 1 (use bus cycle task if not used in any task): DIADesigner- |
| | AX updates the I/O variables in the bus cycle task if they are not applied |
| | in any other tasks. |
| | Enabled 2 (always in bus cycle task): DIADesigner-AX updates all I/O |
| | variables in each cycle of the bus cycle task, regardless of whether they |
| | are used or whether they are mapped to an input or output channel. |

3 Bus Cycle Options

| Item | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Bus cycle task ^{*1} | Task that manages bus cycle. By default, it enters the task cycle by the device- defined options. |

*1: Before you select **<unspecified>** for the bus cycle task, be aware that the default values given in the device description would take effect. You should therefore check this description. You can define the task with the shortest cycle time as default, but you can equally choose the task with the longest cycle time as default.

4 Additional Settings

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| Generate force variables for IO mapping | The device does NOT support this function. |
| | ☑ : DIADesigner-AX automatically integrates the library CAA Device |
| Enable diagnosis for devices | Diagnosis into the project and creates a hidden function block for each device. |
| | If there is already a function block for the device, then either an extended |
| | function block is used (e.g. with EtherCAT) or a further function block instance |
| | is added. It also contains the general implementation of device diagnosis. |
| Show I/O warnings as errors | Warnings concerning the I/O configuration are displayed as errors. |
| Enable symbolic access for IOs | Symbolic access is activated for I/O. |

4.2.1.7 PLC Shell

Users can use this text-based control monitor for accessing specific information from the controller. Specify devicedependent commands for this and receive responses from the controller in a result window.

| Communication Settings | getprgprop | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| Applications | Not implemented | |
| Backup and Restore | | |
| Files | pid | |
| Log | Project Identification: Application: Application | |
| PLC Settings | Code GUID:156a547d-0000-0000-0000-000000000000 Data GUID:ca9eacb3-0000-0000-0000-0000000000000 | |
| PLC Shell | | |
| icensed Software Metrics | | |
| System Settings | | |
| Right Settings | | |
| System Parameters | | |
| Task Deployment | | |
| Status | | |
| Information | Enter to send commands | Click to check previous commands |

4

4.2.1.8 User and Groups

User accounts and groups can be edited here to manage the access to objects and files at runtime. Use the default account (Administrator) and password (Administrator) at first logon and change your password afterwards.

| | Device User Logon | | × | |
|--|--|--|---|----------------------------|
| | You are currently and password of | not authorized to perform this operation an user account which has got the suffici- | on the device. Please enter the name ent rights. | |
| | Device name | | | |
| | Deviceaddress | 000A | | |
| | User name | Administrator | | |
| | Password | ••••• | ٥ | |
| | | | | |
| | | | OK Cancel | |
| Users and Gr | oups 🔹 🖻 🖪 | Device user: Administrator | | |
| Contraction of the local division of the loc | All changes are immediately c | | | |
| Users | . An changes are inimediately c | | | |
| 😑 😫 Administra | | | | ♦ Add |
| | nber of group 'Administrator' Inber of group 'Everyone' | | | O Import |
| E S PLC_User 1 | | | | 2 Edit |
| | ber of group 'Administrator' | | | Delete |
| | | | | • • • • • • • |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| Groups | | | | |
| Groups | tor | | | O Add |
| 🔹 🥵 Developer | | | | • Import |
| Everyone | | | | |
| 🕀 🤮 Service | | | | Edit |
| | | | | Delete |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

• Toolbar of the tab

| ltem | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Synchronization | To enable and disable the synchronization function between the editor and the user management on the device. If the button is not pressed, then the editor is blank or it displays a configuration that is loaded from the hard disk. If the button is pressed, then DIADesigner-AX synchronizes the display in the editor continuously with the current user management on the connected device. If the synchronization is activated while the editor contains a user configuration that is not synchronized with the device yet, then a prompt message shall appear with the following options: Upload from the device and overwrite the editor content: the configuration on the device is loaded into the editor, overwriting the current contents. Download the editor content to the device and overwrite the user management there: the configuration in the editor is transferred to the device and applied. |
| 🛱 Import from disk | To import a user management configuration from the file. |
| Export to disk | To save the current configuration of user management as an XML file. |
| Export all to disk | To save all user management configurations to the file. |
| Device user | User name of the user currently logged in. |

• Users

| ltem | Description |
|----------|--|
| • Add | To create a new user account ^{*1} |
| • Import | To select the desired entries and import users into the device user management*2 |
| 🗹 Edit | To change the settings of the selected user account |
| Delete | To delete the selected user account |

• Groups

| ltem | Description |
|----------|--|
| • Add | To create a new user group ^{*3} |
| • Import | To select the desired entries to import groups into the device user management*4 |
| 🗹 Edit | To change the settings of the selected group |
| • Delete | To delete the selected group |

*1: The Add User setting page: click OK after finishing the setting.

| Add User | | | × |
|-----------------------------|---|------------|----------------|
| <u>N</u> ame <u>1</u> | PLC_test1 | | |
| Default group 2 | Administrator | | ~ |
| | | | 6 |
| <u>P</u> assword 3 | ••••• | | O |
| Con <u>f</u> irm password 4 | ••••• | | |
| Password strength 5 | Better | | |
| | 7 🗹 Password can be changed by user | | |
| | 8 🗌 Password must be changed at first login | | |
| | | <u>0</u> K | <u>C</u> ancel |

| | Item | Description |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Name | Define the user name. |
| 2 | Default group | Select the default group. |
| 3 | Password | Set the password. |
| 4 | Confirm password | Enter the password again to confirm the password. |
| 5 | Password strength | Security levels; from Very weak to Very good. |
| 6 | Hide password | I The password is shown with asterisks * when it is typed in. |
| | | |
| 7 | Password can be changed by user | I Password can be changed by the user. |
| 8 | Password must be changed at first | I Password must be changed at first login. |
| | login | |

*2: The Import Users setting page: click OK after selecting the user from the list.

| Import Users | × |
|---|-----------------|
| Project Users | |
| Below you will find a list of all users defined in the project user managen those users which you want to impo user management. | nent. Select |
| Please note that for security reasons enter the password for each selecte This password will be used for the co device user account. | d user account. |
| S Owner | |
| ок | Cancel |

*3: The **Add Group** setting page: enter the new group name and select the group members that are to be added for this new group. Then click **OK**.

- Add Group ×
 Name test2
 Group Members
 Group Administrator
 Group Developer
 Group Everyone
 Group Everyone
 Group Vest1
 Group Watch
 User Administrator
 User PLC_User1
 OK Cancel
- *4: The **Import Groups** setting page: click **OK** to import after selecting the group from the list.

| Belo | w you will f | ind a list | of all grou | ps currentl | y |
|------|---|------------|-------------|-------------|---|
| thos | ned in the p e groups w ce user mar | hich you | want to in | | |
| 93 | Everyone | | | | |
| 93 | Owner | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

4.2.1.9 Access Rights

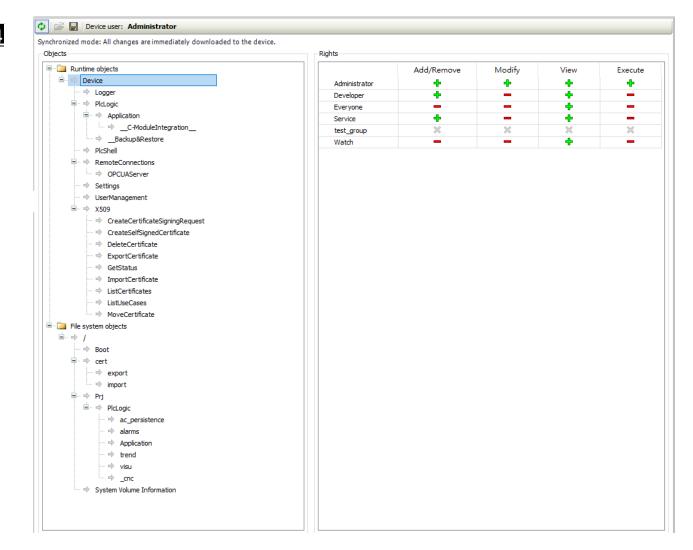
Here you can define the access rights to the AX-8 Series PLC. As in the previous section **Users and Groups**, the users must be members of at least one user group; and, only user groups can be granted certain access rights.

Requirements for displaying the Access Rights page:

• In the DIADesigner-AX options, the Device editor category must be selected to display the Access Rights page. Note that this DIADesigner-AX option can be overwritten by the device description.

The access rights are granted to user groups instead of users:

- The primary requirement is that user management component should be available on the controller.
- Users and user groups are configured in Users and Groups.



• Toolbar of the tab

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Synchronization | To enable and disable the synchronization between the editor and the user management on the device. If the button is not pressed, then the editor is blank or it displays a configuration that is loaded from the hard disk. If the button is pressed, then DIADesigner-AX synchronizes the display in the editor continuously with the current user management on the connected device. |
| 🛱 Import from disk | N/A |
| Export to disk | To save the current user management configuration as an XML file. |
| Device user | User name of the user currently logged in. |

Objects

Description

In the tree structure, the objects to which actions can be executed at runtime are listed and sorted in the respective groups. In the **Rights** view, you can configure the access options of the user group for the selected object.

Object source (root node):

- **Runtime objects >** *I*: in these objects, the rights can be granted to folders of the current execution directory.
- File system objects > Device: in these objects, those with online access are managed and therefore the access rights should be controlled.

Refer to Overview of the objects for the descriptions of the objects.

Object groups and objects (indented):

E.g. under Device, there are child nodes such as Logger, PIcLogic, Settings, UserManagement.

Rights

Description

In general, the access rights of the subobjects are inherited from the root object (also Device or /). It implies that any changes of the access rights of a user group to a parent object also apply to its child objects.

The table applies to the object that is currently selected in the tree structure. It shows the rights currently configured for each user group on this object.

| | Description | | | | |
|---|---|---------------------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| unchronized mode: All changes are immediately downloaded to the | e device. | | | | |
| Objects | Rights | | | | |
| Runtime objects | | Add/Remove | Modify | View | Execute |
| E Device | Administrator | + | + | + | + |
| → Logger ⇒ PicLogic | Developer | + | - | | |
| ⇒ Application | Everyone Service | | | <u>+</u> | |
| └─ | test_group | × | × | × | × |
| Backup&Restore | Watch | - | - | + | - |
| Applicable actions on the object: | | | | | |
| Add/Remove | | | | | |
| Modify | | | | | |
| ■ View | | | | | |
| ■ Execute | | | | | |
| selected object. | - | access rights c | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| When an object is selected, the table of selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with | by an object | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: | by an object which kind of rights for the | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with | by an object which kind of rights for the | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: | by an object which kind of rights for the | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: • caccess right granted explicitly | by an object which kind of rights for the | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: : access right granted explicitly : access right denied explicitly | by an object which kind of rights for the | - | of the availa | ble user gr | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: access right granted explicitly access right denied explicitly access right granted through | by an object which kind of rights for the inheritance hheritance | object | | | oups for t |
| selected object. The table provides a quick overview of Which access rights are evaluated Which user group is assigned with Meanings of the symbols: access right granted explicitly access right denied explicitly access right granted through access right denied through in | by an object which kind of rights for the inheritance hheritance | object from the parent | | | oups for t |

• Overview of the objects

Runtime objects > Device

| Runtime objects | | |
|-----------------|------------|--|
| - 🔿 Device | | |
| 🖮 🔿 Logger | | |
| 🖶 🔿 PlcLogic | | |
| Application | | |
| | ntegration | |
| →Backup&Resto | | |

- Logger:

Logger in the Access Rights tab is read-only as it is used online. Therefore, the only right that can be granted is the View action.

| Runtin | e objects |
|--------|------------------|
| 🔿 De | vice |
| | Logger |
| i- ⇒ | PlcLogic |
| Ē | Application |
| | |
| | → Backup&Restore |

- PlcLogic:

| Device Deger Deger PlcLogic Device Application | |
|--|----------------------|
| = → PlcLogic | |
| 1 | ger |
| | ogic |
| Application | Application |
| 🛄 🖶C-ModuleIntegration | —C-ModuleIntegration |

All IEC applications are inserted here automatically as subobjects during download. This allows specific control of online access for application. Access rights can be assigned centrally over all applications in the PlcLogic. The Administrator and Developer user groups have full access to the IEC applications while the Service and Watch user groups only have read access (e.g. read-only value monitoring).

- Application:

| 🔄 Runtim | ne objects | |
|--------------|---------------|--|
| 🖹 🔿 De | evice | |
| | Logger | |
| ⊨ - ⇒ | PlcLogic | |
| 8 | - Application | |
| - | | |

The following table lists the actions affected when specific access rights are granted for an IEC application.

- x : access not granted
- : access granted

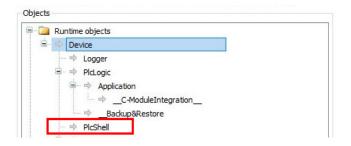
| | Operation | Access rights | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------|--------|------|--|--|
| | Operation | Add/Remove | Execute | Modify | View | | |
| | Login | • | • | • | x | | |
| Application | Create | х | • | • | • | | |
| Application | Create child object | х | • | • | • | | |
| | Delete | x | • | • | • | | |
| | Download / online change | x | • | • | • | | |

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| | | | 1 | |
|------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| Create boot application | x | • | • | • |
| Read variable | • | • | • | x |
| Write variable | • | • | х | x |
| Force variable | • | • | х | x |
| Set and delete breakpoint | • | x | x | • |
| Set next statement | • | х | х | • |
| Read call stack | • | • | • | x |
| Single cycle | • | х | • | • |
| Switch on flow control | • | х | х | • |
| Start / Stop | • | х | • | • |
| Reset | • | х | • | • |
| Restore retain variables | • | х | • | • |
| Save retain variables | • | • | • | x |

- PlcShell:

Only Modify is granted here. This means that only when the Modify right has been granted to a user group can the PLC shell commands be used.



- RemoteConnections:

Additional external connections to the AX-8 Series PLC can be configured under this node. In general, access to OPC UA server can be configured here.

| | RemoteConnections |
|---|-------------------|
| | OPCUAServer |
| | Settings |
| | UserManagement |
| ÷ | X509 |

- Settings:

This is an online access to the configuration settings of the AX-8 Series PLC. By default, access to Modify is granted only to the administrator.

| | RemoteConnections | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| | OPCUAServer | |
| | Settings | |
| | UserManagement | |
| ÷ | ⇒ X509 | |

- UserManagement:

X509:

-

This is an online access to the user management of AX-8 Series PLC. By default, access to read / write is granted only to the administrator.

| | RemoteConnections ⇒ OPCUAServer | |
|-----|------------------------------------|--|
| | Settings | |
| ⇒ | UserManagement | |
| ⊜ | X509 | |
| | | |
| ⊟ ⇒ | RemoteConnections | |
| L | OPCUAServer | |
| => | Settings | |
| | UserManagement | |

This manages the online access of the X.509 certificate. There are two types of accesses:

1. Read (View)

2. Write (Modify)

Each operation is assigned one of these two access rights and is inserted as the child object under X509.

Therefore, access of each operation can be further fine-tuned.

■ File system objects > /

All folders in the execution path of the AX-8 Series PLC are inserted under thefile system object *I*. This allows you to grant specific rights to each folder of the file system.

| i → i → File system objects | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 🔿 Boot | |
| 🛱 🔿 cert | |
| | |
| import | |
| 🖶 🕂 🕈 Prj | |
| 🖻 🔿 PlcLogic | |
| ac_persistence | |
| - 🔿 alarms | |
| | |
| - 🔿 trend | |
| 🛶 🔿 visu | |
| └── ➡ _cnc | |
| System Volume Information | n |

4.2.1.10 Symbol Rights

Here you can define the access rights of different user groups to individual symbol sets available on the AX-8 Series PLC.

Requirements:

- 1. User management must be set up on the controller.
- 2. Download a project to AX-8 Series PLC and make sure Symbol Sets are defined in DIADesigner-AX Object.
- 3. User groups have the data access right for logging on to the AX-8 Series PLC.

| Symbol Configuration 🗙 | | | | | | • |
|--|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|---|---------|-------------|
| 🛛 View 👻 🔛 Build 🛛 🛱 Settings 👻 Tools 👻 | | | | | | |
| • There are 6 configured variables which are not r | eferenced by the IE | EC code. Read | ling and writin | g to them may not have the desired effect(s). | Remove | |
| default | ~ | + n | XX | Configure Symbol Rights | | |
| Changed symbol configuration will be transferred v | ith the next downlo | - | change | | | |
| Symbols | Access Rights | Maximal | Attribute | Туре | Members | Commen |
| E- Constants | 0 | | | | | |
| CompilerVersion | | * ø | | VERSION | | the compile |
| 🔲 🔌 RuntimeVersion | | * | | VERSION | | the runtime |
| 🖶 👿 📄 IoConfig_Globals | | | | | | |
| | Star 1 | * | | IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave | |] |
| | Star 1 | * | | IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave | |] |
| | × | * | | IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave | |] |
| | 5 1 0 | * | | DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.EtherCAT_Diag | | |
| | Star 1 | * | | DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.EtherCAT_ErrorLED_Handle | | |
| - 🔽 < EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion | * | * | | IoDrvEthercatLib.IODrvEtherCAT | |] |
| 🔤 📝 🛷 Pulse_Output | * | * | | DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.DMC_PO_SLOT_REF | | |
| 🛛 📝 🔌 Pulse_Output_SYNC | * | * | | DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.Po_Sync | | |
| | * | * | | DINT | | |
| 🔍 🛷 pIoConfigTaskMap | * | * | | POINTER TO IoConfigTaskMap | | |
| 🖮 📝 📄 PLC_PRG | | | | | | |
| 🐨 📝 🔌 test1 | * | * | | BOOL | | |
| 🐨 📝 | * | * | | WORD | | |
| V fest3 | * | * | | REAL | | |

In the **Symbol Sets** view, all symbol sets are listed under Application whose definition and applications are downloaded to the AX-8 Series PLC altogether.

| Symbol Configuration | Device X | | | · |
|------------------------|--|--------------------------|--------|---|
| Communication Settings | 🙋 🚔 📕 Device user: MAY | | | |
| Applications | Synchronized mode: All changes are immediately downloaded Symbol Sets | to the device. Rights | | |
| Backup and Restore | □ 🔁 Application □ → default | Groups | Access | |
| Files | Viewer | Developer | | |
| Log | l ⇒ management | Everyone Service | | |
| PLC Settings | | Watch | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | |
| Users and Groups | | | | |
| Access Rights | | | | |
| Symbol Rights | | | | |

In the **Rights** view, it lists the user groups defined in the user management of the controller. Select a symbol set to check the corresponding access rights.

+ : access granted

= : inaccessible not granted

Switch between 💠 and 💻 by double-clicking the symbol.

| Device user: MAY | | |
|--|---------------------------|---------|
| Synchronized mode: All changes are immediately o | downloaded to the device. | |
| Symbol Sets | | |
| Application | Groups Administrator | Access |
| → Viewer | Developer | - |
| 🖙 🔿 management | Everyone | - |
| | Service | · · · · |
| | Watch | |

Click 🖬 to save the current configuration to an XML file. The file type is Device symbol management files (*.dsm). Click is to read the file of the same type from the computer.

4.2.1.11 System Settings

Here you can set up the system settings^{*1} for the AX-8 Series PLC. Before setting up, make sure that DIADesigner-AX is successfully connected to the controller. Refer to **section 4.2.1.1** for establishing the connection.

*1: The tab is called **Runtime Clock Configuration** in DIADesigner-AX V1.0.0 while is modified as **System Settings** in V1.1.0 as new function (IP Address setup) is added.

| Go to | Device | > | System | Settings. |
|-------|--------|---|--------|-----------|
|-------|--------|---|--------|-----------|

| Communication Settings | -Runtime Clock | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| | PLC Time: | 6/12/20 |)23 5:15:32 PM | | Read PLC Time |
| Applications | Date: | 2023年 | 6月12日 | Write PLC Time | |
| Backup and Restore | Time: | 下午 05 | 5:15:58 | | Sync with Local Time |
| Files | Time Zone | | | | |
| ines . | PLC Timezone: | (UTC+0 |)8:00) 亚洲/台北 | | Read Timezone |
| Log | Timezone: | (UTC+ | 08:00) 亚洲/台北 | \sim | Write Timezone |
| PLC Settings | Network | | | | |
| PLC Shell | Apply IP set | tings wh | ile download | | |
| | GLAN1 GLAN2 | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | IP Address Mod | e: | Static 🗸 | | |
| System Settings | IP address: | | 192 . 168 . 0 . 10 | | |
| Right Settings | Subnet mask: | | 255 . 255 . 255 . 0 | | |
| | | | | | |
| System Parameters | Default gateway | y: | 0.0.0.0 | | |
| System IEC Objects | | | | | Read from PLC |
| Task Deployment | Retain Settings | | | | |
| Status | Retain Mode: | | Original mode | C | ⊃ %M mode |
| | Start Memory | Address | (%MB) 5144576 | | |
| Information | End Memory | Address | (%MB) 5242879 | | |
| | Clear all %M | | (10110) 0212075 | | Clear |
| | Retain Size | | | | |
| | Default size: 9 | 5 KB | | | |

| Description |
|---|
| PLC Time: current date and time on the controller. Click Read PLC Time to update. |
| Date: click Write PLC Time to write the date on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into the controller. |
| Time: click Sync with Local Time to write the time on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into the controller. |
| PLC Timezone: click Read Timezone to update the current time zone of the controller. |
| ■ Timezone: click Write Timezone to write the time zone on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into the |
| controller. |
| Apply IP settings while download: the IP of the controller is updated as the configured IP |
| address while download. |
| GLAN 1 & GLAN 2: select to switch to the page you are looking for. |
| |

| Item | Description |
|--------------|--|
| | Enable Gateway and DNS Setting: the settings for Default gateway, Preferred DNS server and |
| | Alternate DNS server are available. |
| | IP Address Mode: static IP or DHCP. |
| | IP Setting: IP address / Subnet mask / Default gateway can be set by users. |
| | DNS Setting: users can select Obtain DNS server address automatically or define your own |
| | DNS server addresses. |
| | Read from PLC: read and update the IP address from the active controller. |
| . | If Project ID status is active, the setting must be completed before downloading projects. Click Set |
| Project ID*2 | Project ID to activate the feature. |
| | Original mode: keep original retain setting of AX-8 Series PLC. |
| Retain | ■ %M mode: set up the %M address by giving the values of Start Memory Address and End |
| Settings | Memory Address. |
| | Clear: clear all the %M addresses assigned to the variables. |

*1:

Network parameter settings are available only when the DDF on AX-8 Series PLC is V1.0.1.0 or above.

AX-8 Series PLC support two Ethernet ports and the settings are illustrated as follows:

Take GLAN 1 for instance, when **Enable Gateway and DNS Setting** is checked, Gateway and DNS are configured based on the value set on this page. Meanwhile, the configuration is not available on the other tab, which is GLAN 2.

Conversely, if **Enable Gateway and DNS Setting** is left unchecked, the fields below are greyed out and configuration is unavailable.

| AN1 GLAN2 | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| | | Enable Gateway and DNS Setting |
| IP Address Mode: | Static \sim | |
| IP address: | 192 . 168 . 0 | . 10 |
| Subnet mask: | 255 . 255 . 255 | . 0 |
| Default gateway: | 0.0.0 | . 0 |
| Obtain DNS server a | ddress automatically | |
| Use the following DN | NS server addresses: | |
| Preferred DNS server: | 0.0.0 | . 0 |
| Alternate DNS server: | 0.0.0 | . 0 |
| | | |

*2: Refer to Chapter 8.2 of DIADesigner-AX Software Manual for Project ID operation.

4.2.1.12 System Parameters

You can set up the parameters for the controller in the System Parameters tab but must note that editing during online

monitoring is not supported.

| Communication Settings | Parameter | Туре | Value | Default Value | Unit | Description |
|--|--|---------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-------------|
| | I/O module CONFIG by Manual/Max when Power On | Enumeration of BOOL | Manual | Manual | | |
| Applications | CPU module Stop when I/O Module No Response | Enumeration of BOOL | Stop | Stop | | |
| Backup and Restore | CPU module Stop when I/O Module Occurred Error | Enumeration of BOOL | Keep Run | Keep Run | | |
| backup and Rescore | Select Action when 24V dc Input unstable | Enumeration of BOOL | Continue Running when power stable | Continue Running when power stable | | |
| Synchronized Files | Show Battery Low Voltage Error | Enumeration of BOOL | Enable | Enable | | |
| Log PLC Settings | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings PLC Shell | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings PLC Shell Users and Groups | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings PLC Shell Users and Groups Access Rights | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

- 1. I/O module CONFIG by Manual/Max when Power On: to set the configuration of I/O modules.
 - Manual (default): the actual module placement should be consistent with the configuration set in HWCONFIG for the PLC to run normally.
 - Max: set the maximum number for the module placement. An alarm pops up if the actual I/O module placement is larger than the maximum number defined.
- 2. CPU module Stop when I/O Module No Response: to set whether the CPU and other modules which function normally will continue to run or not when there is any extension module out of control or disconnected with no response.
 - Stop (default): the CPU module stops and reports error. Power-on reset is required for the CPU module to again function normally.
 - Keep RUN: the CPU module and other normal modules keep running.
- 3. CPU module Stop when I/O Module Occurred Error: to set the solution when minor errors occur in extension modules.
 - Stop: the CPU module stops and reports an error. The CPU module is restarted after the error is cleared.
 - Keep RUN (default): the CPU module keeps running with the warning messages recorded.
- 4. Select Action when 24Vdc Input unstable: to set the solution to power failure for 24Vdc input.
 - Continue Running when power stable (default): the CPU stops automatically till the power supply is stable to run again.
 - Into Error Status: the CPU stops with ERROR LED blinking; the CPU stays in STOP even after the power supply becomes stable again.
- 5. Show Battery Low Voltage Error: to set whether to show an alarm or not when the lithium battery is of low voltage or not installed.
 - Disable: there is no alarm when the lithium battery is of low voltage or not installed.
 - Enable (default): an alarm is displayed when the lithium battery is of low voltage or not installed

4.2.1.13 Task Deployment

In the following table it displays the inputs / outputs and their assignments to the defined tasks as well as bus cycle task. The information can be used for troubleshooting when the execution is below expectations. The contents are refreshed only after the project is compiled and downloaded to the CPU.

| Communication Settings | I/O Deployment for Tasks | | | |
|---------------------------|--|----------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| | I/O channels | Channel | EtherCAT_Task (0) | MainTask (1) |
| Applications | | | | |
| Backup and Restore | 🖨 - 🦘 %IB0 | In0 | 😏 🗙 | |
| | | XO | 😌 🗙 | |
| Files | 🦇 %IX0.1 | X1 | 😏 🗙 | |
| | ₩ %IX0.2 | X2 | 😏 🗙 | |
| Log | 👋 %IX0.3 | Х3 | 😌 🗙 | |
| | * %IX0.4 | X4 | | |
| PLC Settings | ₩ %IX0.5 | X5 | € × | |
| PLC Shell | ₩ %IX0.6 | X6 | • • × | |
| r Eo onen | ₩ %IX0.7 | Х7 | • • × | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | Out0 | <u> </u> | |
| | ~~~ ^K ∲ %QX0.0 ~~~ ^K ∲ %QX0.1 | YO | <u> </u> | |
| System Settings | ₩ ₩ %QX0.1 | Y1 Y2 | € € | |
| | | Y2 Y3 | | |
| Right Settings | ₩ %QX0.4 | Y4 | S X | |
| System Parameters | ₩ %QX0.5 | Y5 | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | |
| oyoteni i didinetero | ₩ %QX0.6 | Y6 | o x | |
| System IEC Objects | ~ %QX0.7 | Y7 | Q X | |
| | BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder | | | |
| Task Deployment | 🐌 %ID1 | Counter | | |
| Status | 💊 %QX1.0 | Reset | | |
| Information | | | | |
| | | | | |

| 0 | The task is defined as Bus cycle task in the PLC settings. |
|---|--|
| × | Inputs or outputs that are written or read by the task. |

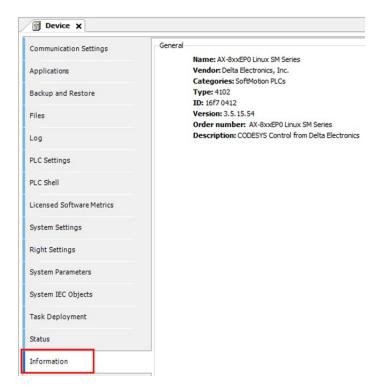
4.2.1.14 Status

Information about the status of the controller can be found here. For example, **Running**, **Stopped**, and other specific diagnostic messages from the respective device. It also includes information about card used and internal bus system.

| Communication Settings | Delta CNC | : | Running | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|---|---------|--|
| Applications | BuiltIn | : | Running | |
| Backup and Restore | Common.PCI | | Running | |
| Files | Common.rer | | | |
| Log | AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series | ; | Running | |
| PLC Settings | | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | | | |
| System Settings | | | | |
| Right Settings | | | | |
| System Parameters | | | | |
| System IEC Objects | | | | |
| Task Deployment | | | | |
| Status | | | | |
| Information | | | | |

4.2.1.15 Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and so on.



4.3 Data Type and Variables

4.3.1 Data Type

| Data Type | Minimum Value | Maximum Value | Data Width |
|------------------|---|---|------------|
| BOOL | FALSE | TRUE | 1-bit |
| BYTE | 0 | 255 | 8-bit |
| WORD | 0 | 65535 | 16-bit |
| DWORD | 0 | 4294967295 | 32-bit |
| LWORD | 0 | 2 ⁶⁴ -1 | 64-bit |
| SINT | -128 | 127 | 8-bit |
| USINT | 0 | 255 | 8-bit |
| INT | -32768 | 32767 | 16-bit |
| UINT | 0 | 65535 | 16-bit |
| DINT | -2147483648 | 2147483647 | 32-bit |
| UDINT | 0 | 4294967295 | 32-bit |
| LINT | -2 ⁶³ | 2 ⁶³ -1 | 64-bit |
| ULINT | 0 | 2 ⁶⁴ -1 | 64-bit |
| REAL | -3.402823E+38 | 3.402823E+38 | 32-bit |
| LREAL | -1.7976931348623157E+308 | 1.7976931348623157E+308 | 64-bit |
| TIME | T#0ms | T#49d17h2m47s295ms | 32-bit |
| LTIME | LTIME#0ns | LTIME#213503d23h34n33s 709ms551us615ns | 64-bit |
| TIME_OF_DAY(TOD) | TOD#00 : 00 : 00.000 | TOD#23 : 59 : 59.999 | 32-bit |
| DATE | D#1970-1-1 (01/01/70) | DATE#2106-2-7 (February 07 · 2106) | 32-bit |
| DATE_AND_TIME | DT#1979-1-1-00 : 00 : 00 (01/01/1970 00 : 00 : 00) | DT#2106-2-7-6 : 28 : 15 (February 07 · 2106 6 : 28 : 15) | |
| STRING | ASCII form | at (8-bit): up to 255 characters | |
| WSTRING | Unicode form | nat (16-bit): no limit on the length | |

4.3.2 Variables

Rules for variable identifiers:

- No spaces or special characters.
- Not case-sensitive (e.g. Var0 and VAR0 are deemed as the same variable).
- No consecutive underscore characters (e.g. b_Var0 is acceptable but b_Var0 is not permitted).

Rules for multiple use of identifier:

- Local variable cannot be declared more than once.
- Local variables have priority over global variables. If they share the same name, the local variable is given precedence within the POU than the global variable.
- Variables with the same name can be declared in different global variable list (e.g. globe_list1.bvar and globe_list2.bvar can co-exist in two different global variable lists).

Comments:

4

- Single comment: the symbol *II* indicates a single comment. For example: // Variable Define.
- Multiple comments: the symbol (* XX : XX *) indicates multiple comments from XX to XX. For example, (*Variable Define : Variable Define*).

4.3.2.1 Declaration of Variables

In DIADesigner-AX projects, variables are declared using the following methods.

Syntax: <Variable Name> : <Data Type> := <Initialization> ;

Example:

```
VAR
    bVar : BOOL ;
    byVar : BYTE := 1 ;
    wVar : WORD := 16#0001 ;
    todVar : TOD := TOD#02:30:15.100;
END_VAR
```

Array

Syntax: <Variable Name> : ARRAY[0..N] OF <Data Type>

Example:

```
VAR
byVar_Array : ARRAY[0..10] OF BYTE ;
wVar_Array : ARRAY[0..30] OF WORD ;
rVar_Array : ARRAY[0..50] OF REAL ;
END_VAR
```

4.3.2.2 Address Assignment

In AX-8 Series PLC, memory areas are divided into three ranges: I (input memory range), Q (output memory range) and M (flag memory range). You can use specific character strings to express memory position and size. There are two modes for non-volatile memory on AX-8 Series PLC, which can be configured in CPU parameter settings. When set to Mdev mode, the value of %M is retained; if not, it is the value of Retain & Persistent being retained.

| Memory Area | Description | Range |
|-------------|--------------------------|------------|
| I | Input Memory Range | 128 KB |
| Q | Output Memory Range | 128 KB |
| М | Flag Memory Range | 5 MB |
| | Non-volatile Memory Size | 96 KB |
| Size Prefix | Data Type | Data Width |
| X | | 1-bit |
| В | Byte | 8-bit |
| W | Word | 16-bit |
| D | DWord | 32-bit |
| L | LWord | 64-bit |

Syntax: %<Memory Area Prefix><Size Prefix><Memory Position>

• Memory Area

The numbering used for addressing the memory position depends on the target system. Before specifying the address value in the memory area, you need to know the corresponding memory-mapped position to prevent overlap of memory ranges. See the table below for reference.

| Memory Area | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|-----------|--|--|
| X0.63~X0.56 | X0.55~X0.48 | X0.47~X0.40 | X0.39~X0.32 | X0.31~X0.17 | X0.23~X0.16 | X0.15~X0.8 | X0.7~X0.0 | | |
| X7.7~X7.0 | X6.7~X6.0 | X5.7~X5.0 | X4.7~X4.0 | X3.7~X3.0 | X2.7~X2.0 | X1.7~X1.0 | X0.7~X0.0 | | |
| B7 | B6 | B5 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 | | |
| W | W3 W2 | | | W1 W0 | | | | | |
| | D | 1 | | | D0 | | | | |
| | | | LO | | | | | | |

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

• Example

| Address | Description | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|
| %QX7.5 | Single bit address of the output bit 7.5 | | |
| %IW215 | Word address of the input word 215 | | |
| %QB7 | Byte address of the output byte 7 | | |
| %MD48 | Address of a double word at memory position 48 in flag memory | | |
| VAR | | | |
| wVar0 AT %IW0 : WORD ; | Variable declaration with address information of an input word | | |
| END_VAR | | | |
| VAR | | | |
| bVar0 AT IX7.5 : BOOL ; | Boolean variable declaration with address information of an input bit X7.5. | | |
| END_VAR | | | |

4.3.2.3 Variables

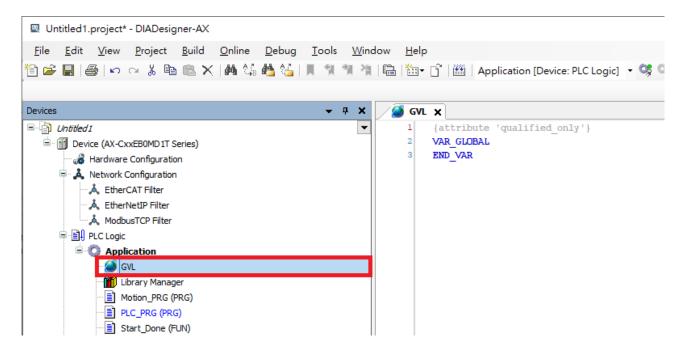
Global Variables ٠

If a variable is declared in a POU, it is a local variable that can only be used within the POU. However, when a variable is declared in the global variable list, it is a global variable and can be used in any POU.

Add Global Variable List:

| e Edit View Project | Build Online Debug Tools | Wind | ow Help |
|--|--------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| € 🖬 🚳 ∽ ⇔ 👗 🖻 | n 🗈 🗙 🗛 🍇 📤 🕍 🗏 🧌 | M M | 🛗 🎦 🕇 🛗 Application [Device |
| es | | ▼ ₽ | X Device X |
| AX-8_test1 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux \$ | | | Communication Settings |
| Hardware Configuration | | | Applications |
| E Application | - | _ | Backup and Restore |
| Motion_F | | | Files |
| PLC_PRC 💼 | Delete | | Log |
| Ethe | | | PLC Settings |
| 🖻 😻 Main 📇 | Properties | | PLC Shell |
| BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | | Alarm Configuration |
| BuiltIn_DIO (| Add Folder | 0 | Application |
| BuiltIn_Pulse | Edit Object | 2 | Axis Group |
| SoftMotion Gener | Edit Object With | | Cam table |
| QŞ. | Login | 8 | CNC program |
| | Delete application from device | | CNC settings |
| | | | Communication Manager |
| | | - | Data Sources Manager |
| | | Ø ** | Delta Axis Group |
| | | 1.1 | DUT |
| | | | External File |
| | | | Global Variable List 🔍 |

| Add Gl | obal Variable List X |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 2 | Create a new global variable list |
| Name | |
| GVL | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | Add |
| | |



• Constant Variables

You can declare a variable as a constant variable. Constant variables can be accessed as read-only without assigning an initialization value.

Declaration of Constant Variables:

```
VAR CONSTANT
pi : REAL := 3.14159 ;
END_VAR
```

Δ

• Retain Variables

You can declare a variable as retentive or use persistent variable directly. Refer to the table below for comparisons among variables, retain variables and persistent variables.

| | Initialize | | | | |
|------------------------|------------|------------|------------|----------|--------------|
| | Reboot PLC | Reset warm | Reset cold | Download | Reset origin |
| Variable | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Retain Variable | Х | Х | Ο | Ο | Ο |
| Persistent Variable | Х | х | Х | Х | 0 |

Declaration of Retain Variables:

```
VAR RETAIN
bVar : BOOL ;
byVar : BYTE ;
wVar : WORD ;
END_VAR
```

To create persistent variable, you can declare **RETAIN PERSISTENT**, **PERSISTENT RETAIN** and **PERSISTENT** in Persistent Variable Object for the same outcome.

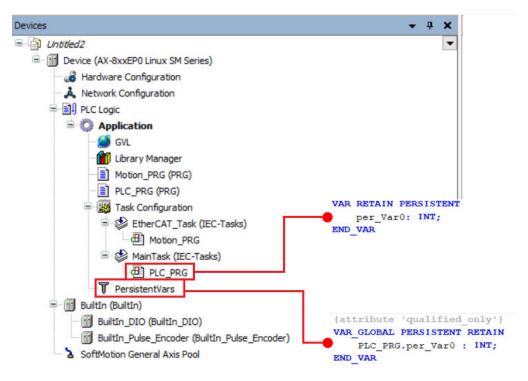
4

Add Persistent Variable List:

| 🖆 🔚 🎒 🗠 🖓 | x 🖻 🛍 🗙 🖊 🎲 📥 🌿 🖡 | ાજા જા | 계 🛱 | i <u>,</u> ∎. | | Application [| Device: PLC Logi |
|--|---|-------------|---|--|---|---------------|------------------|
| ces 〕 <i>AX-8_test1</i> ⊒ ─ ─ Device (AX-8xxEP0 I | Linux SM Series) | • | ₽ X ▼ | 1 2 | | GLOBAL | lified_only'} |
| Hardware Config A Network Configue | | | | 3 | END | _VAR | |
| Appli G G M M N N N N N N N N N N N N N | Cut Copy Paste Delete Refactoring Properties Add Object Add Folder Edit Object Edit Object With Login Delete application from device | μ γ 🔕 | Alarm Co Applicatic Axis Grou Cam table CNC prog CNC setti Commun Data Sou Delta Axis DUT External F Global Va Global Va Global Va Image Po Interface. Network 1 Persistent POU | on p gram ngs ication M rces Mana s Group iile ariable List ariable List ool Variable L Variable L | anager ager t (taskle ist (Ree | ocal) | |
| | Add Persistent Variables T Create a new global v | ariable lis | t | | × | | |
| | Name PersistentVars | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

| AV 9 April project DIADavisor AV | | |
|---|--|------------|
| AX-8_test1.project* - DIADesigner-AX | | |
| File Edit View Project Build Online Debug Too | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| 🗎 🚅 🔚 🚭 い 🖂 🌾 🛍 🖄 📕 🙏 | (🌂 🆄 🛍 🖥 🕶 📑 🛗 Application [Device: PLC L | .ogic] 🝷 🕵 |
| | | |
| Devices | 👻 🕂 🖌 🚰 Device 🛛 🎑 GVL 🖉 🎑 Persista | entVars 🗙 |
| AX-8_test1 | ▼ 1 {attribute 'qualified onl | Y'} |
| 🖃 🕤 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | 2 VAR_GLOBAL PERSISTENT RET | AIN |
| 🚜 Hardware Configuration | 3 END_VAR | |
| 🙏 Network Configuration | | |
| 🖶 🗐 PLC Logic | | |
| 🖹 💮 Application | | |
| 🏈 GVL | | |
| 👘 Library Manager | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | |
| 🖹 🎆 Task Configuration | | |
| 🖨 🆃 EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| Motion_PRG | | |
| 🖹 🎲 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| PLC_PRG | | |
| T PersistentVars | | |
| 🖹 👘 BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | |
| 🚮 BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | |

If it is required to declare a local variable as persistent, you have to add the variable instance path to the persistent variable list.

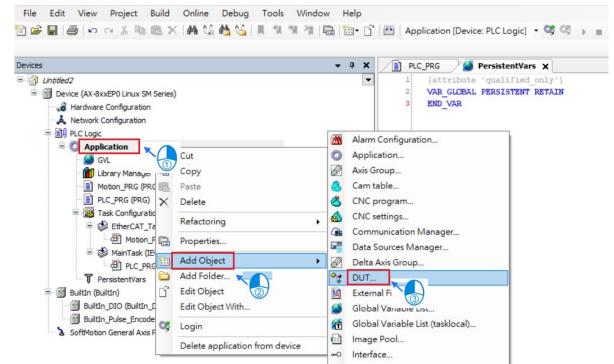


4.3.2.4 User-defined Data Type

You can create your own data type, DUT (Data Type Unit) or UDT (User-defined Data Type), by clicking **Add Object** and selecting **DUT**. There are four data types that can be created: Structure, Enumeration, Alias and Union.

Add DUT:

Δ



• Structure

A structure is a compound data type used for grouping simple data types or other compound data types.

Syntax:

TYPE <Structure Name>:

STRUCT

<Variable Declaration 1>

•••

<Variable Declaration n>

END_STRUCT

END_TYPE

Example:

```
TYPE DUT :

STRUCT

bVar : BOOL ;

wVar : WORD ;

iVar_Array : ARRAY[0..2]OF INT ;

END_STRUCT

END_TYPE
```

Application:

| | PLC | PRG × | |
|---|--------|-----------------|--|
| | 1 | PROGRAM | PLC_PRG |
| | 2 | | |
| 3 | 3 | VAR | |
| | 4 | | ar2 AT %QX7.5 : BOOL ; |
| | 5 6 | DUT_ END VAR | <pre>_Var :DUT := (bVar:=TRUE, wVar:=12, iVar_Array:=[1,2,3]);</pre> |
| | ю 7 | END_VAR | |
| | 1 | | |
| | 1 | | bVar:=FALSE; |
| | 2 | DUT_Var. | iVar_Array[1]:=123; |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | r | |
| | | | Add DUT X |
| | | | |
| | | | 🞌 Create a new data unit type |
| | | | |
| | | | Name |
| | | | DUT |
| | | | Туре |
| | | | Structure |
| | | | Extends |
| | | | ○ Enumeration |
| | | | Textlist support |
| | | | |
| | | | OAlias |
| | | | Base type > |
| | | | ⊖ Union |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | Add Cancel |
| | | | |

• Enumeration

An enumeration is used to map a set of names to numeric values. Enumerated data types make code more selfdocumenting and program listing more readable.

Syntax:

TYPE <Enumeration Name>:

...,

(

<First Component Declaration>:= Component Declaration,

< Last Component Declaration >:= Component Declaration

) <Basic Data Type> := Default Variable Initialization;

END_TYPE

Example:

```
TYPE Enumeration_0 :
(
    GREEN := 0,
    YELLOW:=3,
    RED:=8
) INT:=YELLOW;
END TYPE
```

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

• Alias

Alias is a scalar data type for a variable that can save a single value and self-define the data type.

Example:

TYPE <Alias Name> : STRING(20); END_TYPE

• Union

Union is a data structure that contains different data types. All components share the same amount of memory.

Syntax:

TYPE <Union Name>:

UNION

<Variable Declaration 1>

4

<Variable Declaration n>

END_UNION

...

END_TYPE

Example:

TYPE DUT_Union : UNION unVar0:WORD; unVar1:DWORD; END_UNION END_TYPE

4.3.2.5 Timing for the Variable being Cleared to Zero

For different types of variables, the timings to clear the variables to zero are various. Refer to the table below for the timings on different occasions^{*1}.

• = value retained

 \circ = value cleared to zero

| Action | VAR | VAR Retain | VAR Retain Persistent |
|---------------|-----|------------|-----------------------|
| Online Change | • | • | • |
| Reboot PLC | 0 | • | • |
| Reset Warm | 0 | • | • |
| Reset Cold | 0 | 0 | • |
| Download | 0 | 0 | • |
| Reset Origin | 0 | 0 | 0 |

*1: The default value takes effect when value retention feature is unavailable.

4.3.2.6 Timing for the Default Value to be Valid

• = invalid

 \circ = valid

| Action | VAR | VAR Retain | VAR Retain Persistent |
|---------------|-----|------------|-----------------------|
| Online Change | • | • | • |
| Reboot PLC | 0 | • | • |
| Reset Warm | 0 | • | • |
| Reset Cold | 0 | 0 | • |
| Download | 0 | 0 | • |

4.4 Task

4.4.1 Task Configuration

Task is used for controlling and executing the program blocks (POUs) in the PLC. You can define a task with its name, priority and the exact condition that initiates the commencement of the task. This condition is defined either by time (cyclic-interval, freewheeling) or by the occurrence of an internal or external event to initiate the task.

A task calls one or multiple program blocks (POUs). The sequence of task execution depends on the condition and priority defined. It is also possible to configure a watchdog for each task.

Rules for the order in which the defined tasks are processed:

- If the task condition is satisfied, then the system starts processing the task.
- If several tasks satisfy the condition for processing at the same time, then tasks with the highest priority^{*1} are processed first.
- If several tasks with the same priority level satisfy the condition for processing at the same time, then the system processes the task which has been waiting for the longest time first.
- The program calls are processed in the order they appear in the configuration dialog of the task. If it happens that a POU name in the project is identical with one in the library used, the POU in the project takes precedence to be executed.

*1: Set the priority level from 0 to 31. A set number closer to 0 has a higher priority.

4.4.1.1 Task Type

There are five task types:

Cyclic Task

The system processes the task in cycles. The execution cycle of the task is defined in the Interval input field.

Event Task

The system starts processing the Event Task as soon as the global variable defined in the Event input field contains a rising edge. The variable should be a Boolean variable.

External Task

The system processes the task once as soon as the defined built-in input contains a rising edge.

Freewheeling Task

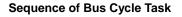
When the controller starts running, the system begins to process the Freewheeling Task automatically in a continuous loop till the controller stops.

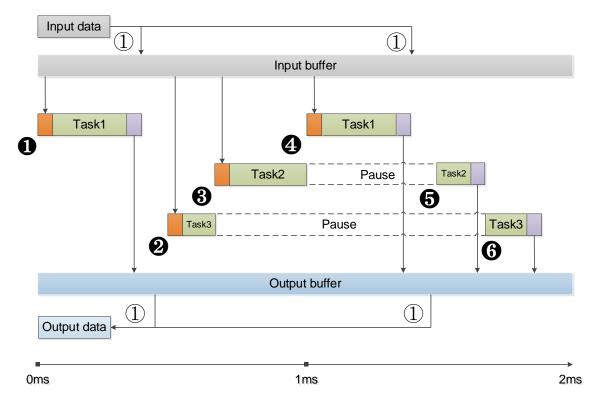
Status Task

The system starts Status Task processing as soon as the variable defined in the Event input field yields the Boolean value TRUE.

4.4.1.2 Bus Cycle Task

The system processes the task when its condition is satisfied. The priority level is set from 0 to 31 and the number closer to 0 has higher priority. The system processes the task in the order of Task Group in Task Configuration.





Task 1: Priority = 1, Bus cycle Task, Cyclic Task

Task 2: Priority = 3, Event Task

Task 3: Priority = 5, Freewheeling Task

1 The condition for starting Task 1 is met; Task 1 starts.

2 Task 1 is completed and the data from I/O buffer is exchanged with the I/O channel (physical hardware). Task 3 starts.

3 The condition for starting Task 2 is met and Task 2 has higher priority than Task 3 does. Thus Task 2 starts whereas Task 3 halts.

The condition for starting Task 1 is met and Task 1 has higher priority than Task 2 does. Thus Task 3 starts whereas Task 4 halts.

5 Task 1 is completed and the I/O data from buffer is exchanged with the I/O channel (physical hardware). Task 2 starts again.

6 Task 2 is completed and the Task 3 starts again.

① Bus Cycle: The messages are normally sent on the bus in this task. Other tasks copy only the I/O data from an internal buffer that is exchanged only with the physical hardware in the bus cycle task.

4.4.1.3 Watchdog

If the time for task execution exceeds the time set for watchdog, then the task is halted with an error status.

To enable watchdog:

| File Edit View Project Build Online Debug Tools Window | w Help | |
|---|----------|---|
| 🎦 📽 🖬 番 い い 3 🖻 🎕 🗙 🗛 🍇 🐴 🍇 川 🦄 🦄 (1) | a ‰• c° | 🕮 Application [Device: PLC Logic] 🔹 🧐 📦 🔳 👋 [] = 🖓 🗠 = += |
| Devices | • # X | PLC_PRG PersistentVars 🕸 MainTask 🗙 |
| Chatted2 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | Configuration |
| Hardware Configuration A Network Configuration A Network Configuration Official PLC Logic Official Configuration Official Configura | | Priority (031): 1 Type (⊕ Cyclic ∨ Interval (e.g. t≠200ms) 20 *1 Watchdog ☑ Enable |
| E I I Task Configuration | | Time (e.g. t#200ms) 500 |
| EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | Sensitivity 1 |
| Wainingsk (EE-Tasks) With PLC-PG PersistentVars Builtin (Builtin) Builtin_DIO (Builtin_DIO) Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder) SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | ♣ Add Call ★ Remove Call ▲ Move Up ♣ Move Dov POU Comment PLC_PRG |

*1: several consecutive timeouts:

sensitivity = 0, watchdog timeout = time x 1

sensitivity = n, watchdog timeout = time x n

4.4.1.4 Motion Instructions for Each Type of Task

The table below introduces the motion instructions for different task types. **V** means the motion instruction is available for that task type.

• Synchronous axes^{*1}

| | | | Task Type | |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Classification | Instruction | Cyclic | Freewheeling | Bus Cycle EtherCAT |
| | MC_Home | | | V |
| | MC_Stop | | | V |
| | MC_Halt | | | V |
| | MC_MoveAbsolute | | | V |
| | MC_MoveRelative | | | V |
| | MC_MoveAdditive | | | V |
| | MC_MoveSuperImposed | | | V |
| | MC_CamIn | | | V |
| | MC_CamOut | | | V |
| | MC_MoveVelocity | | | V |
| | MC_PositionProfile | | | V |
| | MC_VelocityProfile | | | V |
| Motion | MC_AccelerationProfile | | | V |
| Control | MC_Jog | | | V |
| Function | MC_GearIn | | | V |
| Blocks | MC_GearOut | | | V |
| | MC_GearInPos | | | V |
| | MC_Phasing | | | V |
| | DMC_TorqueControl | | | V |
| | DMC_VelocityControl | | | V |
| | DMC_MoveLinearAbsolute | | | V |
| | DMC_MoveLinearRelative | | | V |
| | DMC_MoveCircularAbsolute | | | V |
| | DMC_MoveCircularRelative | | | V |
| | DMC_GroupStop | | | V |
| | DMC_GroupHalt | | | V |
| | DMC_Home_P | | | V |
| | DMC_GroupInterrupt | | | V |

| | DMC_GroupContinue | V | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|---|--|
| | DMC_ImmediateStop_P | V | |
| | MC_Power | V | |
| | | V | |
| | MC_SetPosition | V | |
| | MC_ReadParameter | | |
| | MC_WriteParameter | V | |
| | MC_ReadBoolParameter | V | |
| | MC_WriteBoolParameter | V | |
| | MC_ReadActualPosition | V | |
| | MC_ReadActualVelocity | V | |
| | MC_ReadActualTorque | V | |
| | MC_Reset | V | |
| | MC_ReadStatus | V | |
| | MC_ReadAxisError | V | |
| | MC_CamTableSelect | V | |
| | MC_TouchProbe | V | |
| Instructions | MC_AbortTrigger | V | |
| for | MC_DigitalCamSwitch | V | |
| Management | DMC_GroupEnable | V | |
| Management | DMC_GroupDisable | V | |
| | DMC_GroupReadStatus | V | |
| | DMC_GroupReadError | V | |
| | DMC_GroupReset | V | |
| | DMC_CamReadTappetStatus | V | |
| | DMC_CamReadTappetValue | V | |
| | DMC_CamWriteTappetValue | V | |
| | DMC_CamAddTappet | V | |
| | DMC_CamDeleteTappet | V | |
| | DMC_CamReadPoint | V | |
| | DMC_CamWritePoint | V | |
| | DMC_ChangeMechanismGearRation | V | |
| | DMC_ReadMotionState | V | |
| | DMC_GroupReadParameter | V | |
| | DMC_GroupWriteParameter | V | |
| | | | |

4

*1: It is suggested creating a motion function block within a Bus Cycle EtherCAT to avoid inconsistency in movement.

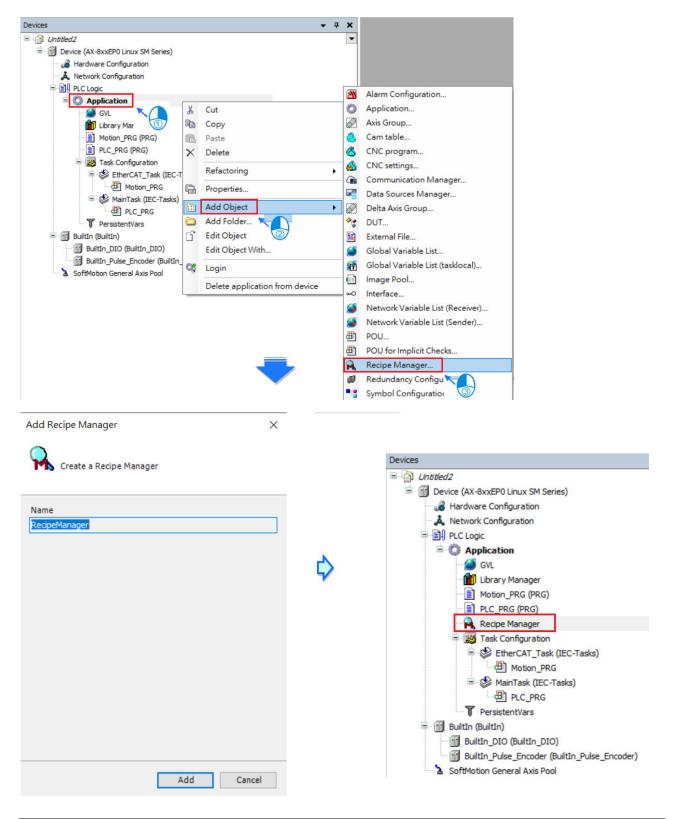
• Positioning axes

| | | | Task Type | |
|----------------|---------------------------|--------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Classification | Instruction | Cyclic | Freewheeling | Bus Cycle EtherCAT |
| | MC_Halt_DML | | | V |
| Motion | MC_Home_DML | | | V |
| Control | MC_MoveAbsolute_DML | | | V |
| Function | MC_MoveRelative_DML | | | V |
| Blocks | MC_MoveVelocity_DML | | | V |
| | MC_Stop_DML | | | V |
| | MC_Power_DML | | | V |
| | MC_ReadBoolParameter_DML | | | V |
| | MC_ReadParameter_DML | | | V |
| | MC_ReadStatus_DML | | | V |
| Instructions | MC_Reset_DML | | | V |
| for | MC_WriteBoolParameter_DML | | | V |
| Management | MC_WriteBoolParameter_DML | | | V |
| | MC_ChangeAxisConfig_DML | | | V |
| | MC_ReinitDrive_DML | | | V |
| | MC_SetOpmode_DML | | | V |
| | MC_StartupDrive_DML | | | V |

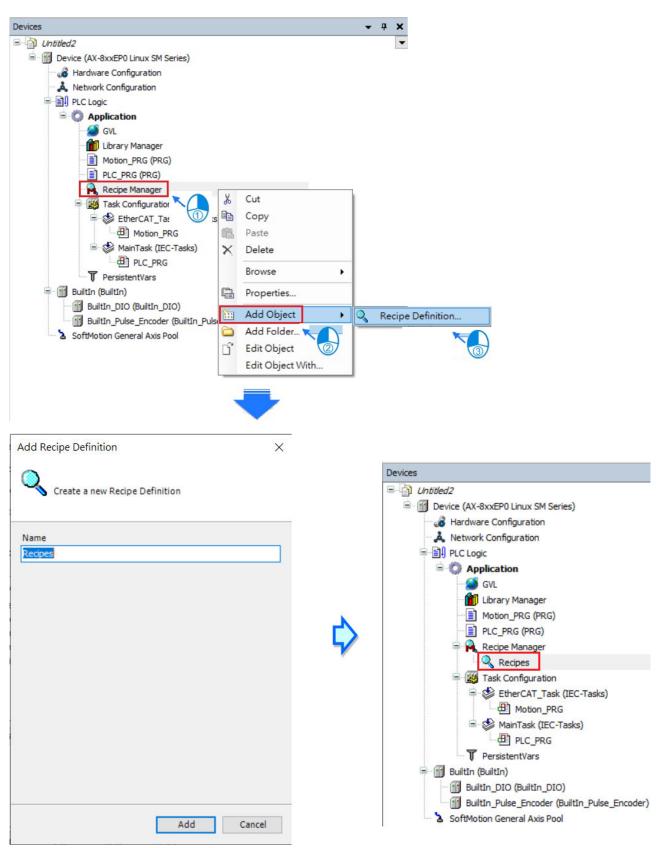
4.5 Recipe Manager

With Recipe Manager, you can import recipe files and export specific parameters by using **RecipeManCommands** from the function block **Recipe_Management.library**.

• Add Recipe Manager:



• Add Recipe Definition:



4.5.1 Recipe Manager

| 1 | 🗼 Recipe Man | ager 🗙 | | | |
|-----|-----------------|------------|-------------|------------------|------|
| Sto | rage General | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | Storage type | Textual | | | ~ |
| | File path | | | | |
| | File extension | .txtrecipe | 2 | | |
| | Separator | | | | |
| | 🔾 Tab | | ◯ Semicolon | 🔘 Comma | |
| | ⊖ Space | | • := | 01 | |
| | Available Colum | ins | > | Selected Columns | |
| | 👈 Type | | >> | 😽 Variable | |
| | Name | | | 👈 Current Value | |
| | Comment | | < | | |
| | Minimal Value | | << | | |
| | (p Maximal Valu | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | Save as Defau | lt | | Up | Down |
| | | | | | |

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Storage type | The file format to save recipe files. You can choose between Textual and Binary. |
| File path | The path to save recipe files. |
| | Example: If choosing to save files in AllRecipes, the path would be PlcLogic/AllRecipes. |
| File extension | The extension of the file .< file extension> |
| | The naming format of extension files <recipe>.<recipe definition="">.<file extension="">.</file></recipe></recipe> |
| Separator | The separators between each value in recipe files. |
| Available Columns | Define content and order of the recipe files. |
| Selected Columns | Define content and order of the recipe files. |
| Save as Default | Apply the setting to all the recipe managers in the project. |
| Up | Move the item selected in the Selected Columns upward. |
| Down | Move the item selected in the Selected Columns downward. |

| 🙀 Recipe Manager 🗙 |
|---|
| Storage General |
| Recipe Management in the PLC |
| Save Recipe |
| Save recipe changes to recipe files automatically |
| Load Recipe |
| • Load only by exact match of variable list |
| 🔿 Load matching variables by variablename |
| Overwrite existing recipes on download |
| Write Recipe |
| \odot Limit the variable to min/max when recipe value is out of the range |
| \bigcirc Do not write to a variable when the recipe value is out of the min/max range |
| Read Recipe |
| Check recipe for changes |

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Recipe Management in the PLC | I Recipe Manager is activated. |
| Save Recipe | |
| Save recipe changes to recipe | ☑ : Recipe files are updated automatically while downloading projects. In |
| files automatically | case that Recipe changes, it is auto-saved to the recipe file. |
| Load Recipe | |
| Load only by exact match of variable list | The variables in the file must be in the same order as in the variable list while loading the recipe. Otherwise, the recipe cannot be loaded. (Additional entries at the end are ignored.) |
| Load matching variables by variable name | Only variables with matching variable names from the recipe file are loaded, even though the order of variables or the contents in Name column do not match to the setting in the variable list. |
| Write Recipe | |
| Limit the variable to min/max when recipe value is out of the range | In case that the recipe value is out of the min/max range, the maximum or minimum value would be written to the corresponding variables in the controller. |
| Do not write to a variable when the recipe value is out of the min/max range | Prevent a value from being written to the controller if the recipe contains a value that is out of the value range. |

4

4.5.2 Recipe Definition

| Devices - 4 X | Recipes | 01 X | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------|------------------------------|--|---------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| | | Type WORD INT DWORD | Name MW3 Variable int Variable dword Variable | Comment | Minimal Value 10 100 | Maximal Value 500 800 | Current Value | Case 1 350 800 250 |
| | 1 | | 1 : Rec 2 : Rec | | ion | | | 2 |

Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder)

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Variable | In the table, you can specify any variable including those self-defined in a POU. |
| Туре | This automatically displays the relevant data type of the specified variable. |
| Name | You can define names of variables for inspection and comparison by Load Recipe. |
| Comment | Additional information. |
| Minimal Value Maximal Value | You can specify the maximum and minimum values to be written to this variable. When the recipe value is out of range, the controller would determine whether to write the value to the variable according to the recipe manager. |
| Current Value | The current value would be displayed in online mode. |

• Add a New Variable:

Enter the variable name in the blank or double-click the blank to open Input Assistant and choose the target variable.

| Variable | Туре | Name | Comment | Minimal Value | Maximal Value | Current Value | Case1 |
|-----------------------|-------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------|
| %MW3 | WORD | MW3 Variable | | 10 | 500 | | 350 |
| PLC_PRG.iVar | INT | int Variable | | | | | 800 |
| PLC_PRG.dwVar | DWORD | dword Variable | | 100 | 800 | | 250 |
| OF | र े2 | Recipe | s 01 X | | _ | | |
| ` <mark>-</mark> } OF | र ेथ | | s_01 X | | | | |
| ► OF | ₹ `₹ | Variable | Тур | | Cc | | |
| ► OF | ₹`₹ | Variable %MW3 | Typ | NW3 Variable | | | |
| ∕ ⊖ OF | र ेथ | Variable | Typ WOF INT | NW3 Variable | | | |

• Add a New Recipe:

Right-click the page to select Add a New Recipe.

| riable | | Туре | Name | Comment | Minimal Value | Maximal Value | Current Value | Case1 |
|----------------------|--|-----------|----------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------|
| W3 | | WORD | MW3 Variable | | 10 | 500 | | 350 |
| PRG.i | Var | INT | int Variable | | | | | 800 |
| _PRG.d | dwVar | DWORD | dword Variable | | 100 | 800 | | 250 |
| | Copy Paste | | ×(| | | | | |
| × | Delete Select All | | | Rew I | Recipe | | | × |
| × | | | | Rew New New Name | Recipe Case | 2 | | × |
| | Select All | | | Name | Case | - | | × |
| -19 | Select All Insert Variable | | | Name | Case | : 2 eate Empty> | | × |
| * | Select All Insert Variable Add Child | Variables | | Name | Case | - | Cance | ~ |
| * * * | Select All Insert Variable Add Child Add Sibling | <u> </u> | | Name | Case | eate Empty> | Cance | ~ |
| 0 4 4 4 | Select All Insert Variable Add Child Add Sibling Update Structured | | | Name | Case | eate Empty> | Cance | ~ |
| \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ | Select All Insert Variable Add Child Add Sibling Update Structured Add a New Recipe | <u> </u> | | Name | Case | eate Empty> | Cance | ~ |

• The recipe file created in the controller

| | | cipes01 🗙 🔍 Recipes | 02 | | | | | | |
|--|-------------|---------------------|------|---------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-------|-------|
| · ② 配方管理器 | Variable | Type | Name | Comment | Minimal Value | Maximal Value | Current Value | Case1 | Case2 |
| Device (AX-CxxEB0MD IT Series) | %MW0 | WORD | | | 100 | 200 | | 150 | 160 |
| - B Hardware Configuration | 96MW1 | WORD | | | 5 | 1000 | | 500 | 550 |
| S & Network Configuration | GVL.bEnable | BOOL | | | | | | / | |
| A EtherCAT Filter | GVL./Time | INT | | | -32767 | 32767 | | -1 | -200 |
| BIJ PLC Logic B C Application | | | | | | | / | | |
| = 😳 Application | | | | | | | | | |
| GVL Ubrary Manager | | | | | | | / | | |
| | | | | | | | / | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) PLC_PRG (PRG) | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Recipe Manager | | | | - | | | | | |
| Recipes01 | | | | Case 1. | Recipes 01.txtre | | 138 bytes | | |
| Sectors01 | | | | | Recipes 01.txtre Recipes_01.txtre | | 138 bytes 138 bytes | | |
| Geopes01 Geopes02 Sac Configuration Task Configuration | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre | ipe 1 | 138 bytes | | |
| Respect1 - ℃, Respect2 - ₩ Task Configuration + ঊ EtherCAT_Task | - | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre Recipes_02.txtr | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes 50 bytes | | |
| Image: Second 1 Image: Ima | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes | | |
| Recpet01 Recpet02 Task Configuration SeterCAT Task Motion_PRG G MainTask | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre Recipes_02.txtr | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes 50 bytes | | |
| Respesol | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre Recipes_02.txtr | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes 50 bytes | | |
| G. Recuesol Gui, Recipesol Gui, Recipesol Task Configuration Go Benc AT. Task Go ManiTask Go ManiTask Go R.C./RG Go Distribution Go Distribution | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre Recipes_02.txtr | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes 50 bytes | | |
| Respesol | | | | Case 2. | Recipes_01.txtre Recipes_02.txtr | tipe 1 scipe 5 | 138 bytes 50 bytes | | |

4

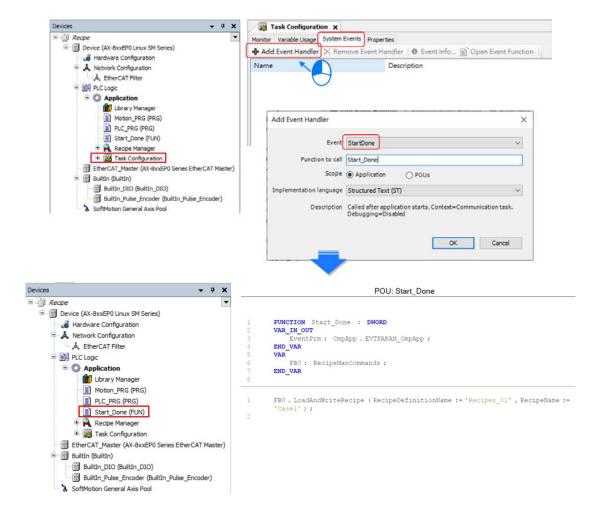
4.5.3 RecipeManCommands

The function block **RecipeManCommands** from **Recipe_Management.library** provides several avenues for users to load recipe files or export recipe files from the controller.

| RecipeManCommands | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| LoadAndWriteRecipe | Load the default recipe file and write the recipe to variables in the controller. |
| LoadFromAndWriteRecipe | Load the specified recipe file and write the recipe to variables in the controller. |
| ReadAndSaveAs | Save the variables of the controller to the target file. |
| ReadAndSaveRecipe | Read the current PLC variables into the default recipe file. |
| ReadAndSaveRecipeAs | Read the current PLC variables into the default recipe file and save the recipe to the specified recipe file. |

• Example 1

In this example, we add **startDone** event through **Add Event Handler**. And with **LoadAndWriteRecipe**, the recipe **Case1** from the recipe definition **Recipes_01** is automatically loaded to the corresponding variables in the controller as soon as the controller's status turns from **STOP** to **RUN**.



• Example 2

In this example, we use **ReadAndSaveRecipe** and **ReadAndSaveAs** respectively to read the current PLC values into the default recipe and the specified recipe file.

| | | POU: PLC_PRG |
|--|----|---|
| Devices - 4 X | | |
| Recipe | | |
| | 1 | PROGRAM PLC_PRG |
| Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | 2 | VAR |
| 🚽 🚜 Hardware Configuration | 3 | iVar : INT ; |
| 🚊 🌲 Network Configuration | 4 | dwVar, dw_Retur: DWORD; |
| A EtherCAT Filter | 5 | udi_Return : UDINT ; |
| | 6 | bVar0 , bVar1 : BOOL ; |
| PLC Logic | 7 | FB1 : RecipeManCommands ; |
| - O Application | 8 | END_VAR |
| Library Manager | 9 | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | |
| | 1 | IF bVar0 THEN |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | 2 | %MW3 := 50 ; |
| Start_Done (FUN) | 3 | iVar := 60 ; |
| Recipe Manager | 4 | dwVar := 70 ; |
| | 5 | udi_Return := FB1 . ReadAndSaveRecipe (RecipeDefinitionName := |
| Task Configuration | | 'Recipes_01', RecipeName := 'Casel'); |
| EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) | 6 | bVar0 := FALSE ; |
| BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | 7 | END_IF |
| | 8 | |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | 9 | IF bVarl THEN |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | 10 | %MW3 := %MW3 + 10 ; |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | 11 | iVar := iVar + 20; |
| Softwotion General Axis Pool | 12 | dwVar := dwVar + 30 ; |
| | 13 | udi_Return := FB1 . ReadAndSaveAS (RecipeDefinitionName := 'Recipes_01' , |
| | | <pre>FileName := 'POU_Variable.txtrecipe') ;</pre> |
| | 14 | bVar1 := FALSE ; |
| | 15 | END_IF |
| | 16 | |

• Below are the files and contents generated by the controller when bVar0 and bVar1 are set as ON.

| Name | Size | Modified | Case1.Recipes_01.txtrecipe - Notepad |
|-------------------------------|----------|-------------------|--|
| t | | | File Edit Format View Help |
| 🧧 visu | | | %MW3:=50:=WORD:=:=:=:= |
| irend | | | PLC_PRG.iVar:=60:=INT:=:=:=:= |
| alarms | | | PLC_PRG.dwVar:=70:=DWORD:=:=:=:= |
| ac_persistence | | | |
| 🛅 _cnc | | | |
| Application | | | |
| Case 1. Recipes_01. txtrecipe | 89 bytes | 2000/1/1 上午 08:34 | POU_Variable.txtrecipe - Notepad |
| Case2.Recipes_01.txtrecipe | 92 bytes | 2000/1/1 上午 08:33 | File Edit Format View Help |
| Case20.Recipes_02.txtrecipe | 50 bytes | 2000/1/1 上午 08:33 | %MW3:=60:=WORD:=:=:=:= |
| Case21.Recipes_02.txtrecipe | 50 bytes | 2000/1/1 上午 08:33 | PLC_PRG.iVar:=80:=INT:=:=:=:= PLC PRG.dwVar:=100:=DWORD:=:=:=:=:= |
| | | 2000/1/1 上午 08:34 | $E_{LL} = E_{LL} = E$ |

4

MEMO



Chapter 5 Hardware Configuration

Table of Contents

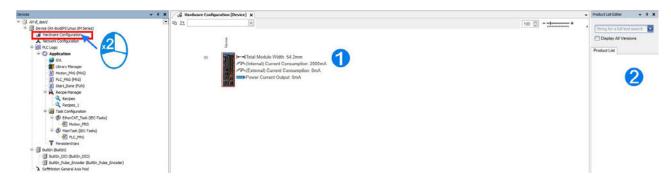
| 5.1 F | Hardware Configuration | 5-2 |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 5.1.1 | Environment of Hardware Configuration | . 5-2 |

5.1 Hardware Configuration

Hardware Configuration is the tool in DIADesigner-AX for hardware development. It provides functions including parameter settings for CPU and modules. This chapter provides introduction to the abovementioned functions.

5.1.1 Environment of Hardware Configuration

Double-click Hardware Configuration on the Device pane to open the Hardware Configuration [Device] window as the image shown below.



Hardware Configuration [Device]: this is the main working area for system configuration and settings.

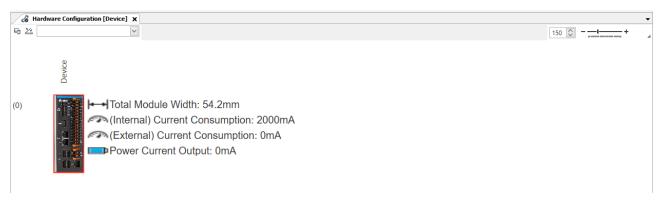
Product List Editor: here lists all the supported modules for the selected CPU.

Click in the top left corner to see the current configuration including information such as the added module names, total width of the connected modules, current consumption and so on.



100 💿 ---1------------++

Use in the top right corner to rearrange the device image for better viewing experience and easier operation. Below is the display when the controller is in connection.





5

МЕМО



Chapter 6 Network Configuration

Table of Contents

| 6.1 Net | work Configuration | |
|---------|-----------------------------|--|
| 6.1.1 | Introduction | |
| 6.1.2 | Basic Knowledge | |
| 6.1.3 | Creating a Network Topology | |
| 6.1.3.1 | 1 Creating Station Nodes | |
| 6.1.3.2 | 2 Creating Connections | |

6.1 Network Configuration

DIADesigner-AX provides a platform for user to configure the network in the project. Details about the settings are covered in this chapter.

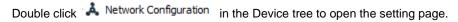
6.1.1 Introduction

Network Configuration is used for:

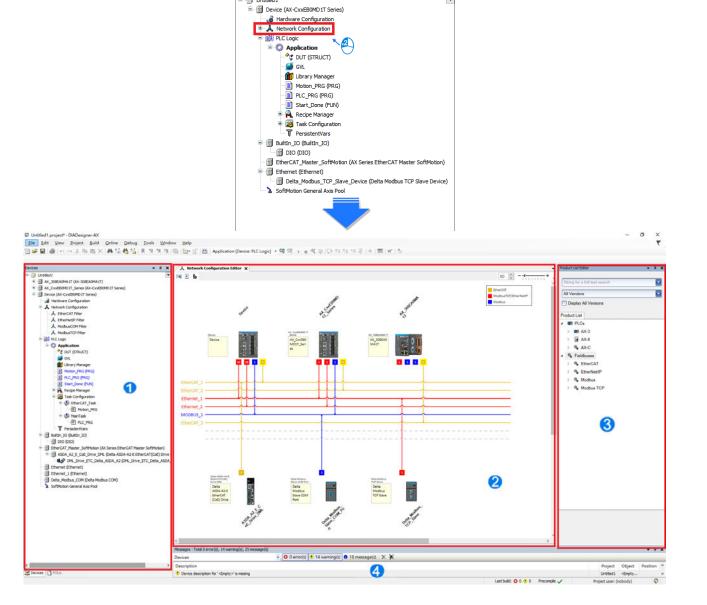
1. Creating networks such as EtherCAT, Modbus, Ethernet and CANOpen in a project, and setting up paths for data transmission.

×

- 2. Setting up EtherCAT master.
- 3. Setting up Modbus COM port.
- 4. Setting up Ethernet IP.



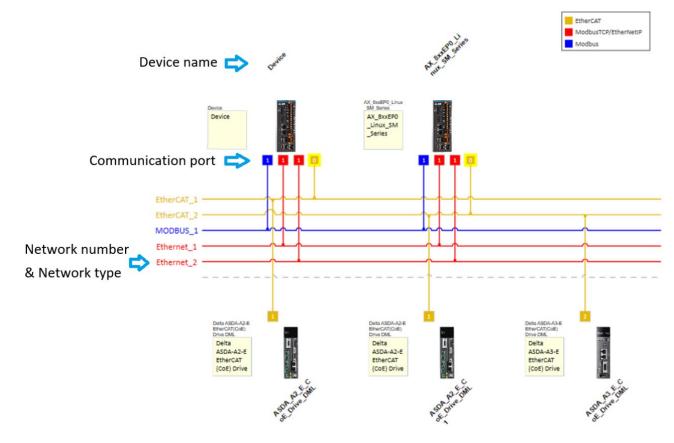
Dutitled 1



- **1 Device:** all the configured devices are shown in a tree view.
- **2** Working area: the main working area for overall network configuration.
- **3** Device list: all the available devices are shown in a tree view.
- 4 Message display area: operational messages are shown here.

6.1.2 Basic Knowledge

In this section, basic knowledge for network configuration is introduced.



• Device and Network

Device is the fundamental element in a network. It can be a PLC, a servo, a driver or any device that you defined. Network is a collection of devices which are interconnected. In a network, every communication port must be assigned with a single network type such as Modbus, Ethernet or EtherCAT. Here, the communication ports of a device serve as the physical interface to connect to a network; therefore, the device can connect to different networks at the same time if it is equipped with more than two ports.

Device Name

Device name serves as the identity of the device that allows you to identify it in the Device tree. Nevertheless, it bears little significance on operation.

• Network and Communication Port

EtherCAT

The yellow line EtherCAT_1 represents the EtherCAT communication. Double-click the Master Station node to open the EtherCAT setting page of the Master. The number of Master Station is 0 and must not be changed.

Double-click the connection node of the Slave 1 to open the EtherCAT setting page of the Slave. The last digit is used as an indicator of this connection on the Network Configuration Editor page. For instance, the node number is 1 in the EtherCAT address 1001.

| General | Address | | | Additional | EtherCAT | (|
|----------------------|---------------------|----------|----------|-------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| Process Data | AutoInc address | 0 | * | Expert settings | Euler CAL. | Deta ASDA-A2-E |
| | EtherCAT address | 1001 | * | Optional | | EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM |
| Startup Parameters | ▲ Distributed Clock | | | | | Delta ASDA-A2-E |
| Log | Select DC | DC-Synch | nronous | ~ | | EtherCAT (CoE) Drive |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | 🖂 Enable | 4000 | Sync uni | t cycle (µs) | | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | Sync0 | | | | | P. |
| | Enable Sync 0 | | | | | P |
| Status | Sync unit cycle | × 1 | \sim | 4000 🗘 Cycle time | e (µs) | |
| Information | O User-defined | | | 0 🗘 Shift time | (µs) | |

Modbus TCP / EtherNet/IP

The red line represents Ethernet port, including Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP communication. Double-click the line to open its setting page and edit IP addresses. The last digit appeared in the last section of the IP address is used as an indicator of this connection.

| Network Ad | apters | | × | |
|---------------|-------------|------------------|-----------|----------|
| Interfaces | | | | |
| Name | Description | IP address | | |
| lo | | 127.0.0.1 | | Device |
| ECAT | | 0.0.00 | | |
| GLAN1 | | 192.168.010 | | |
| GLAN2 | | 192.168.1.10 | | Device |
| (P address | 19 | 2 . 168 . 1 . 10 | | Device . |
| Subnet mask | 25 | 5.255.255.0 | | 1 1 |
| Default gatew | ray 0 | . 0 . 0 . 0 | | TT |
| MAC address | s 00: | 18:23:86:8B:DB | | 1.1 |
| | | | OK Cancel | |

Modbus

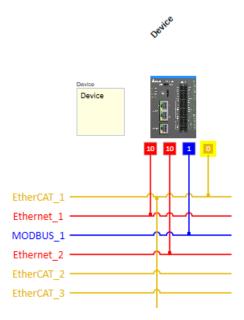
The blue line represents the Modbus communication (RS-485). Double-click the line to open the setting page for Modbus communication port.

| eneral | | | |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------|-------|
| atus | - Serial Port Configuration | | |
| | COM Port | RS-232 | ~ |
| nformation | Baudrate | 9600 | ~ |
| | Parity | Even | * |
| | Data Bits | 7 | ~ |
| | Stop Bits | 1 | ~ |
| | Transmission Mode | O RTU | ASCII |

6.1.3 Creating a Network Topology

6.1.3.1 Creating Station Nodes

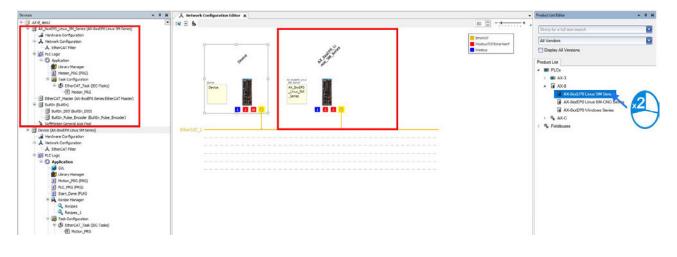
For the first time the network configuration page is accessed, the system automatically creates a graphical representation based on the devices built in the project



You can add additional devices like PLCs, servo motors, and drivers in the network topology in the following ways:

• Method 1

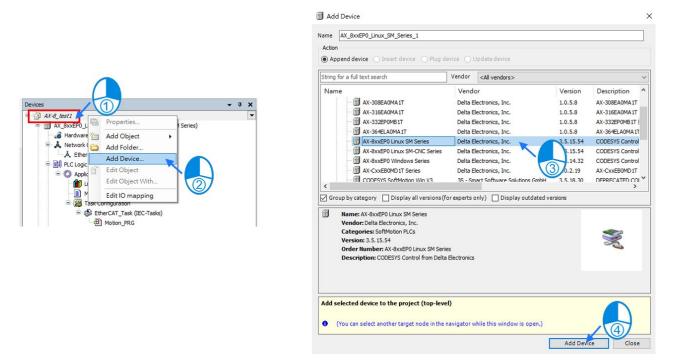
Double-click the device to add from the **Product List Editor** pane on your right-hand side. The device added will be updated in the graphical representation as well as in the Device tree immediately.



AX-8 Series Operation Manual

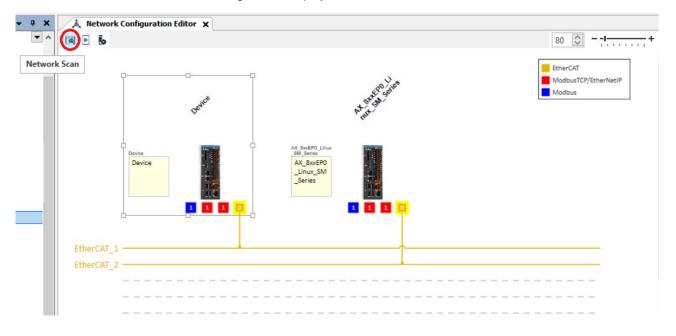
• Method 2

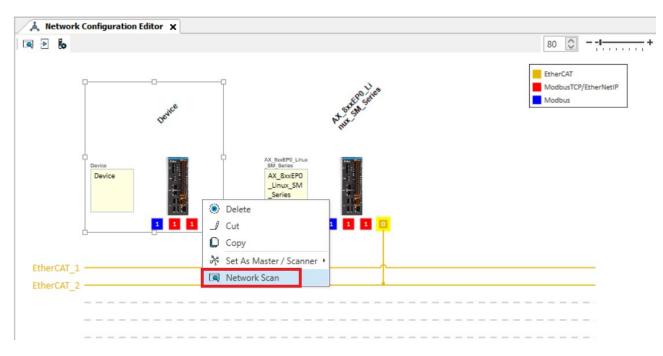
Right-click the project name in the Device tree to bring out the context menu. Double-click **Add Device** on the context menu to open a setting page for adding devices. Double-click the target device or click **Add Device** after selecting the target device.



Method 3

Click the icon or right-click the device and select **Network Scan** on the context menu to scan and then add the devices and network that have been configured in the project.



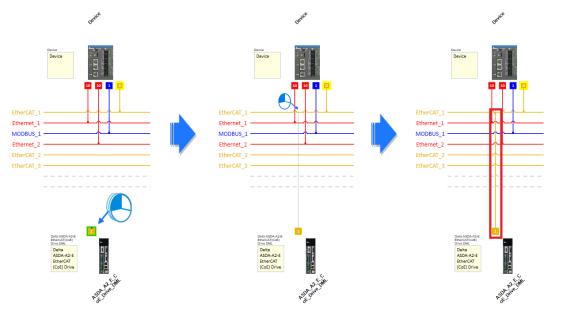


6.1.3.2 Creating Connections

After the station nodes are created, the next step is to establish connections. The network types supported have been listed in **section 6.1.2**. Follow the methods below to establish connections.

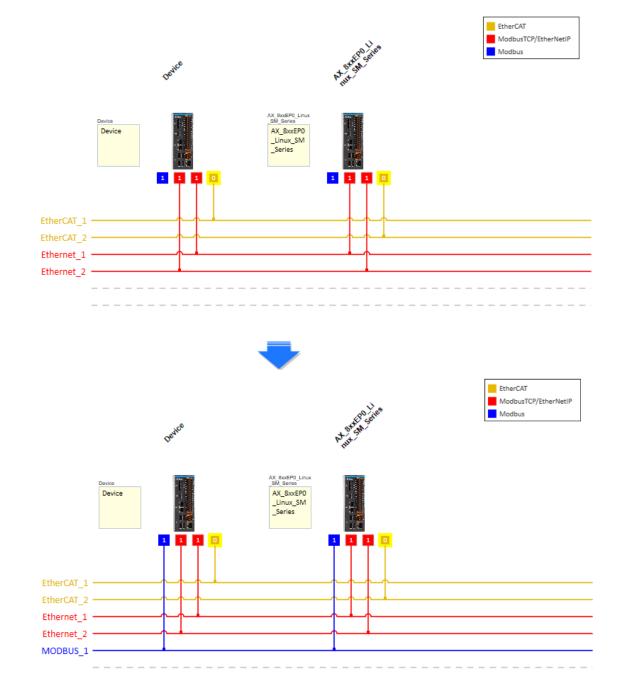
• Scenario 1

Drag and drop the communication port to the corresponding network type shown in line to create a connection between the devices.



• Scenario 2

Hold the communication port and drag it to the unused dotted line to create a network connection that is the same as the selected network communication type. Concurrently, a new unused dotted line in grey is added below.





Chapter 7 Basic Settings & Operation of Motion Control

Table of Contents

| 7.1 Ov | erview of Motion Control Instructions7-4 |
|---------|---|
| 7.1.1 | Motion Control Instructions |
| 7.1.2 | Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions |
| 7.1.3 | Categories of Motion Control Instructions |
| 7.2 Cre | ating Motion Control Project7-5 |
| 7.2.1 | Flowchart7-5 |
| 7.2.2 | Process for Creating a Project |
| 7.3 Co | nmissioning7-10 |
| 7.3.1 | Procedure for Commissioning7-10 |
| 7.3.2 | Example of Axis Parameter Settings7-10 |
| 7.3.3 | Performing Axes Commissioning |
| 7.4 Mo | tion Control Device7-15 |
| 7.4.1 | Axis Setting7-15 |
| 7.4.2 | Axis Introduction |
| 7.4 | .2.1 Introduction to Axis Parameters7-16 |
| 7.4 | .2.2 Axis Application in the Program7-25 |
| 7.4.3 | Procedure for Single-axis Configuration7-26 |
| 7.4.4 | Axis Group Settings7-33 |
| 7.4 | .4.1 Introduction to Axis Group Parameters7-33 |
| 7.4 | .4.2 Using Axis Groups in the Program7-35 |
| 7.4.5 | Process for Axis Group Configuration7-36 |
| 7.5 Mo | tion Axis Variables7-41 |
| 7.5.1 | Variables for Single Axis7-41 |
| 7.5.2 | Variables for Axis Group7-44 |
| 7.6 Mo | tion Control Programming7-47 |
| 7.6.1 | Motion Control Program7-47 |
| 7.6 | .1.1 DIADesigner-AX Programming Structure and Types7-47 |
| 7.6 | .1.2 POU in DIADesigner-AX7-48 |
| 7.6 | .1.3 Adding POU in DIADesigner-AX7-49 |
| 7.6 | .1.4 PDO Mapping7-51 |
| 7.6.2 | Axis State Transition7-52 |
| 7.6 | .2.1 Axis State |

| 7.6.2.2 | Axis Group State |
|--------------|---|
| | ution and Status of Motion Control Instructions |
| 7.6.3.1 | Basic Rules for Instruction Execution |
| 7.6.3.2 | Timing Diagram for Inputs / Outputs |
| 7.6.3.2 | |
| | Repeated Execution of a Single Motion Control Instruction |
| 7.6.3.4 | Multi-execution of Motion Control Instructions |
| 7.6.3.5 | Synchronous Execution of Motion Control Instructions |
| | ion |
| 7.6.4.1 | Types of Positions |
| 7.6.5 Cam | Tables and Framework 7-66 |
| 7.6.5.1 | E-CAM Framework7-66 |
| 7.6.5.2 | E-CAM Establishment |
| 7.7 Motion (| Control Functions |
| 7.7.1 Syst | em Structure |
| 7.7.2 Sing | le-axis Control7-71 |
| 7.7.2.1 | Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode7-71 |
| 7.7.2.2 | Profile Position Mode |
| 7.7.2.3 | Positioning7-72 |
| 7.7.2.4 | Stop Method |
| 7.7.2.5 | MC_GearIn |
| 7.7.2.6 | MC_GearInPos7-78 |
| 7.7.2.7 | MC_CamIn |
| | city Control |
| 7.7.3.1 | CSP Mode |
| 7.7.3.2 | CSV Mode |
| 7.7.3.3 | Profile Velocity Mode |
| | ue Control |
| • | mon Functions of Single-axis Control |
| 7.7.5.1 | Position Command |
| 7.7.5.2 | Velocity Command |
| 7.7.5.3 | Acceleration and Deceleration Command |
| 7.7.5.4 | Jerk Command |
| 7.7.5.5 | Axis Direction |
| | Group Control |
| 7.7.6.1 | Linear Interpolation |
| 7.7.6.2 | Helical Interpolation |
| 7.7.6.3 | Stop Command for Axis Group |
| | |
| e e | -speed I/O |
| 7.7.7.1 | I/O Configuration |
| 7.7.7.2 | DIO Settings |
| 7.7.7.3 | SSI Encoder Settings |
| 7.7.7.4 | Pulse Encoder Settings |

7

| 7.7.7.5 | Capture / Compare Settings | 7-109 |
|------------|---|-------|
| 7.7.8 Oth | er Features | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.1 | Changing Current Position | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.2 | Software Limit | 7-110 |
| 7.7.8.3 | Position Lag Settings | 7-111 |
| 7.7.8.4 | Cam Switch | 7-112 |
| 7.7.8.5 | Position Capture | 7-113 |
| 7.8 Progra | mming Example | 7-114 |
| 7.8.1 Dev | vice Framework | 7-114 |
| 7.8.1.1 | Utilization | 7-114 |
| 7.8.1.2 | Configuration | 7-114 |
| 7.8.2 Exa | Imples | 7-115 |
| 7.8.2.1 | Servo On | 7-116 |
| 7.8.2.2 | Resetting and Monitoring Single-axis Errors | 7-117 |
| 7.8.2.3 | Monitoring Instruction Errors | 7-121 |
| 7.8.2.4 | Quick Stop for Single Axis | 7-123 |
| 7.8.2.5 | Homing | 7-126 |
| 7.8.2.6 | Absolute Positioning | 7-128 |
| 7.8.2.7 | Switching Cam Tables during Cam Operation | 7-130 |
| 7.8.2.8 | Executing Master Phase Offset during Cam Operation | 7-138 |
| 7.8.2.9 | Changing Current Position in Movement | 7-146 |
| 7.8.2.10 | 0 Performing Superimposition during Gear Engagement | 7-151 |

7

7.1 Overview of Motion Control Instructions

7.1.1 Motion Control Instructions

This section introduces the elements of a motion control program, including devices, symbols, and motion control instructions.

Motion control instructions are defined as function blocks (FBs) and are used in programs to perform various motion control purposes. The MC motion control instructions introduced in this manual are developed based on the specifications of PLCopen^{*1} motion control function block.

This section provides an overview of the two motion control instructions, PLCopen and Delta-defined function blocks. PLCopen defines the interface of programs and function blocks, thus realizing the standardized motion control programming environment defined in IEC61131-3. Using PLCopen-based instructions together with Delta-defined instructions can reduce training and technical support costs.

Before using the instructions, make sure you fully understand the functionality of the device, symbols, and instructions. It is recommended to refer to the appendices of the AXn motion control instruction list and related error codes.

*1: PLCopen is an international standard organization that promotes industrial control standards based on IEC61131-3, which is widely adopted for PLC programming. For more information about PLCopen, please check the official website http://www.plcopen.org/.

7.1.2 Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions

This section describes the important operating specifications and limitations when applying motion commands. The detailed information of each command will be described in **Section 7.6.3** Motion Control Programming.

Programming languages supported by motion control instructions

DIADesigner-AX supports all programming languages to create, edit or maintain programs. Supported languages include Ladder Diagram (LD), Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Continuous Function Chart (CFC), Structured Language (ST), and Function Block Diagram (FBD).

For detailed information about the programming language, refer to the DIADesigner-AX Software Manual.

7.1.3 Categories of Motion Control Instructions

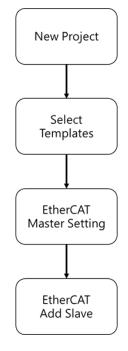
This section introduces the categories of motion control instructions. The corresponding instructions can be found in the libraries SM3_Basic, DL_MotionControl, and DL_MotionControlLight. For more details, refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

| Category | Туре | Function Group | Description | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|---|---|--|--|
| | | Positioning | "MC_": Motion control instruction based | | |
| Single-axis | Mattan | Velocity control | on PLCopen "DMC_": Delta custom motion control | | |
| motion | Motion | Torque control | command "SMC ": Motion command | | |
| instructions | | Synchronized control | "MC_XXX_DML": Delta's custom motion | | |
| | Administrative | Administrative function | control instructions, used for positioning axes. | | |
| Multi-axis | Motion | Axis group movement | Multi-axis motion | | |
| motion control instructions | Administrative | Administrative functions on multiple axes | Multi-axis configuration, monitoring and reset. | | |

7.2 Creating Motion Control Project

7.2.1 Flowchart

The flowchart below illustrates the process of motion control project creation and axis configuration.

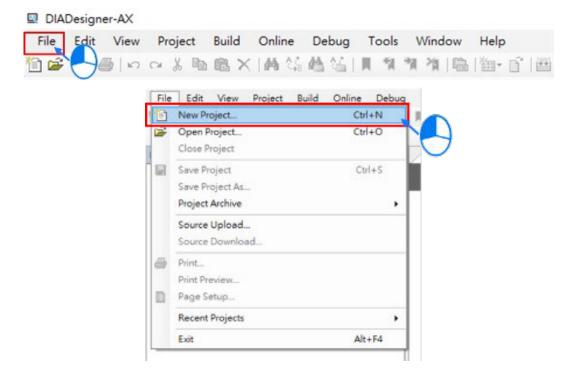


7.2.2 Process for Creating a Project

• Establish a new project

On the desktop shortcut, double-click to launch DIADesigner-AX.

1. Click File > New Project in the toolbar or click 📋 New Project... on the Start Page.



2. Enter **Name** and **Location** in the **New Project** window, and select the desired template to create a project. In this section, Model AX-8 is taken as an example; therefore, we select **Standard project** and then click **OK**.

| Libraries | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---|
| Drojecto | | AX | AX | | |
| Projects | | - | Standard | | |
| | | Empty project | project | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| A project containing | ne device, on | e application, and an e | mpty implemental | ion for PLC_PRG | ; |
| Name Untitled | 4 | | | | |
| | Untitled3 | | | | |
| Location C:\User | Vion.ko Docur | ments | | | ~ |
| | | | | | |

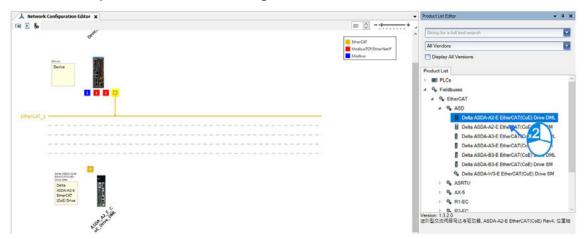
3. Double-click on **Network Configuration** to continue with EtherCAT settings.

| Devices | ņ | × |
|--|----------|---|
| 🖃 🎒 Untitled3 | | • |
| 🖻 🚮 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | |
| - 🔏 Hardware Configuration | | |
| 🖹 🙏 Network Configuration | | |
| 📥 EtherCAT Filter | | |
| 🖻 🗐 PLC Logic | | |
| E O Application | | |
| - Library Manager | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | |
| 🖻 🌃 Task Configuration | | |
| 🖻 🍪 EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| Motion_PRG | | |
| 🖻 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| PLC_PRG | | |
| EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) | | |
| 🖻 👘 BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | | |
| 🕆 Ъ SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | |

4. After double-clicking, the **Network Configuration Editor** window pops. The slave device can be found and added from the **Product List Editor** on the right.



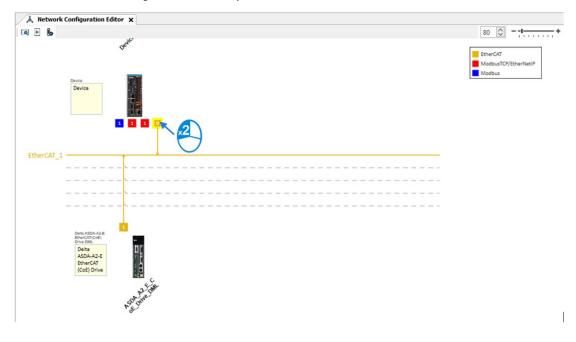
5. Select Fieldbuses > EtherCAT > ASD > Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT (CoE) Drive DML, double-click and it will be automatically added to the Network Configuration Editor.



6. Click on the yellow box above the slave station and drag it to the EtherCAT main line to complete the connection configuration between the master station and the slave station.



7. Double-click the small yellow box of the master station to set the parameters of the EtherCAT master station. In the master station setting, the EtherCAT synchronization time can be set.

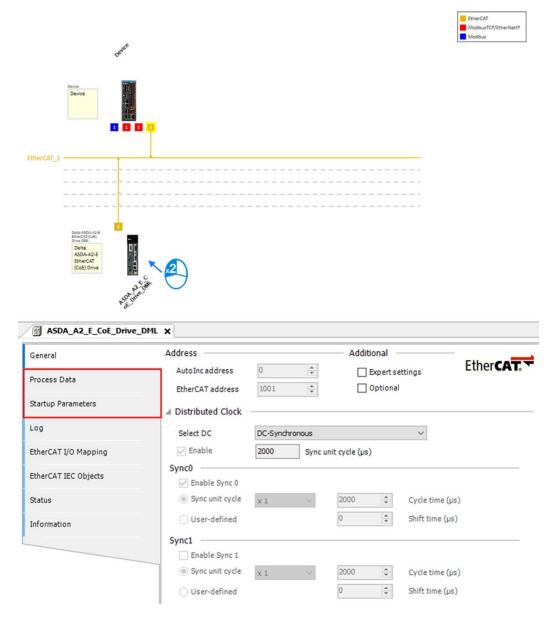


7

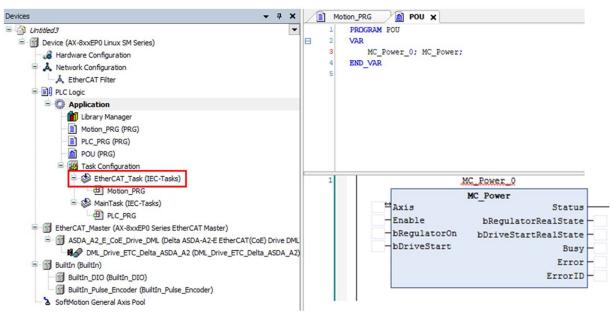
AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| General | Autoconfig master/slaves | EtherCAT |
|----------------------|---|------------------------|
| Sync Unit Assignment | EtherCAT NIC Settings | |
| Log | Destination address (MAC) FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF | Broadcast 🗌 Redundancy |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | Source address (MAC) 00-00-00-00-00 | Select |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | Network name ECAT O Select network by MAC Select network by MAC | by name |
| Status | ▲ Distributed Clock ▷ 0 | Options |
| Information | Cycle time 2000 🖨 µs | |
| | Sync offset 20 🔶 % | |
| | Sync window monitoring | |
| | Sync window 1 🌲 µs | |

8. Double-click slave device to enter the slave EtherCAT settings. After double-clicking, the slave station related setting page appears, such as station number setting, **Process Data** and **Startup Parameters** setting, etc.



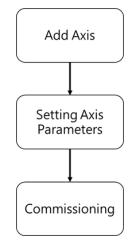
9. You can then start programming. It should be noted that for the motion command part, use the motion function block to write the program in the POU under **EtherCAT_Task** to prevent the motion function block from running normally.



7.3 Commissioning

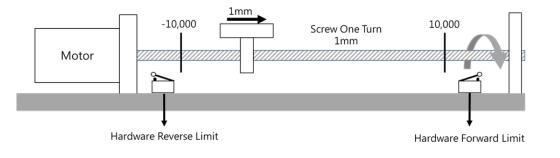
7.3.1 Procedure for Commissioning

The steps to establish a commissioning process are as follows:



7.3.2 Example of Axis Parameter Settings

Before using software to perform commissioning, axis parameters must be set first. The setting method is illustrated below:



• Axis configuration screen

| Axis Type an | nd Limits | | Motion Parameter | | | |
|--|---|------|--|--------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Virtual mode Finite Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 | | | Velocity Ramp Type Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smoo | [| Error Reaction Quick Stop | |
| | Positive [u]: Rotary Axis Mo Modulo value | | Dynamic Limits Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/ | /s ²]: Deceleration [| u/s²]: Jerk [u/s³]: |
| ransmissio | n Mechanism | | Position Lag Reaction | Deactivated | Lag Limit [u] | : 1 |
| | a Type Ball Scre | ew ~ | Mechanism Settings (1) Command pulse (4) Pitch: 10000 | per motor rotation | n: 1280000 | [Pulse] |
| | - U | | Gear Box | (2) Gear ratio n | umerator 1 | Å |
| V | | (3) | Gear Ratio = | (3) Gear ratio de | enominator 1 | . |

Parameter settings

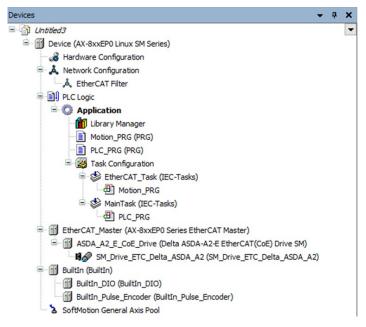
| Parameter Name | Setup |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Axis type ① | Linear axis |
| Command pulse per motor rotation 3 | 10,000 |
| Pitch 3 | 1 ^{*1} |
| Gear ratio denominator | 128 ^{*2} |
| Gear ratio numerator | 1 ^{*2} |
| Software limit_Positive ② | 10,000 |
| Software limit_Negative ② | -10,000 |

*1: The unit is 1mm. For instance, if you need to move by $1\mu m$, the input parameter would be 0.001.

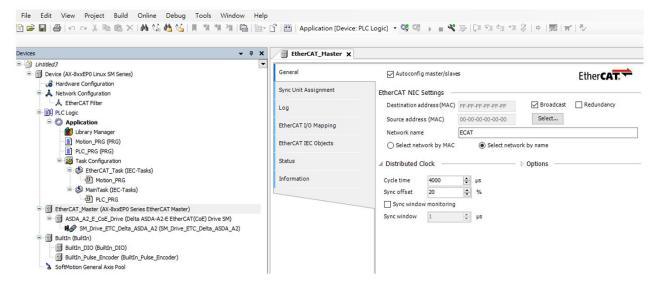
*2: It is a must to set P1-44 and P1-45 of the servo drive.

7.3.3 Performing Axes Commissioning

1. Double-click to select EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion.

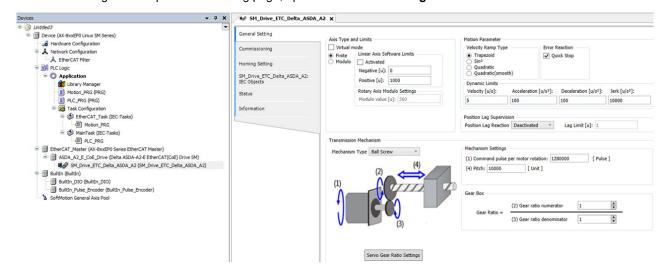


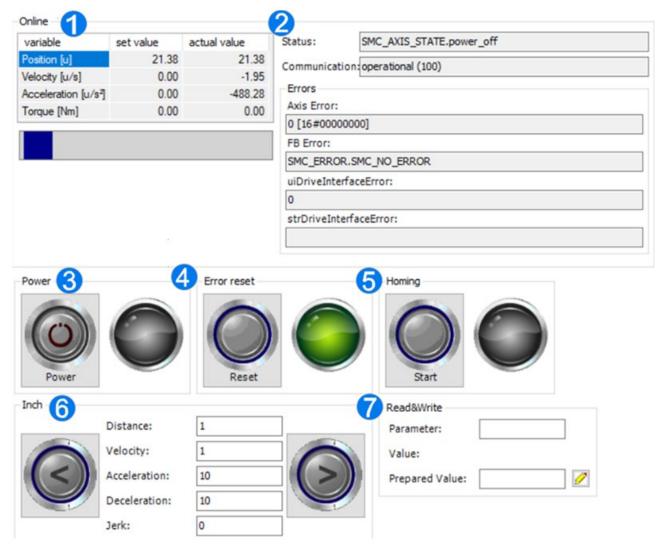
2. Double-click to select Online Config Mode.



- Devices д × □ □ Untitled3 • Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) Ardware Configuration 🖻 🙏 Network Configuration A EtherCAT Filter PLC Logic Application 👔 Library Manager Motion_PRG (PRG) PLC_PRG (PRG) E Task Configuration EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) Motion PRG 🖻 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) PLC_PRG = I EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) BuiltIn (BuiltIn) BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) SoftMotion General Axis Pool
- 3. After entering the online commissioning, double-click to select SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2.

4. After entering the axis parameter setting page, open the **Commissioning** tab.





Display on the Commissioning page

Information on axis commands

| Name | Function |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Position [u] | Set position and actual position |
| Velocity [u/s] | Set value and actual value |
| Acceleration [u/s ²] | Set value and actual value |
| Torque [Nm] | Set value and actual value |

Axis status and communication status

| Name | Function |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Status | Axis status |
| Communication | Communication status |

- Axis power: Set power on / off
- ④ Error reset: Clear servo axis error messages
- S Homing: Set the axis back to the original position

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

■ 6 Inch

| Name | Function |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| Distance | Moving distance |
| Velocity | Moving velocity |
| Acceleration | Acceleration rate |
| Deceleration | Deceleration rate |
| Jerk | Command value of jerk |

Read & Write:

Read and write the upper axis parameters. To read or modify Object Dictionary, please follow the steps:

- Read and write the parameter 0x6098 in object dictionary.



1 = fixed number

6098 = the prameter to be read and written

00 = sub for the parameter

- 1. Convert 0x1609800 to decimal number as 23,107,584.
- 2. Turn 23,107,584 into -23,107,584.
- 3. Enter -23,107,584 in Parameter field to read the parameter "0x6098".

7.4 Motion Control Device

7.4.1 Axis Setting

Motion control equipment is mainly used to set axis parameters. In most applications, user can set axis parameters in DIADesigner-AX. DIADesigner-AX provides user with a convenient editing environment. In this editing environment, the axis parameter setting of motion control is defined as its single data structure. This data structure contains multiple related parameters.

7.4.2 Axis Introduction

In a motion control system, the object used to perform motion control is called an axis, which contains physical servo drives, encoders and virtual servo drives. The axis types are listed in the table below.

| Types | Function |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Positioning axis ^{*1} | Perform basic positioning control such as absolute positioning, relative positioning etc through EtherCAT communication. |
| Velocity axis ^{*1} | Perform velocity control and torque control through EtherCAT communication (as seen in CIA 402 Velocity Mode). |
| Synchronous axis*2 | Perform servo control through EtherCAT communication, including basic positioning control as well as synchronous motion control such as electronic cams. |
| Pulse type servo axis | Perform physical servo control through pulses. |
| Virtual axis | Perform motion control commands without using physical servo control. |
| Encoder axis | Use physical encoder (SSI or incremental encoder) as feedback signals. |
| Virtual encoder axis | Used only in a program without encoders. |

*1:

Positioning axis and velocity axis need to use DL_MotionControlLight library.

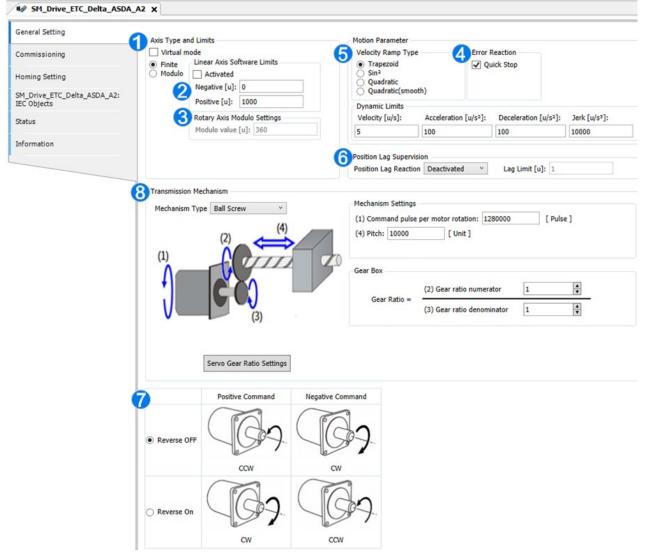
When the number of EtherCAT axes used by AX-8 exceeds 64 and the Soft Motion version is below V4.7.0.0, the MAX_MAILBOX_CHANNELS and MAX_SDO_Channels parameters in the Library (IODrvEtherCat \rightarrow ETC_Parameter) must be changed to 128.

*2: Synchronous axis need to be used with DL_MotionControl and SM3_Basic library.

7.4.2.1 Introduction to Axis Parameters

A servo axis is established with the corresponding axis parameters attendant. The following table lists its related instructions:

• Synchronous Axis



Axis Type and Limits

| Name | Function |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Virtual | Activate virtual axis. |
| Finite / Modulo | Set to be linear axis or rotary axis. |

Inear Axis Software Limits

| Name | Function |
|--------------|--|
| Activated | Activate software limit (only linear axis is supported). |
| Negative [u] | Reverse software limit. |
| Positive [u] | Forward software limit. |

■ ③ Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

| Name | Function |
|------------------|---|
| Modulo value [u] | Set the area of rotation for a turn (only for rotary axis). |

■ ④ Error Reaction

| Name | Function |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Quick Stop | Axis emergency stop |
| Deceleration [u/s ²] | Axis deceleration to stop (only valid when Quick Stop is not activated) |

■ S Velocity Ramp Type

| Name | Function |
|--|----------------------------|
| Trapezoid / Sin ² / Quadratic / Quadratic (Smooth) | Set axis motion trajectory |

■ 6 Position Lag Supervision

| Name | Function |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Positon Lag Reaction | Set the reaction for position lag. |
| Lag Limit [u] | Set the value of lag limit. |

Positive / Negative Command

| Name | Function |
|--------------------------|---|
| Reverse OFF / Reverse ON | Enable or disable reverse function for positive / negative command. |

- ® Transmission Mechanism
 - Servo Gear Ratio Setting

| Name | Function | |
|---|--|--|
| Unit Numerator Numerator factor of the electronic gear unit | | |
| Unit Denominator | Denominator factor of the electronic gear unit | |

The introductions of different mechanisms are given below:

- Ball Screw

| lechanism Type | Ball Screw (4) | * | Mechanism Settin (1) Command pu | lse per motor rotation: 1 | ÷ | [Pulse] |
|----------------|----------------|----|------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|-----------|
| | | 20 | (4) Pitch: 1 | 🛊 [Unit] | | |
| | (3) | | Gear Box | (2) Gear ratio numerator | 1 | • |
| | | | Gear Ratio = | (3) Gear ratio denominator | 1 | \$ |

7

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Name | Function |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Pitch | Distance between screw threads |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

- Round Table

| Mechanism Type | (2) | (4) | | ng ulse per motor rotation: 1 istance per motor rotation: 1 | \$ | [Pulse] |
|----------------|-----|-----|--------------|---|----|---------|
| 1 | 6 | U, | Gear Box | (2) Gear ratio numerator | | 6 |
| | (3) | | Gear Ratio = | | - | |
| | | | | (3) Gear ratio denominator | 1 | • |

| Name | Function |
|--|---|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Movement distance per motor rotation | Distance of the movement per motor rotation |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

- Belt Pulley

| lechanism Type | Belt Pully | ¥ | Mechanism Settin (1) Command pu | ulse per motor rotation: 1 | ÷ | [Pulse] |
|----------------|------------|-----|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------|-----------|
| | | (4) | (4) Diameter: 1 Movement distan | [Unit] | er* n | |
| | Č) | | Gear Box | | | |
| | (3) | | Gear Ratio = | (2) Gear ratio numerator | 1 | × |
| | | | Gear Ratio = | | | |

| Name | Function |
|--|--|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Diameter(moving distance motor rotation: diameter *n) | Diameter Distance of the movement per motor rotation: diameter*n |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA | A2 X |
|--|---|
| General Setting | Homing Mode 35 × |
| Commissioning | Homing speed during search for switch 100 T [0.1 rpm] |
| Homing Setting | Homing speed during search for z phase pulse 20 🙀 [0.1 rpm] Homing Acceleration 100 🐐 [ms] |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: IEC Objects | Description |
| Status | Mode 35 : Depending on the current position |
| Information | In mode 35, The homing instruction is executed, the axis does not move and its current position is regarded as the home position. |

| Name | Function |
|--|---|
| Homing Mode | Configure homing mode setting. |
| Homing speed during search for switch | Set the homing speed during search for switch. |
| Homing speed during search for z phase pulse | Set the homing speed during search for Z phase pulse. |
| Homing Acceleration | Set the homing acceleration rate. |

• Positioning axis

Positioning axis - Delta servo motors

| eneral Setting 🧧 | Axis Type and | Limits | Motion Parame | ter | | |
|---|---------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| | Finite | inear Axis Software Limits | Velocity Ramp | Type | | |
| Homing Setting | | Activated | Trapezoid | v | | |
| | | Negative [u]: 0 | Trapezoid | | | |
| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: IEC Objects | | Positive [u]: 1000 | | | | |
| | - | | | | | |
| Status | | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings — Modulo value [u]: 360 | | | | |
| Information | | Modulo value [u]: 360 | | | | |
| | | • | | | | |
| | Transmission M | | Mechanism Set | tions | | |
| | Mechanism T | ype Ball Screw ~ | | | | |
| | | (4) | (1) Command | pulse per motor rotation: 1 | 280000 | [Pulse] |
| | | (2) (4) | (4) Pitch: 100 | 00 [Unit] | | |
| | (1) | | | | | |
| | (1) | -1 1/1/ | | | | |
| | | | Gear Box | | | |
| | | | | (2) Gear ratio numer | rator 1 | * |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | Gear Rati | | | |
| | V | (3) | Gear Rati | 0 = (3) Gear ratio denon | ninator 1 | × |
| | 6 | Servo Gear Ratio Settings | Gear Rati | | ninator 1 | A Y |
| | Reverse OFF | Servo Gear Ratio Settings | | | ninator 1 | Å |

7

Positioning axis - Delta drives

| B DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000 |)_Plus X | |
|---|--|--|
| General Setting Motor Settings Homing Setting | Axis Type and Limits Finite Modulo Negative [u]: | Motion Parameter Velocity Ramp Type S-curve Litter Darie fiel 0.2 |
| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000_Plus : IEC Objects Status | Positive [u]: 1000 Rotary Axis Modulo Settings Modulo value [u]: 360 | A:Acc.Begin [s] 0.2 B:Acc.Arrival[s] 0.2 C:Dec.Begin [s] 0.2 D:Dec.Arrival[s] 0.2 D:Dec.Arrival[s] 0.2 |
| Information | Transmission Mechanism | |
| | Mechanism Type Ball Screw (4) (1) | Mechanism Settings (1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 4 [Pulse] (4) Pitch: 1 [Unit] |
| | | Gear Box Gear Ratio = (2) Gear ratio numerator 1 * (3) Gear ratio denominator 1 * |
| | • Reverse OFF | e Command |
| | O Reverse On | CCW CCW |

■ ① Axis Type and Limits

| Name | Function |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Finite / Modulo | Set to be linear axis or rotary axis. |

■ ② Linear Axis Software Limits

| Name | Function | | |
|--------------|--|--|--|
| Activated | Activate software limit (only linear axis is supported). | | |
| Negative [u] | Reverse software limit. | | |
| Positive [u] | Forward software limit. | | |

3 Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

| Name | Function |
|------------------|---|
| Modulo value [u] | Set the area of rotation for a turn (only for rotary axis). |

7

- Velocity Ramp Type
 - Delta Servo Motors

| Name | Function | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Trapezoid / Sin ² | Set the motion trajectory of axes | |

Delta drives

| Name | Function | | |
|---------------------|---|--|--|
| Trapezoid / S-Curve | Set the motion trajectory of axes | | |
| A : Acc.Begin | S acceleration start time setting 1 (s) | | |
| B : Acc.Arrival | S acceleration arrival time setting 2 (s) | | |
| C : Dec.Begin | S deceleration start time setting 1 (s) | | |
| D : Dec.Arrival | S deceleration arrival time setting 2 (s) | | |

S Positive / Negative Command

| Name | Function |
|------------------|---|
| Reverse OFF / ON | Enable or disable reverse function for positive / negative command. |

- 6 Transmission Mechanism
 - Servo Gear Ratio Setting

| Name | Function | |
|------------------|--|--|
| Unit Numerator | Numerator factor of the electronic gear unit | |
| Unit Denominator | Denominator factor of the electronic gear unit | |

The following columns are introduced for different mechanisms:

- Ball Screw

| Mechanism Type Ball Screw v (1) (2) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4 | (1) Command pr (4) Pitch: 1 | ng ulse per motor rotation: 1 | ÷ | [Pulse] |
|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------|
| | Gear Box | | | |
| (3) | Gear Ratio = | (2) Gear ratio numerator | 1 | • |
| | Gear Rabo = | (3) Gear ratio denominator | 1 | |

| Name | Function |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Pitch | Distance between screw threads |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

- Round Table

| Mechanism Type | Round Table | (4) | | ulse per motor rotation: 1 istance per motor rotation: 1 | • | [Pulse] |
|----------------|-------------|-----|--------------|---|---|---------|
| | ĞŎ() | U | | (2) Gear ratio numerator | 1 | ÷ |
| v — | (3) | | Gear Ratio = | (3) Gear ratio denominator | 1 | |

| Name | Function |
|--|---|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Movement distance per motor rotation | Distance of the movement per motor rotation |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

- Belt Pulley

| Mechanism Type Belt Pully * | | * | (1) Command pu | ng ulse per motor rotation: 1 | ÷ | [Pulse] |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|
| | | (4) | | [Unit] | r*n | |
| | | | Gear Box | (2) Gear ratio numerator | 1 | |
| | | Gear Ratio = | (3) Gear ratio denominator | 1 | ٢ | |

| Name | Function |
|--|---|
| (1) Command pulse per motor rotation | Command pulse value per motor rotation |
| (4) Diameter(moving distance motor rotation: diameter *n) | Diameter Distance of the movement per motor rotation: diameter*n |
| (2) Gear ratio numerator | Numerator of gear ratio |
| (3) Gear ratio denominator | Denominator of gear ratio |

■ Ø Motor Settings-settings for Delta drives

| General Setting | Motor Settings | | |
|---|-------------------------------|-------|--------|
| | Motor Selection | IM | v |
| MotorSettings | Pole Number | 4 | |
| Homing Setting | | | |
| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000_Plus : IEC Objects | Maximum Operation Frequency | 60.00 | [Hz] |
| Status | Motor Rated Frequency | 60.00 | [Hz] |
| nformation | Rated Current | 4.50 | [A] |
| | Rated Power | 0.75 | [kW] |
| | Rated Voltage | 200.0 | [V] |
| | Rated Speed | 1705 | [RPM |
| | Encoder Settings | | |
| | Encoder Connected | Yes | No |
| | Encoder Type Selection | None | Ŷ |
| | Encoder Input Type Setting | None | v |
| | Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | 1 | [ppr] |

| Name | Function |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Motor Selection | Set the motor type |
| Pole Number | Set the number of motor poles |
| Maximum Operation Frequency | Set the maximum operation frequency of the motor |
| Motor Rated Frequency | Set the motor rated frequency |
| Rated Current | Set the motor rated current current |
| Rated Power | Set the motor rated power |
| Rated Voltage | Set the motor rated voltage |
| Rated Speed | Set the motor rated speed |
| Encoder Connected | Set whether to start the encoder |
| Encoder Type Selection | Set the type of encoder |
| Encoder Input Type Setting | Set the the input type of encoder |
| Encoder Pulses Per Revolution | Set the number of encoder pulses per revolution |

- B Homing Setting
 - Delta servo motors

| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000 | _Plus X |
|---|--|
| General Setting | Homing Mode 35 × |
| MotorSettings | Homing speed during search for switch 100 |
| Homing Setting | Homing speed during search for z phase pulse 20 A Homing Acceleration 100 A |
| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000_Plus : IEC Objects | Description |
| Status | Mode 35 : Depending on the current position |
| Information | In mode 35, The homing instruction is executed, the axis does not move and its current position is regarded as the home position. |

Delta drives

(Supported models: C2000Plus, CH2000, MH300, MS300; DDF V1.0.1.0 (inclusive) and above support this interface)

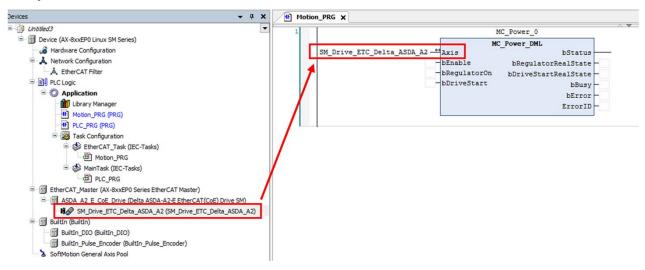
| B DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000 | _Plus X |
|---|--|
| General Setting | Homing Mode 35 V |
| MotorSettings | Homing speed during search for switch 100 |
| Homing Setting | Homing speed during search for z phase pulse 20 |
| DML_Drive_ETC_Delta_C2000_Plus : IEC Objects | Description |
| Status | Mode 35 : Depending on the current position |
| Information | In mode 35, The homing instruction is executed, the axis does not move and its current position is regarded as |
| | the home position. |

| Name | Function |
|--|---|
| Homing Mode | Configure homing mode setting. |
| Homing speed during search for switch | Set the homing speed during search for switch. |
| Homing speed during search for z phase pulse | Set the homing speed during search for Z phase pulse. |
| Homing Acceleration | Set the homing acceleration rate. |

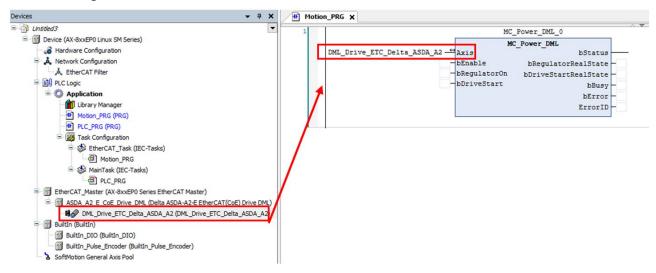
7.4.2.2 Axis Application in the Program

When a servo axis is added to the project, the system will automatically generate its servo axis name (the user can also modify its name) and input the name to the function block.

• Synchronous axis

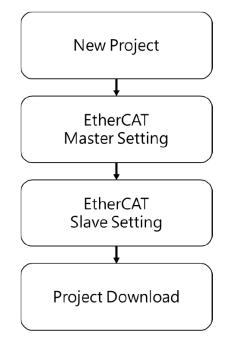


• Positioning axis

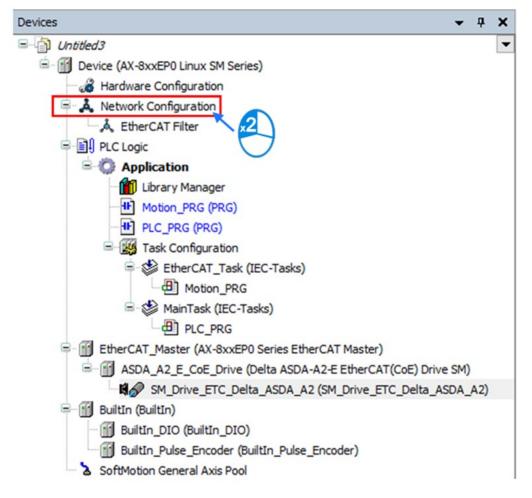


7.4.3 Procedure for Single-axis Configuration

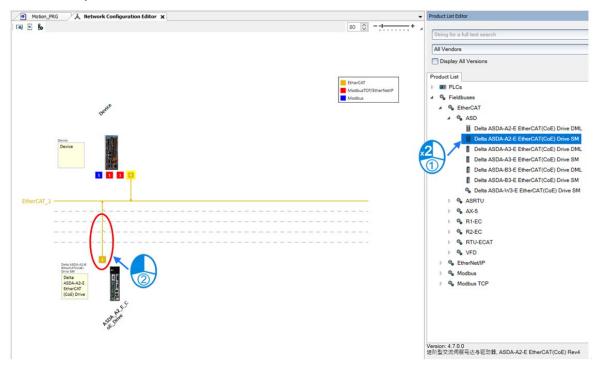
The axis setting procedure is shown in the figure below. For details of PLC project creation, refer to section 7.2 of this manual.



1. Open the project, click on Network Configuration.

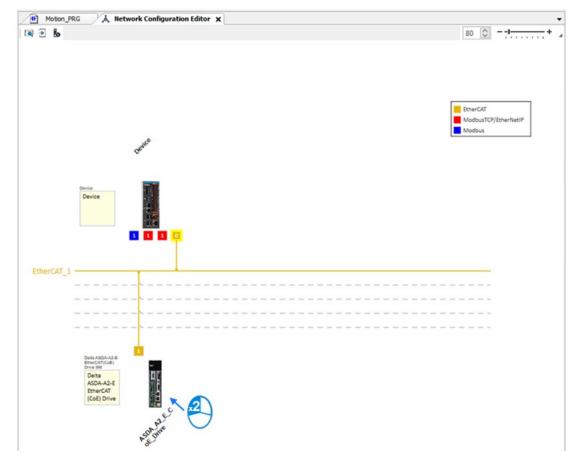


2. After entering the **Network Configuration** page, click **Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT (CoE) Drive Rev4_SM**^{*1} and then wire **1** to the yellow line above.



*1: Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT (CoE) Drive Rev4_SM is a synchronous axis. If you need to add a new positioning axis, select Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT (CoE) Drive Rev4_DML. The subsequent steps are the same.

3. After the axis is created, double-click the slave device to be set.



4. Switch to the page **Process Data** and set up its PDO mapping group. The default setting for Delta ASDA-A2 is the 2nd group, which can operate normally with most function blocks. If additional groups or PDO parameters are required, please refer to the content regarding function blocks in the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

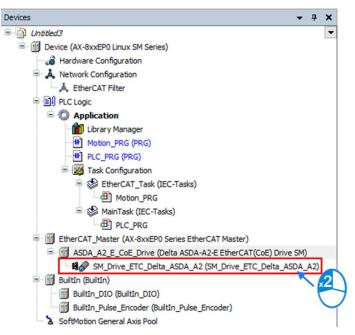
| General | Select the Outputs | Select the Outputs | | | Select the Inputs | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|--|--|
| | Name | Туре | Index | Name | Туре | Index | | |
| Process Data | 16#1600 1st RxPDO Mapping (exclu | | | 16#1A00 1st TxPDO Mapping (e | | | | |
| | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 | | |
| Startup Parameters | TargetPosition | DINT | 16#607A:16#00 | ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6064:16#00 | | |
| Log | TargetVelocity | DINT | 16#60FF:16#00 | Velocity actual value | DINT | 16#606C:16#00 | | |
| Log | TargetTorque | INT | 16#6071:16#00 | ActualTorque | INT | 16#6077:16#00 | | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | ModeOfOperation | SINT | 16#6060:16#00 | ModeOfOperationDisplay | SINT | 16#6061:16#00 | | |
| | ✓ 16#1601 2nd RxPDO Mapping | | ✓ 16#1A01 2nd TxPDO Mapping | | | | | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 | | |
| | TargetPosition | DINT | 16#607A:16#00 | ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6064:16#00 | | |
| Status | 16#1602 3rd RxPDO Mapping (exclu | r i | | 16#1A02 3rd TxPDO Mapping (e | | | | |
| | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 | | |
| Information | TargetVelocity | DINT | 16#60FF:16#00 | ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6064:16#00 | | |
| | 16#1603 4th RxPDO Mapping (exclu | | | Velocity actual value | DINT | 16#606C:16#00 | | |
| | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | 16#1A03 4th TxPDO Mapping (e | | | | |
| | TargetTorque | INT | 16#6071:16#00 | Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 | | |
| | | | | ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6064:16#00 | | |
| | | | | ActualTorque | INT | 16#6077:16#00 | | |

5. Initialize EtherCAT communication

Where it is necessary to write fixed values for the required Object Dictionary after each initialization, go to the **Startup Parameters** page to set up.

| General | 🕈 Add | 🛃 Edit 🗙 Delete 🤞 | Move Up 🕴 Move Down | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------|------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| Process Data | Line | Index:Subindex | Name | Value | Bit Length | Abort on Error | Jump to Line on Error | Next Line | Comment |
| riocess bata | 1 | 16#6060:16#00 | Op mode | 8 | 8 | | | 0 | Op mode |
| Startup Parameters | - 2 | 16#60C2:16#01 | Interpolation time period | 4 | 8 | | | 0 | Interpolation time period |
| | - 3 | 16#60C2:16#02 | Interpolation time index | -3 | 8 | | | 0 | Interpolation time inde |
| Log | - 4 | 16#6098:16#00 | Homing method | 35 | 8 | | | 0 | |
| | - 5 | 16#609A:16#00 | Homing acceleration | 100 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | - 6 | 16#6099:16#01 | Speed during search for switch | 100 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| | - 7 | 16#6099:16#02 | Speed during search for zero | 20 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | - 8 | 16#212C:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P1-44 | 1 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| | - 9 | 16#212D:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P1-45 | 1 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| Status | 10 | 16#230C:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P3-12 | 256 | 16 | | | 0 | |

6. After completing related settings of axis communication, double-click SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2.



7. Axis setting page

Axis types: Modulo stands for rotary axis; Finite stands for linear axis.

| eneral Setting | Axis Type and Limits | Motion Parameter | | | |
|---|---|--|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| ommissioning | Virtual mode | | Velocity Ramp Type Error Reaction | | |
| oming Setting M_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: | Finite Modulo Linear Axis Software Limits Activated Negative [u]: | Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smool) | | Quick Stop | |
| C Objects | Positive [u]: 1000 | Dynamic Limits | | | |
| atus | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/s ²] | Deceleration [u/s ² |]: Jerk [u/s³]: |
| | Modulo value [u]: 360 | 5 | 100 | 100 | 10000 |
| | Mechanism Type Ball Screw Y | Mechanism Settings | | | |
| | Transmission Mechanism | | | | |
| | | (1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1280000 [Pulse] (4) Pitch: 10000 [Unit] | | | ulse] |
| | (2) (4) | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | Gear Box | | | |
| | | Gear Box Gear Ratio = | (2) Gear ratio nume | erator 1 | A V |

8. Set the Linear Axis Software Limits. When Activated is checked, the software limits will be activated. Negative refers to negative limit whereas Positive refers to positive limit.

| General Setting | Axis Type an | d Limits | Motion Parameter | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Commissioning | Virtual m | ode | Velocity Ramp Ty | pe | Error Re | action | |
| | Finite | Linear Axis Software Limits | Trapezoid | | V Quic | k Stop | |
| Homing Setting | O Modulo | Activated | O Sin ² Quadratic | | | | |
| SM Drive ETC Delta ASDA A2: | | Negative [u]: 0 | Quadratic(smo | poth) | | | |
| IEC Objects | | Positive [u]: 1000 | Dynamic Limits | | | | |
| Status | | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [| u/s²]: | Deceleration [u/s2]: | Jerk [u/s ³]: |
| | | Modulo value [u]: 360 | 5 | 100 | | 100 | 10000 |
| Information | | | | | | | |
| | | | Position Lag Super | vision | | | |
| | | | Position Lag React | ion Deactivated | ~ | Lag Limit [u]: 1 | |

9. After the rotary axis settings are done, the rotation range must be defined. You should set the **Modulo value** in **Rotary Axis Modulo Settings**.

| is Type and Limits | Motion Parameter | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|
| Virtual mode | -Velocity Ramp Ty | pe Err | or Reaction | |
| Finite Linear Axis Software Limits Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 | Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic | | Quick Stop | |
| Positive [u]: 1000 | | | | |
| Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/s2 |]: Deceleration [u/s ²]: | Jerk [u/s ³]: |
| Modulo value [u]: 360 | 5 | 100 | 100 | 10000 |
| | | | | |
| | Position Lag Super Position Lag React | | Lag Limit [u]: 1 | |
| | Virtual mode Finite Linear Axis Software Limits Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 Positive [u]: 1000 Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Virtual mode Finite Modulo Activated Positive [u]: 1000 Rotary Axis Modulo Settings Modulo value [u]: 360 Velocity Ramp Tyr Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic Dynamic Limits Velocity [u/s]: 5 | Virtual mode Finite Inter Axis Software Limits Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 Positive [u]: 1000 Dynamic Limits Velocity [u/s]: Acceleration [u/s ² Velocity | Virtual mode Finite Linear Axis Software Limits Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 Positive [u]: 1000 Rotary Axis Modulo Settings Modulo value [u]: 360 Position Lag Supervision Position Lag Supervis |

7

10. Scaling / Mapping page

Set the pulse value for **Command pulse per motor rotation**. Set the moving distance per motor revolution, **Pitch**.

| | Axis Type ar | nd Limits | Motion Parameter | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|-------------------|--|------------------------------|--|--|
| Commissioning | Virtual m | | Velocity Ramp Type | E | ror Reaction | | | |
| Homing Setting SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: | Finite Modulo | Linear Axis Software Limits Activated Negative [u]: 0 | Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smoothing) | | Quick Stop | | | |
| IEC Objects | Positive [u]: 1000 | | Dynamic Limits | Dynamic Limits | | | | |
| Status | | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/s | ²]: Deceleration [u/s ²] |]: Jerk [u/s ³]: | | |
| | | Modulo value [u]: 360 | 5 | 100 | 100 | 10000 | | |
| | Transmissio | n Mechanism | | | | | | |
| | | Type Ball Screw (4) | Position Lag Reactio Mechanism Settings (1) Command pulse (4) Pitch: 10000 | | Lag Limit [u]: 1 | 7 1 | | |
| | | | Gear Box | (2) Gear ratio nu | merator 1 | • | | |
| | | | Gear Ratio = | | | | | |

11. To set the EtherCAT communication cycle, click EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion and set the Cycle time to 4000, Sync offset to 20.

| evices 🗸 🗸 🗸 | SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_AS | DA_A2 BtherCAT_Master X | |
|---|-----------------------|---|--|
| Untitled3 Untitled3 Service (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | General | Autoconfig master/slaves | EtherCAT |
| A Network Configuration | Sync Unit Assignment | EtherCAT NIC Settings | |
| ー 人 EtherCAT Filter 〒 回 PLC Logic | Log | Destination address (MAC) FF-FF-FF-FF-FF | |
| Application | EtherCAT I/O Mapping | Source address (MAC) 00-00-00-00 Network name ECAT | 0-00 Select |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) PLC_PRG (PRG) | EtherCAT IEC Objects | ○ Select network by MAC ● Sel | ect network by name |
| Set Configuration Set Set Configuration Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Set Set | Status | J Distributed Clock | / Options |
| | Information | Cycle time 1000 ↓ µs Sync offset 20 ↓ % | Use LRW instead of LWR/LRD Messages pertask Automatic restart slaves |
| Gil EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_DASDA_A2 (| | Sync window monitoring Sync window | |
| Bultin (Bultin) Bultin_DIO (Bultin_DIO) Bultin_Pulse_Encoder (Bultin_Pulse_Encoder) | | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | |

12. Scan the network for PLC.

| Devices – 7 🗙 | Device X | | | |
|---|---|---------------------------------|---------|--|
| Devices • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | Device X Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment Status | San Network Gatessar • Device • | Gateway | INTE INB0194 Press ENTER to set active path |
| | Information | | | |

13. After adding the scanned PLC, click **OK**.

| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway * Device * | | |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Applications | | | |
| Backup and Restore | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | |
| Files | | | |
| Log | Gateway | | |
| PLC Settings | Select Device | | 3 |
| PLC Shell | Select the Network Path to the Controller | Device Name: ^ | Scan Network |
| licensed Software Metrics | 1 X82ME1T6W22160002 [000A] | X82ME1T6W22160002 | Wink |
| System Settings | Te the second seco | Device Address: 000A | |
| Right Settings | | IP-Address: 192.168.0.10 | |
| System Parameters | | 192.168.0.10 | |
| System IEC Objects | | MAC-Address: 00:18:23:86:8b:da | |
| Task Deployment | | 00:18:23:86:8b:db | |
| Status | | FW-Version: | |
| Information | | Block driver: | |
| | Hide non-matching devices, filter by Target ID | OK | Cancel |

14. A green light appears after the controller is successfully connected. Click Login.

| | ices 👻 🕈 | X Device X | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|--|
| Status Target Type: 4102 | Chooled J Chooled J | Communication Settings Scan Net Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects | Gateway Gateway P-Address: Iocalitot: Port: | x82ME1760V22160002 (active) Device Name: X82ME176W22160002 Device Name: X82ME176W22160002 Device Adress: 000A IP-Address: 19-1460.10 IP-Address: 19-1460.10 ISI2386.10:10 /ul> |
| | | Status | | Target Type: 4102 |

15. Here, a window showing whether to download the program will pop up. Click YES to continue.

| 1-64-12 | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| Untitled3 Device [connected] (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway - Device - | |
| Hardware Configuration | | | |
| Setwork Configuration | Applications | | |
| A EtherCAT Filter | Backup and Restore | | |
| B I PLC Logic | | | |
| Application [stop] | Files | | ••• |
| - Mi Library Manager | | Gateway | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) PLC_PRG (PRG) | Log | Gateway-1 | X82ME1T6W22160002 (active) |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) Task Configuration | PLC Settings | | |
| Generation Generation | PLC Settings | IP-Address: localhost | Device Name: X82ME1T6W22160002 |
| A Motion_PRG | PLC Shell | | |
| MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | Port 1217 | Device Address: 000A |
| PLC_PRG | Licensed Software Metrics | | IP-Address: |
| A file EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) | | | 192.168.0.10 |
| ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) | System Settings | | 192.168.1.10 |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) | Right Settings | | × |
| Builtin (Builtin) | | DIADesigner-AX | ~ |
| - G 🗊 BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | System Parameters | No online change possible due to severe changes : Do | you want to perform a |
| Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder) SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | download? | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | System IEC Objects | | |
| | Task Deployment | | |
| | | Yes No | Details |
| | Status | | |
| | | | Target Vendor: |
| | Information | | Delta Electronics |
| | | | Target Version: |
| es 🗸 🗸 | X Device X POU | | |
| es | X Device X POU Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway • Device • | |
| AV8_SMC3_ReintDrive Gill Device [connected] (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) Hardware Configuration | Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway • Device • | |
| AX8_SMC1_RenizDrive Of Device [connected] (AX-80x6P0 Linux SM Series) a Hardware Configuration A Network Configuration | | Scan Network Gatemay + Device + | |
| AX8_SMC2_Renut2mie ① Bevice [connected] (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) □ # Hardware Configuration ★ A Network Configuration ※ Betwork Configuration ※ Betwork Configuration | Communication Settings | | |
| AX3_SMC3_RenizDrive ③ | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore | | |
| AX8_SMC2_Renut2mie ① Bevice [connected] (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) □ # Hardware Configuration ★ A Network Configuration ※ Betwork Configuration ※ Betwork Configuration | Communication Settings Applications | | |
| A X3_SMC3_RenzEmie | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore | Gateway | |
| AX8_SMC1_Reniz0mie Off Berkin Connected (AX-RiskEPO Linux SM Series) - # Hardware Configuration ● M Retroke Configuration | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log | | AX-SIGEPOME IT (active) |
| AX2_RenizDrive ① Device [connected] (AX:@ndEP0 Linux SM Series) ④ Hordware Configuration ④ Hordware Configuration ④ Device [Connected] (AX:@ndEP0 Linux SM Series) ④ Paplication (stop) ⑥ Application (stop) ⑥ Moton PRC (PRC) ⑥ Moton PRC (PRC) ⑥ @ @ Task Configuration ⑤ @ @ Task Configuration ⑤ @ @ Task Configuration ⑦ @ @ Task Configuration ⑦ @ @ Task Configuration ⑦ @ Device [Conside] | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files | Gateway-1 | Device Name: |
| A X8_SMC1_RenzEmie C III Device [connected] (XX-SocEPO Linux SM Series) → Hardmark Configuration A Network Configuration A Network Configuration I PC Logic C III Device Text (PRG) - III De | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log | Gateway-1 P-Address: localbox | Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T |
| AX3_SMC1_Reniz0mie Image: SMC1_Reniz0mie Image: SMC1_Renix0mie Image: SMC1_REni Image: | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings | Gateway-1 P-Address: localbox | Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Device Address: |
| AX2_SMC1_RenizDrive Image: Connected (XX-BoxEPO Linux SM Series) Image: Configuration Image: Conf | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings | Gateway Gateway Dr-Address: Iocalhost Port 1217 | Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMC1_Reniz0mie Image: SMC1_Reniz0mie Image: SMC1_Renix0mie Image: SMC1_REni Image: | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics | Gateway-1 P-Address: localbox | Device Name: AX-816EP0ME1T Device Address: |
| AX2_SMC2_RenzDme Image: Connected (AX-RocEPO Linux SM Series) Image: Configuration Image: Configu | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Settings | Gateway Gateway B*Address: Iocalhost Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMC2_Renzbrie C) Berking connected (XX-SixEPO Linux SM Series) - & Hardmark Configuration - & Hardmark Configuration - & Hardmark Configuration - | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics | Gateway Gateway Dr-Address: Iocalhost Port 1217 | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX2_SMC2_RenizBrie G) Device (connected) (AX-BACFO Linux SM Series) G) Horization G) Horization G) Horization G) Replication (stop) G) Application (stop) G) Application (stop) G) Pool (PRG) G) Boton (PRG Gradies) G) Moton (PRG G | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings | Gateway-1 Gateway-1 JP-Address: Iocalhost Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX IODE application changed since last download. What do you want to | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings | Gateway Gateway B*Address: Iocalhost Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX2_SMC2_RenizBrie G) Device (connected) (AX-BACFO Linux SM Series) G) Horization G) Horization G) Horization G) Replication (stop) G) Application (stop) G) Application (stop) G) Pool (PRG) G) Boton (PRG Gradies) G) Moton (PRG G | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters | Gateway Gateway Gateway Gateway Dealboot Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX Optons Optons Optons Output honline change | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings | Gateway Gateway Br-Address: I cellhost Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX Coptons Copton | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters | Gateway Gateway Gateway Gateway Dealboot Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX Optons Optons Optons Output honline change | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment | Gateway Gateway Br-Address: I cellhost Port 1217 DIADesigner-AX Coptons Copton | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System EC Objects | Gateway-1 Gateway-1 P-Address: I ocalhost Potr DIADesigner-AX Coptors Coptor Co | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment | Gateway-1 Gatewa | Device Name: AX-816EP0HEIT Device Address: 0301.D004 X do? |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment Status | Gateway-1 Gateway-1 P-Address: I ocalhost Potr DIADesigner-AX Coptors Coptor Co | Device Name: AX-816EP0MEIT Device Address: 0301.D00A |
| AX3_SMCJ_RenzDme Image: Since Configuration Image: Application (stop) | Communication Settings Applications Backup and Restore Files Log PLC Settings PLC Settings PLC Shell Licensed Software Metrics System Settings Right Settings System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment Status | Gateway-1 Gatewa | Device Name: AX-816EP0HEIT Device Address: 0301.D004 X do? |

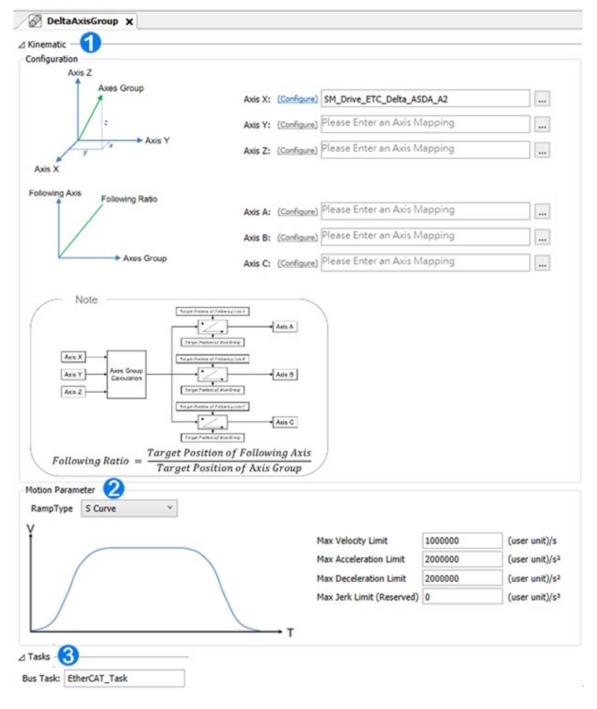
7.4.4 Axis Group Settings

Axis group movement should be applied via DIADesigner-AX software when multiple axes are executed simultaneously with linear and helical interpolation functions required.

| Number of | Maximum number of axes controlled by linear interpolation | 6 axes |
|--------------|---|-----------------------|
| control axes | Number of control axes controlled for helical interpolation | 6 axes (3 slave axes) |

7.4.4.1 Introduction to Axis Group Parameters

The parameters used for axis group motion are as follows:



• 1 Kinematic

| Name | Function |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Axis X ^{*1} | X axis in axis group |
| Axis Y ^{*1} | Y axis in axis group |
| Axis Z ^{*1} | Z axis in axis group |
| Axis A ^{*1} | A axis in axis group |
| Axis B ^{*1} | B axis in axis group |
| Axis C ^{*1} | C axis in axis group |

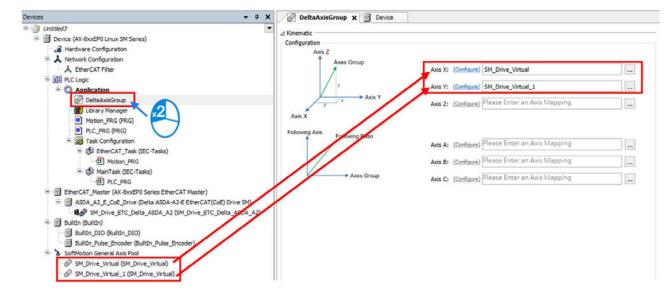
Ø Motion Parameters

| Name | Function |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Ramp Type ^{*2} | Velocity ramp type |
| Max Velocity Limit*3 | Maximum velocity of axis group |
| Max Acceleration Limit*3 | Maximum acceleration of axis group |
| Max Deceleration Limit*3 | Maximum deceleration of axis group |
| Max Jerk Limit (Reserved)*3 | Maximum jerk rate of axis group (this function is reserved) |

• 3 Tasks

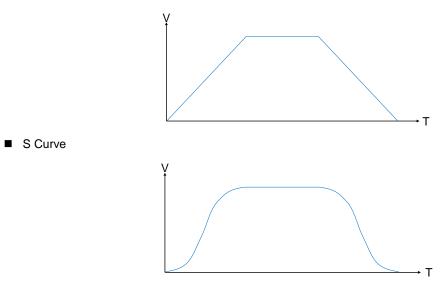
| Name | Function |
|----------|--------------------------------|
| Bus Task | Set update task for axis group |

*1: Axis X ~ Axis C: Input the individual axis name.



*2: There are two ramp types: Trapezoid and S Curve, which are displayed as follows.

Trapezoid

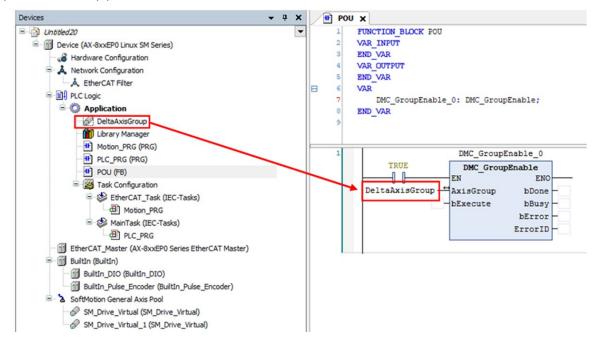


*3:

- Max Velocity Limit: When the movement speed of the axis group exceeds the set parameters, an error will be reported.
- Max Acceleration Limit: When the axis group movement acceleration exceeds the set parameter, an error will be reported.
- Max Deceleration Limit: When the axis group movement deceleration exceeds the set parameter, an error will be reported.

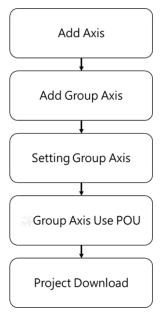
7.4.4.2 Using Axis Groups in the Program

Before using the axis group function block in the program, you must add an axis group node in the project tree and set the name of the single axis to be used by the axis group. After the setting is complete, please point the node name of the axis group to the AxisGroup pins of each functional block.



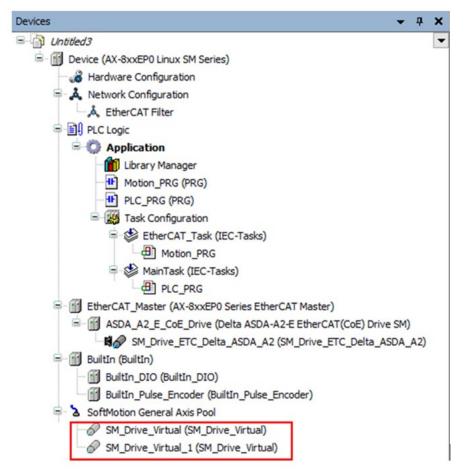
7.4.5 Process for Axis Group Configuration

To use the axis group movement, you must set the axis group name and the corresponding individual axis through DIADesigner-AX. The flowchart of axis group creation is as follows.



Steps to create an axis group

1. Add a single axis. The following process takes two virtual axes creation as an example.



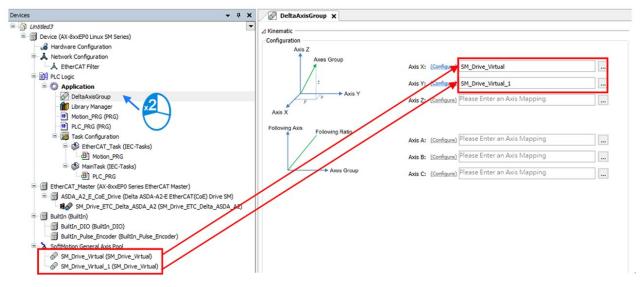
| Devices | | • | ą | × | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----|----|------|--------------------------------|
| S Untitled3 | | | | - | |
| B- M Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Set | ies) | | | | |
| - 🔏 Hardware Configuration | | | | | |
| A Network Configuration | | | | | |
| A EtherCAT Filter | | | | | |
| PLC Logic | | | | _ | |
| Application | | | | | |
| Library Ma | 2py | - 1 | | | |
| Modon_PR - | aste | - 1 | | | |
| (77) | | - 1 | | | |
| Ethero | elete | | | | |
| B M | efactoring | • | | | |
| AinTa 🛗 P | roperties | | | | |
| EtherCAT_Master | dd Object 💦 🦳 | • | 1 | Ala | rm Configuration |
| | dd Folder | | 0 | Ap | plication |
| SM_Drive | dit Object | 2 | 2 | Axi | s Group |
| | dit Object With | (| 3 | Car | m table |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BL | ogin | (| 8 | CN | IC program |
| | elete application from device | 4 | \$ | CN | IC settings |
| SM_Drive_Virtual (SM_D | | _ | | Co | mmunication Manager |
| SM_Drive_Virtual_1 (SM | | 6 | 6 | Dat | ta Sources Manager |
| | | 8 | 2 | Del | lta Axis Group |
| | | 4 | 3 | DU | л |
| | | | | Ext | ernal File |
| | | 1 | 3 | Glo | bal Variable List |
| | | 1 | T | Glo | obal Variable List (tasklocal) |
| | | 1 | | Ima | age Pool |
| | | | -0 | Inte | erface |
| | | 1 | 3 | Ne | twork Variable List (Receiver) |
| | | 1 | 3 | Ne | twork Variable List (Sender) |
| | | • | T | Per | rsistent Variables |
| | | a | 8) | PO | U |
| | | a | 8) | PO | U for Implicit Checks |

2. After the creation is complete, right-click **Application** and select **Add Object > Delta Axis Group**.

3. Set the name for axis group in the Add Delta Axis Group window and click Add. DeltaAxisGroup will then appear in the project tree on the left.

| dd Delta Axis Group | × Devices | - ₽ | 3 |
|---------------------|---|------------------------------|---|
| | Chtitled3 | | |
| 2 | Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | |
| Delta Axis Group | - 🖓 Hardware Configuration | | |
| | 🖻 🙏 Network Configuration | | |
| | A EtherCAT Filter | | |
| ame: | PLC Logic | | |
| eltaAxisGroup | Carta | | |
| | DeltaAxisGroup | | |
| | Library Manager | | |
| | Motion_PRG (PRG) | | |
| | PLC_PRG (PRG) | | |
| | 😑 🧱 Task Configuration | | |
| | 😑 🍪 EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Task | | |
| | - d Motion_PRG | | |
| | 😑 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| | DIC_PRG | | |
| | EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series E | rCAT Master) | |
| | ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASD | 42-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) | |
| | SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_ | (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) | 1 |
| | 🗐 🎁 BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | |
| | BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | |
| | BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Puls | incoder) | |
| Add | Cancel 😑 🚡 SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | |
| | SM_Drive_Virtual (SM_Drive_Virtua | | |
| | SM_Drive_Virtual_1 (SM_Drive_Virt | | |

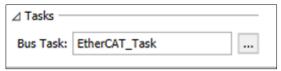
4. Click on DeltaAxisGroup, input the names of the two virtual axes into Axis X and Axis Y.



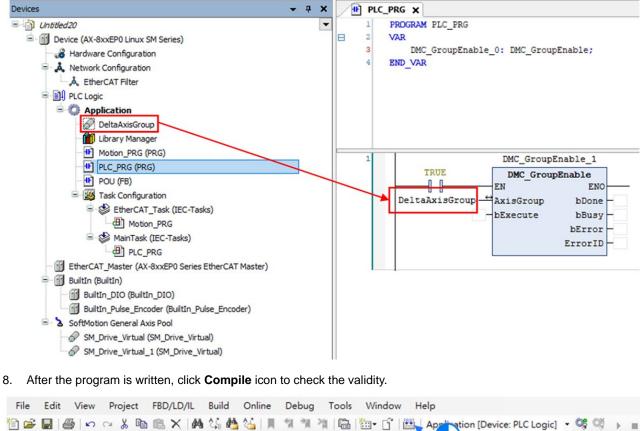
5. Then click Bus Task to enter the Input Assistant page. Select EtherCAT_Task and click OK.

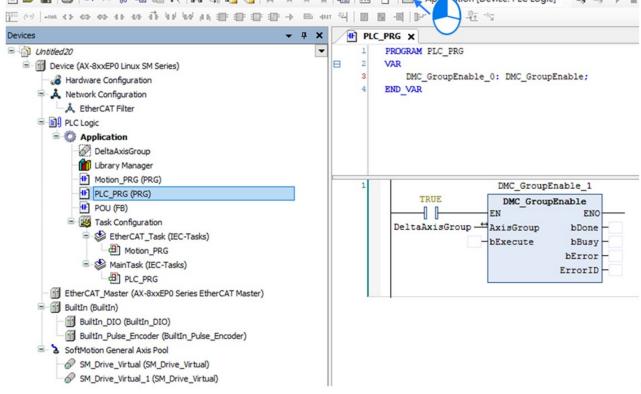
| atic | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--------------------|--|---|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| ration | | | | | | | | | |
| Axis Z | | | | | Input Assistant | | | | |
| Axes Group | Axis X: (Configure) Ple | ase Enter an Avis I | Japping | | Input Assistant | | | | |
| | | | | | Text Search | Categories | | | |
| 2 | Axis Y: (Configure) Ple | ase Enter an Axis I | Mapping | | Territoria de la constante de | | | | |
| Axis Y | Axis Z: (Configure) | ana Eator na Auir I | Annaina | 1000 | SoftMotion Ax | (es | Name | Туре | Address |
| 1 3 | Axis Z: (Contigure) Pic | ase criter an Akis i | napping | | | | 🖻 🎑 IoConfig_Globals | VAR_GLOBAL | |
| ĸ | | | | | | | SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 | SM3_Drive_ETC_Del | |
| ng Axis | | | | | | | SM_Drive_Virtual | SM3_Basic.AXIS_RE | |
| Following Ratio | Axis A: (Configure) | ase Enter an Axis I | Mapping | | | | SM_Drive_Virtual_1 | SM3_Basic.AXIS_RE | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| / | Axis B: (Configure) Ple | ase Enter an Axis I | Mapping | | | | | | |
| Axes Group | Axis C: (Configure) Ple | ase Enter an Avis 5 | Mapping | | XX | | | | |
| | Adds C: [Configure] | are criter arready | nopping | | | | | | |
| | Adds A | | | | | | | | |
| Aris X Aris Y Aris Group | Adds A | | | | | | < | | |
| Ann X) Ann Group Transmitter Ann X) Ann Group Transmitter Ann X) Canolation Transmitter Ann Z Transmitter Transmitter | Adds A | | | | Structured v | view | ¢ | | |
| AarxX Aars Group Image: Second Secon | Adds A | | | | Structured v | riew | < ∑Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace p |
| Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi | Add A | | | | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace p |
| Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi | Adds A | | | | Documentation | 1 | | arguments Insert wit | h namespace p |
| Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi Ansi | Add A | | | | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert will | h namespace p |
| And the second s | Add A | | | | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace pr |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Constant Ans Y Constant Con | Termina Ter | | | _ | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace pr |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Constant Ans Y Constant Con | Termina Ter | Velocity Limit | 1000000 | (user unit)/s | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Desert will | h namespace p |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Constant Ans Y Constant Con | And And And And And And And And | Velocity Limit Acceleration Limit | 1000000 2000000 | (user unit)/s (user unit)/s ² | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace p |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Constant Ans Y Constant Con | tion of Following Axis sittion of Axis Group | | | | Documentation | 1 | ⊡ Insert with | arguments invert wit | h namespace p |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Consume Target Post Target Post Target Post Parameter | A starting the starting of the starting the starting of the st | Acceleration Limit | 2000000 2000000 | (user unit)/s ² | Documentation SM_Drive_Virtu | al: SM3_Basic.AXIS_REF_V | ⊡ Insert with | | |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Consume Target Post Target Post Target Post Parameter | A starting of the starting of | Acceleration Limit Deceleration Limit | 2000000 2000000 | (user unit)/s ² (user unit)/s ² | Documentation | al: SM3_Basic.AXIS_REF_V | ⊡ Insert with | arguments Insert wit | h namespace p |
| Ans X Ans X Ans X Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Ans Y Consume Target Post Target Post Target Post Parameter | A starting of the starting of | Acceleration Limit Deceleration Limit | 2000000 2000000 | (user unit)/s ² (user unit)/s ² | Documentation SM_Drive_Virtu | al: SM3_Basic.AXIS_REF_V | ⊡ Insert with | | |

6. After setting the task, EtherCAT_Task appears in the field of Tasks.



7. Add DMC_GroupEnable function block under PLC_PRG, and fill in the axis group name in the AxisGroup pin.





- File Edit View Project FBD/LD/IL Build Online Debug Tools Window Help 🎦 🖆 📕 | 🎒 | 🖙 🖙 👗 ங 瞗 🗙 | 🏘 🎼 🍓 🌿 | 川 🧐 🦄 📲 🎬 | 🏪 🖄 🖬 👘 🕆 👔 🖉 • 4 X Devices PLC_PRG X PROGRAM PLC_PRG B Intitled 20 • 1 B 2 VAR - M Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) 3 DMC_GroupEnable_0: DMC_GroupEnable; Ardware Configuration 4 END VAR A Network Configuration A EtherCAT Filter PLC Logic B O Application DeltaAxisGroup Library Manager H Motion_PRG (PRG) 1 DMC_GroupEnable_1 PLC_PRG (PRG) TRUE DMC_GroupEnable POU (FB) -0 0-ENO EN Task Configuration DeltaAxisGroup -AxisGroup bDone EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) bExecute bBusy Motion_PRG bError 🖻 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) ErrorID PLC_PRG EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) BuiltIn (BuiltIn) BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) 🖻 👌 SoftMotion General Axis Pool SM_Drive_Virtual (SM_Drive_Virtual) SM_Drive_Virtual_1 (SM_Drive_Virtual)
- 9. After compilation, click on Online Monitoring button to download the program.

7.5 Motion Axis Variables

7.5.1 Variables for Single Axis

After axes are created in the project tree of the software DIADesigner-AX, the corresponding axis parameters, which are only for reading, will be generated automatically. Axes are divided into two types: synchronous axis (Axis_REF_SM3) and positioning axis (Axis_REF_DML), which are set out in the following tables:

• Synchronous axis (Axis_REF_SM3)

| No. | Name | Data Type | Default Value | Description |
|--------|-------------------------------|--|----------------|--|
| 1000 | nAxisState | SMC_AXIS_ STATE(INT) | Standstill (3) | Show current axis state according to MC_ReadStatus |
| 1012 | bCommunicatio n | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when EtherCAT axis communication is normal; FALSE if disconnected |
| 1014 | uiDriveInterface Error | UINT | 0 | If the Driver Interface detects an error, it will display the corresponding error code |
| 1021 | wDriveId | WORD | Driver | The number in driver nodes on the Fieldbus |
| 1025 | fTaskCycle | LREAL | Driver | EtherCAT task cycle time |
| 1035 | fbeFBError | ARRAY [0g_SMC_ NUMBER_ FB_ ERRORS] OF SMC_FB ERROR | 0 | Axis-related error table |
| 1040 | bVirtual | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE if it is a virtual axis; FALSE if it is a real axis. |
| 1051 | iRatioTechUnits Num | DINT | 1 | Change gear ratio in axis setting (denominator) |
| 1052 | dwRatioTechUn its Denom | DWORD | 1 | Change gear ratio in axis setting (numerator) |
| 1060 | iMovementType | INT | 1 | 0 = Modulo 1 = Finite |
| 1061 | fPositionPeriod | LREAL | 1000 | Maximum moving distance of rotary axis |
| 1062 | eRampType | SMC_RAMPTY PE | Trapez | Velocity ramp type: Trapezoid sin^2 Quadtatic Quadtatic (smooth) |
| 1100/1 | fSetPosition | LREAL | 0 | Command position (user-defined unit) |
| 1101 | fActPosition | LREAL | 0 | Feedback position (user-defined unit) |

| No. | Name | Data Type | Default Value | Description |
|-------------|----------------------------|-----------|---------------|---|
| 1110,1 1 | fSetVelocity | LREAL | 0 | Command velocity (user-defined unit/s) |
| 1111,1 0 | fActVelocity | LREAL | 0 | Feedback velocity (user-defined unit/s) |
| 1115 | bConstantVeloc ity | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when the velocity is constant |
| 1120 | fSetAcceleratio n | LREAL | 0 | Acceleration command (user-defined unit/s^2) |
| 1125 | bAccelerating | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when axis is accelerating |
| 1135 | bDecelerating | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when axis is decelerating |
| 1140 | fSetJerk | LREAL | 0 | Commanded jerk value |
| 1160 | fSetTorque | LREAL | 0 | Commanded torque (Nm) |
| 1161 | fActTorque | LREAL | 0 | Actual torque (Nm) |
| 1200,2 | fSWLimitPositi∨ e | LREAL | 0 | Set the range of software positive limit |
| 1201,3 | fSWLimitNegati ve | LREAL | 0 | Set the range of software negative limit |
| 1204 | bSWEndSwitch Active | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when software limit switch activated; the state machine changes to Errorstop |
| 1205 | bSWLimitEnabl e | BOOL | FALSE | Software limit switch: TRUE (Enable) / FALSE (Disable) |
| - | strDriveInterfac eError | STRING | ., | Axis error |

• Positioning axis (Axis_REF_DML)

| No. | Name | Data type | Default value | Description |
|------|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1000 | nAxisState | SML_AXIS_ STATE | SML_AS_Po werOff (0) | Show current axis state according to MC_ReadStatus |
| 1012 | bCommunicatio n | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when EtherCAT axis communication is normal; FALSE if disconnected |
| 1014 | uiDriveInterface Error | UINT | 0 | If the Driver Interface detects an error, it will display the corresponding error code |
| 1051 | iRatioTechUnits Num | DINT | 1 | Change gear ratio in axis setting (denominator) |
| 1052 | dwRatioTechUn its Denom | DWORD | 1 | Change gear ratio in axis setting (numerator) |
| 1060 | iMovementType | SML_Movemen | SML_MT_MO | Axis types: |

| No. | Name | Data type | Default value | Description |
|------|--------------------------------|------------------|---------------|--|
| | | tType | DULO | SML_MT_MODULO = rotary axis SML_MT_FINITE = linear axis |
| 1062 | eRampType ^{*1} | SMC_RAMP TYPE | Trapez | Velocity ramp type: ■ Trapezoid ■ sin^2 |
| 1101 | fActPosition | LREAL | 0 | Feedback position (user-defined unit) |
| - | strDriveInterfac e Error | STRING | σ | Axis error |

*1: Only Trapezoid and sin^2 are supported.

7

7.5.2 Variables for Axis Group

After axis groups are created in the project tree of the software DIADesigner-AX, the system will automatically create the corresponding axis variables, which are set out in the following table.

| Name | Data type | Set value (default) | Function |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|--|
| GroupState | DMC_ GROUP_ STATE | GroupDisabled / GroupStandby / GroupMoving / GroupHoming / GroupStopping / GroupErrorstop (GroupDisabled) | Commands for axis groups status |
| bError | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when an error occurs in the axis group |
| dwErrorld | DMC_ ERROR | DMC_ERROR (DMC_GM_NO_ ERROR) | Detailed error description |
| IrVelocity | LREAL | 0 ~ 1.798E+308 (0) | Current velocity of axis group |
| IrAcceleration | LREAL | Positive, negative, or zero (0) | Current acceleration of axis group |
| lrJerk | LREAL | Positive, negative, or zero (0) | Current jerk of axis group |
| bAccelerating | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when acceleration |
| bDecelerating | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when deceleration |
| bConstantVelocity | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when constant velocity (includes velocity = 0) |
| bInPosition | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when positioning is completed |
| bContinueDataWrit en | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE if relevant data is available for DMC_GroupContinue after axis group motion is suspended |
| ContinuePos | ARRAY [05] OF LREAL | [0,0,0,0,0,0] | Record the current position of the axis group when the execution of DMC_GroupInterrupt is done |
| AxisX_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis group in Axis_X |
| AxisY_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis |

| Name | Data type | Set value (default) | Function |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|--|
| | | | group in Axis_Y |
| AxisZ_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis group in Axis_Z |
| AxisA_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis group in Axis_A |
| AxisB_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis group in Axis_B |
| AxisC_Name ^{*1} | String | | Display the axis name used by the current axis group in Axis_C |
| RampType | DMC_GR OUP_RA MP_TYPE | Trapezoid / S Curve (S Curve) | Ramp type of the current axis group |
| IrMaxVelocityLimit | LREAL | positive number or zero (1000000) | Maximum velocity of axis group |
| IrMaxAcceleration Limit | LREAL | positive number or zero (2000000) | Maximum acceleration of axis group |
| IrMaxDeceleration Limit | LREAL | positive number or zero (2000000) | Maximum deceleration of axis group |
| IrMaxJerkLimit(Res erved) | LREAL | positive number or zero (0) | Maximum jerk of axis group (reserved) |
| bVelocityWarning | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when the axis group velocity exceeds the value set in IrVelocityWarningPercentage |
| bAccelerationWarni ng | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when the axis group acceleration exceeds the value set in IrAccelerationWarningPercentage |
| bDecelerationWarni ng | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when the axis group deceleration exceeds the value set in IrDecelerationWarningPercentage |
| bJerkWarning (Reserved) | BOOL | TRUE / FALSE (FALSE) | TRUE when the axis group jerk exceeds the value set in IrJerkWarningPercentage |
| StopMethod | Enum of BYTE | Immediate Stop / MaxGroupDecStop / MaxAxisDecStop (Immediate Stop) | Set the stopping method for the axis group when errors occur or when the movement is meant to stop |
| IrVelocityWarning Percentage | LREAL | 0 ~ 1 (0) | When setting the maximum ratio of the axis group speed limit, the speed warning is displayed, and setting 0 disables the speed warning. |
| IrAccelerationWarni ngPercentage | LREAL | 0 ~ 1 (0) | When setting the maximum ratio of the axis group acceleration limit, the acceleration warning is displayed, and setting 0 is to disable the acceleration warning. |
| IrDecelerationWarni | LREAL | 0 ~ 1 | When setting the maximum proportion of the axis |

| Name | Data type | Set value (default) | Function |
|---|-----------|---------------------|--|
| ngPercentage | | (0) | group deceleration limit, a deceleration warning is displayed. Set 0 to disable the deceleration warning. |
| IrJerkWarning Percentage (Reserved) | LREAL | 0 ~ 1 (0) | When setting the maximum ratio of the axis group jerk limit, the jerk warning is displayed, and setting 0 disables the jerk warning. |
| Radius Correction | LREAL | 0 ~ 100 (0,1) | The is to set the permissible error of the radius when helical interpolation is selected. Error % = the distance between [the center point] and [the vertical bisector of the starting and ending positions]/radius. |

*1: When the axis type is a rotation axis, the set movement distance cannot exceed the modulo setting value. If it exceeds the limit, an **Axis limit violated** error will be reported.

7.6 Motion Control Programming

7.6.1 Motion Control Program

Please refer to the following descriptions before starting programming in DIADesigner-AX.

7.6.1.1 DIADesigner-AX Programming Structure and Types

In the standard structure, all programs, including subroutines, are written in the same source code for a PLC. With the size of program getting larger, maintenance and debugging also becomes a considerable burden. Under the framework of IEC 61131-3, the program is divided into several units according to the functions or characteristics, which makes the development and maintenance of the program easier. Because the Program Organization Unit (POU) is modular, different POUs can be developed by different designers, which can bring significant benefits to the allocation and execution of project manpower. In DIADesigner-AX, POUs are of three types: program (PROG), function block (FB) and function (FC).

1. Program (Program, PROG)

A program POU can determine its role based on its designated task (TASK) type. If it is assigned to periodic work, the program POU will play the role of the main program; if it is assigned to interrupt type work, the program POU will play the role of the interrupt subroutine. In addition, the program POU can also call function blocks (FB).

2. Function Block (Function Block, FB)

Static (memory) variable symbols can be declared inside the function block POU. Therefore, the value of the static variable symbol can be maintained after the operation. Since the value stored in the function block is calculated together with the input value during execution, even if the input value is the same, the resulting output may be different. In addition, the function block can call other function blocks internally.

3. Function (Function, FC)

Function is used to pass back the operation results. In POU, only minimal permissions are provided for Function. Compared with FB, it cannot access memory space and can only return one single value. Function is used for calculation and then returns the results. In use, Function can only call Function but not FB because Function does not have memory space.

After creating a POU, each program POU must specify a task (TASK). Work (TASK) is used to determine the sequence of program POU execution or startup. The characteristic of the IEC61131-3 program architecture is that the program is divided into several independently developed POUs. When POUs are compiled, all POUs are rearranged and combined into an executable code that can be scanned step by step. The rearrangement order of POUs is based on the work (TASK) to which POUs are assigned. Work (TASK) is of the following types:

- Cyclic
- Event
- External
- Freewheeling
- Status

Refer to Section 4.4.1 of this manual for details.

7.6.1.2 POU in DI ADesigner-AX

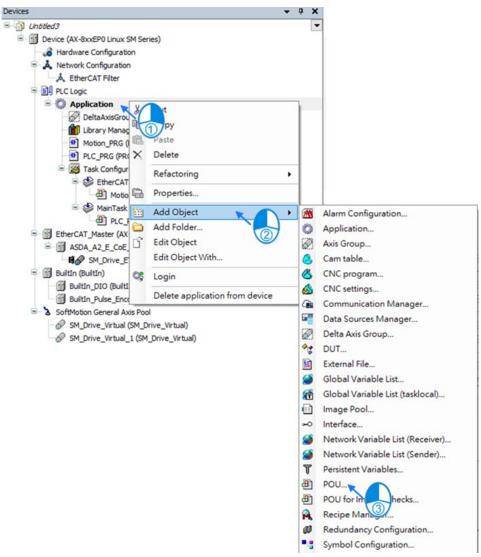
All POUs created by users will be listed in the project management area. Program POU and function block POU will be managed separately. In addition, depending on the language in which the program POU and function block POU are compiled, the POU icon displayed will be different, and POU-related information will also be displayed behind each POU name. Double-click POU in the project management area to open the editing window of the POU. The POU editing window consists of two parts: the upper part of the window is the area symbol table of the POU, and the lower part of the window is the main body of the program. In addition, depending on the programming language, the editing environment in the lower part of the window will also be different.

| R | | 4 X | | | | | | PROGRAM PLC_PRG | | B |
|----|---|-------|------|---------|-----------|----------------|---------|------------------------|---|---|
| | | Scope | Name | Address | Data type | Initialization | Comment | Attributes Variable | | |
| 11 | ¢ | | | | | | | | > | |
| | 1 | 1 | | | | | | Program |] | |

You can add the variables you need to use in the regional symbol table. In addition, in the system, when the axis / axis group is established, the corresponding variables will be automatically generated. The content of the variables can be referred to **Section 7.5**.

7.6.1.3 Adding POU in DIADesigner-AX

1. Open an existing project in DIADesigner-AX. Right-click Application, select Add Object and then POU.



2. Enter the program name in the **Name** field and select the language in the **Implementation language** field. Then click **Add**.

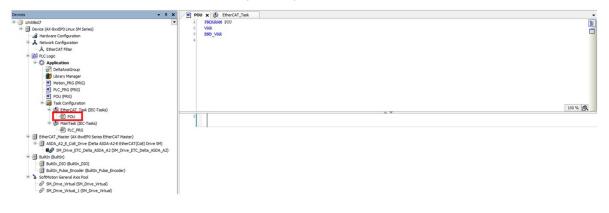
| lame | | |
|----------------|--|--------|
| Type | |] |
| Program | | |
| | :k | |
| Extends | | |
| Implements | | |
| E Final | Abstract | |
| Accessspecifie | er | |
| | | \sim |
| | nentation language nction Chart (CFC) | ~ |
| | | |
| Return type | | |
| Recuiricype | | |

3. At this point, the POU appears on the left. Double-click **EtherCAT_Task** and select **Add Call**.

| evices | - a x a POU S EtherCAT_Task x | |
|--|--|-----|
| Unsted3 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) difference (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) difference (Configuration A Network Configuration | Configuration Priority (0.31): 0 Task group IEC-Tasks | |
| A EtherCAT Filter | Type | 1 |
| DI PLC Logic O Application | Ocyclic V Interval (e.g. t#200ms) 1000 | 24 |
| DeltaAxisGroup | Wathdog | |
| Library Manager | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | Time (e.g. 1#200ms) | 715 |
| POU (PRG) | Sensitivity | |
| Task Configuration | Juniora any | |
| EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | |
| ● S MainTask (IEC-Tasks) ④ PLC_PRG | | |
| EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT M | Add Call X Remove Call & Move Up & Move Down * Open POU | |
| ASDA_A2_E_COE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E Et ASDA_A2_E_COE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E Et ASDA_A2_E_COE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E Et ASDA_A2-E Et ASDA_A2-E_COE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E_COE_DRIVE (DELTA ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E_COE_DRIVE (DELTA ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E_COE_DRIVE (DELTA ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A2-E ET ASDA-A | | |
| M Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_D | | |
| Builtin (Builtin) | | |
| Builtin_DIO (Builtin_DIO) | | |
| Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder | s) | |
| 😑 🍐 SoftMotion General Axis Pool | A | |
| SM_Drive_Virtual (SM_Drive_Virtual) | | |
| SM_Drive_Virtual_1 (SM_Drive_Virtual) | | |

- X Input Assistant Text Search Categories Programs Name Origin . Туре Application Application Hotion_PRG PROGRAM IF PLC PRG D POU Structured view Insert with arguments Insert with namespace prefix Documentation PROGRAM POU Add Library... OK Cance
- 4. Select the **POU** which has been created and click **OK**.

5. Select **POU** under **EtherCAT_Task** to start programming.



7.6.1.4 PDO Mapping

Set the communication of the PDO (Process Data Objects) mapping between the DIADesigner-AX software and the AX motion control CPU, before using motion control instructions.

PDO Mapping Settings:

| RxPDO (1600 hex) | Control Word (6040 hex), TargetPosition (607A hex) |
|------------------|--|
| TxPDO (1A00 hex) | Status Word (6041 hex), ActualPosition (6064 hex) |

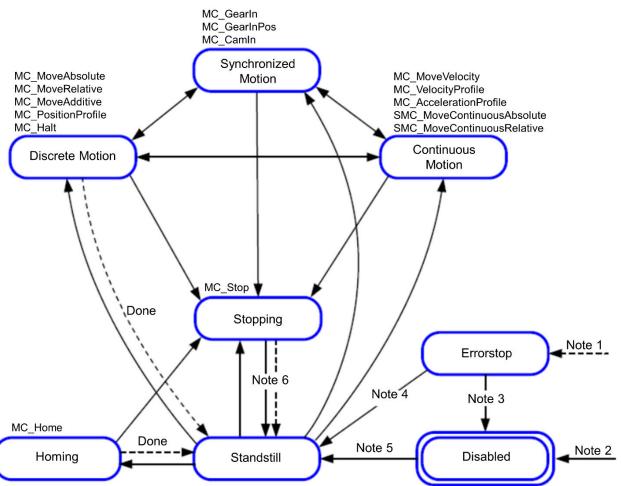
The table above pre-sets the PDO mapping parameters that will be used for ASDA-A2-E. For the PDO parameters required by the corresponding motion function blocks, refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.6.2 Axis State Transition

This section introduces transition of single axis state and multi-axis state in axis groups when different motion function blocks are used. The transition rules fulfill PLCopen motion control standard.

7.6.2.1 Axis State

• Synchronous Axis



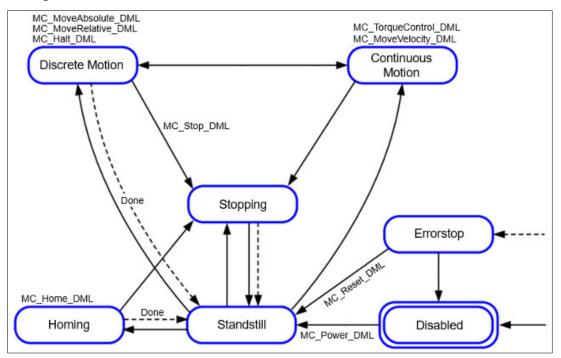
- Note 1: Whenever an error occurs, regardless of the state
- Note 2: When MC_Power Enable = FALSE and no axis error occurs
- Note 3: Execute MC_Reset and MC_Power = FALSE
- Note 4: Execute MC_Reset, MC_Power = TRUE and MC_Power Enable = TRUE
- Note 5: MC_Power Enable = TRUE and MC_Power =TRUE

Note 6: When MC_Stop Done = TRUE and MC_Stop Execute = FALSE

| State | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Disabled | The axis is in Servo Off state. |
| Standstill | The axis is in Servo On state. |
| Discrete Motion | The state is Discrete Motion while executing single-axis motion instructions. |

| Continuous Motion | The state is Continuous Motion while executing single-axis continuous motion instructions. | | |
|---------------------|---|--|--|
| Synchronized Motion | The state is Synchronized Motion while executing synchronized motion instructions, including synchronized waiting instruction. | | |
| Stopping | After the execution of MC_Stop instruction stops; Active is TRUE. In this state, no single-axis motion instructions can be executed. | | |
| Errorstop | Whenever an error occurs in single axis, it enters the state of Errorstop, in which no single-axis motion instructions can be executed. | | |
| Homing | The state is Homing while executing MC_Home or MC_HomeWithParameter instructions for single axis. | | |

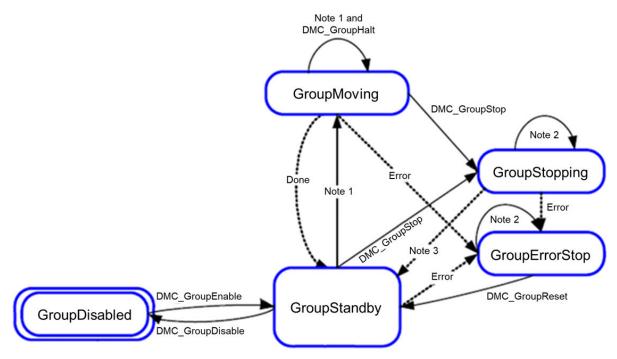
• Positioning Axis



| State | Definition |
|-------------------|---|
| Disabled | The axis is in Servo Off state |
| Standstill | The axis is in Servo On state |
| Discrete Motion | The state is Discrete Motion while executing single-axis motion instructions. |
| Continuous Motion | The state is Continuous Motion while executing single-axis continuous motion instructions. |
| Stopping | After the execution of MC_Stop_DML instruction stops, Active is TRUE. In this state, no single-axis motion instructions can be executed. |
| Errorstop | Whenever an error occurs in single axis, it enters the state of Errorstop, in which no single-axis motion instructions can be executed. |
| Homing | The state is Homing while executing MC_Home or MC_HomeWithParameter instructions for single axis. |

7

7.6.2.2 Axis Group State



Note 1: Applicable to all axis group movement function blocks, non-managed.

Note 2: When the axis group state is GroupErrorStop or GroupStopping, all axis group motion function blocks can be executed, but the axis group will not have any action, except for DMC_GroupResets and GroupErrorStop and any error occurs, the axis group state will change to GroupStandby or GroupErrorStop.

Note 3: When DMC_GroupStop is Done or MC_GroupStop is not Execute.

Note 4: GroupDisabled can only be transitioned in GroupStandby state. If DMC_GroupDisable is executed when the axis group status is not GroupStandby, an error will be reported.

| State | Definition |
|----------------|---|
| GroupDisabled | Execute the MC_GroupDisable instruction to switch the axis state to GroupDisabled. |
| GroupStandby | No axis group motion command is executed, and the state of the axis group is GroupStandby. |
| GroupMoving | The axis group positioning command is being executed, and the axis group status will be GroupMoving. |
| GroupStopping | When the Active of MC_GroupStop is True, the state of the axis group will be GroupStopping. The axis group is in this state and cannot execute any axis group motion commands. |
| GroupErrorStop | Whenever an error occurs in the axis group, it will enter GroupErrorStop. |

• Interaction between single-axis state and axis group state

- If one axis in the group is in Errorstop and the group is not in GroupDisabled, the entire group is in GroupErrorStop.
- When GroupMoving/GroupStopping/GroupHoming disconnects the power of an axis, the Group is in GroupErrorStop state.
- If all axes are in StandStill state, the group can be in GroupStandby, GroupDisabled or GroupErrorStop state.
- If the single-axis motion interrupts the group motion, the other single axes in the group will stop immediately and

enter the stop state, and the group state will enter GroupStandby.

- If the group is in the GroupStandby state, the single-axis state does not need to be in the StandStill state.
- Group movement commands (including MC_GroupStop), all single axes in the group are in the SynchronizedMotion state.
- When an error occurs during axis group movement, all axes in the axis group will stop immediately until the group enters GroupErrorStop. Each non-error uniaxial will enter the Standstill state.
- If the state of the axis group is GroupErrorStop, the state of the single axis will not be affected.

7.6.3 Execution and Status of Motion Control Instructions

AX series controllers are divided into the following two categories based on the motion function blocks:

| Туре | Description |
|------|---|
| MC_ | PLCoopen motion control function blocks |
| DMC_ | Delta-defined function blocks*1 |

The general pins in each motion control function block instruction include input, output and in/out. This section elaborates on the definition of these pins and their behaviors.

*1: Delta-defined function block instructions (DMC) include Delta-defined motion control function blocks and other administrative / non-administrative function blocks applicable to AX series motion control CPUs. For details, please refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.6.3.1 Basic Rules for Instruction Execution

• Definition of input and output pins

The general input and output pins of motion control function blocks are listed below. Usually, a function block contains at least one or a part of the following pins. For example, based on the properties of motion control function blocks, a function block basically contains either of the input pins, Execute and Enable.

| | Input | | | | |
|----------------|---|--------------|----------------------|--|--|
| Name | Description | Data Type | Set Value (default) | | |
| En | Receive logic status from instruction front end | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Enable | Enable Motion Control Function Blocks | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Execute | Execute motion control function block | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| | Output | | | | |
| Name | Description | Data Type | Set Value (default) | | |
| Eno | Transmits the logic state of the En input to the next chained command | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Done | Indicates that the execution of the function block has been completed | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Valid | Indicates that the value displayed by the output pin is a valid value | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Busy | Indicates that the motion function block has been queued for execution | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Active | Indicates that the axis is being controlled by the function block | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| CommandAborted | Indicates that the execution of the motion function block was interrupted | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |
| Error | Indicates the status of an error in a function block | BOOL | True / False (False) | | |

A motion control function block usually has either Execute or Enable input pin, which is used to execute or enable the motion control function block. In addition, a motion control function block also contains Busy and Done output pins for display of its status. When the execution of a motion control function block can be interrupted by another function block, the output pin, CommandAborted, is included in this function block. Furthermore, when an error occurs during the execution of a motion control function block, the output pin Error will turn into True.

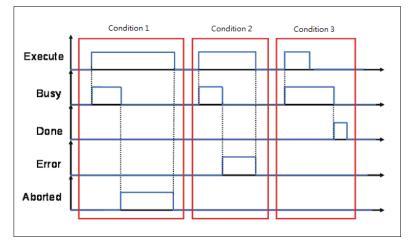
The motion control function block not only has Execute/Enable input, but may also contain input pins for input value/status, whose characteristics are described below.

- Use input value
 - For a function block with an Execute input, the value of each input pin is taken when the Execute input signal transfers from False to True. However, when Execute is retriggered, the input value will not be updated.
 - For function blocks with Enable input, the value of each input pin is taken when the Enable input signal t transfers from False to True. Compared with Execute input, function blocks of Enable input usually have more input values that need to be continuously updated (see the description of each function block for details).
- The input value is out of range
 - After the motion control function block is activated, the input of value that exceeds permitted range will be restricted by the system, or a function block error will occur during execution, resulting in errors in the motion axes. Users should avoid entering incorrect input values in the programs.
- Mutually exclusive of output pins
 - For a function block with Execute input, Busy output, Done output, CommandAborted output or Error output, only one of the states will be set True at one time. When Execute input is set to be True, one of the rest must be set True.
 - For a function block with Enable input, Valid output and Error output are mutually exclusive, which means only one of them can be set True.
- Valid time for output data/status value
 - When a function block contains Execute input and the input signal changes from True to False, the current Done output, Error output, CommandAborted output of current True and output pin data will be reset or cleared. However, when the function block is busy, even if the Execute input signal changes from True to False, the execution of the function block will not stop. The expected output states such as Done output, Error output, CommandAborted output will still generate to True and retain for one cycle.
 - For a function block with Enable input, when the Enable input signal changes from True to False, the Valid output, Busy output and Error output will be reset.
- Characteristics of Done output
 - The Done output of the motion control function block will be set to True after the motion control function block has successfully executed.
- Characteristics of Busy output
 - A function block with an Execute input uses the Busy output to indicate that the execution has not yet completed and that a new output status (value) will be generated later. When the Execute input signal transfers from False to True, the Busy output is set to True. When the Done output, CommandAborted output or Error output is set to True, the Busy output is reset.
 - A function block with an Enable input uses a Busy output to indicate that the execution is not yet completed and that a new output state (value) will be generated later. When the Enable input signal transfers from False

to True, the Busy output is set to True and if Busy outpout is True, the changes in input state (value) can still be expected.

- Characteristics of CommandAborted output
 - When the execution of a motion control function block is interrupted, the CommandAborted output is set to True.
- Relation between Enable input and Valid output
 - Function blocks with Enable input use Valid output to indicate whether the current output data/status is valid. The Valid output will be set to True only if the Enable input is set to True and the output data/status is valid. If an error occurs in the function block, the output data/status will be invalid and the Valid output will be set to False. The Valid output will be set to True only after the error in the motion control function block is eliminated and the output data/status becomes valid.

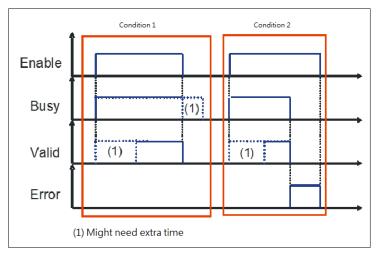
7.6.3.2 Timing Diagram for Inputs / Outputs



Condition 1: The execution of the motion control function block is interrupted.

Condition 2: An error occurs in the motion control function block.

Condition 3: The motion control function block is executed normally.



Condition 1: The motion control function block is executed normally.

Condition 2: An error occurred while controlling the function block in motion.

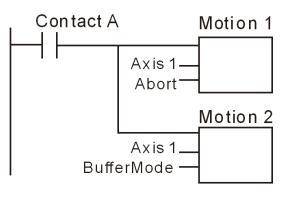
7.6.3.3 Repeated Execution of a Single Motion Control Instruction

During execution of single-axis motion function blocks (Busy state), variables of input pins can be modified to perform rising edge trigger on function block pins again. At this time, the state of the output pin of the function block remains unchanged (Busy state), but the action performed by the system is equivalent to interrupting the previous rising edge trigger instruction with Aborting in buffer mode. For similar behavior patterns, refer to **Section 7.6.3.5**.

7.6.3.4 Multi-execution of Motion Control Instructions

This section explains the situation when multiple motion control instructions for one axis or axis group are executed within the same scan period.

- In the following, when contact A is ON, motion 1 and motion 2 corresponding to axis 1 start in the same task period.
- According to the ladder diagram logic, instructions are executed in a top-down order. As a result, motion 1 will be started first and followed by motion 2 after completion.
- This situation is regarded as multi-execution of motion control instructions. As the motion combination is determined by input variable, BufferMode, it is the BufferMode setting in Motion 2 that decides the combination mode between Motion 1 and 2.



7.6.3.5 Synchronous Execution of Motion Control Instructions

Single axis with SoftMotion V4.10.0.0^{*1} (inclusive) and above, and SM3_Basic V4.10.0.0 (inclusive) and above supports Buffered Mode feature; DL_MotionControl V1.2.0.0 (inclusive) and above supports SoftMotion V4.10.0 .0.

*1: In SoftMotion V4.10.0.0, modification of parameters in Axis_REF is prohibited; if any, the error message **SMC_MOVING_WITHOUT_ACTIVE_MOVEMENT** will appear.

Buffer mode

For the same axis, you can activate another motion control instruction when the axis is in motion. There are six types of buffer mode you can choose from to proceed with multi-execution of the instructions. The BufferMode is selected based on the BufferMode parameter setting of the later motion instruction.

The meanings of the terms related to BufferMode are as follows:

- Current instruction: The motion control instruction at runtime right before the mutil-execution instruction.
- Buffered instruction: The motion control instruction waiting to be executed.
- Transit velocity: The velocity applied in transition from current instruction to buffered instruction.
- Target velocity: Velocity parameter of the instruction.
- Target position: Position or Distance parameters in instructions related to displacement.

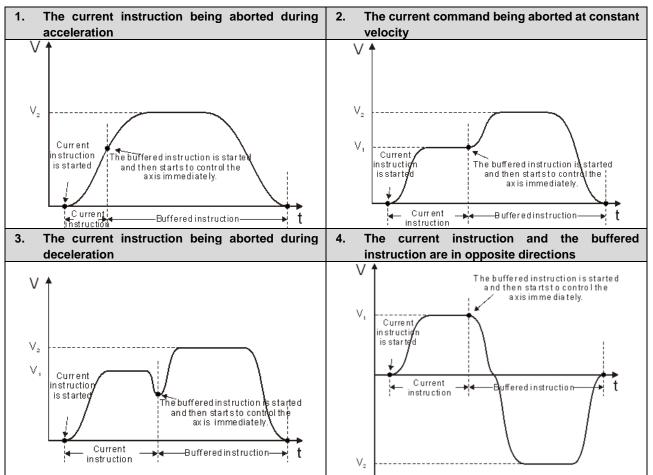
| BufferMode | Operation |
|--|--|
| 0: mcAborting (Aborting) | The current instruction is immediately aborted to execute the buffered instruction. |
| 1: mcBuffered (Buffered) | The buffered instruction is not executed until the current instruction is completed as expected. |
| 2: mcBlendingLow (Low velocity) | The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is achieved. The transit velocity is set to be the target velocity of either the current or the buffered instruction, whichever is lower. |
| 3: mcBlendingPrevious (Previous velocity) | The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is achieved. The transit velocity is the target velocity of the current instruction. |
| 4: mcBlendingNext (Next velocity) | The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is achieved. The transit velocity is the target velocity of the buffered instruction. |
| 5: mcBlendingHigh (High velocity) | The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is achieved. The transit velocity is set to be the target velocity of either the current or the buffered instruction, whichever is higher. |

• Example: a brief introduction with two relative displacement instructions

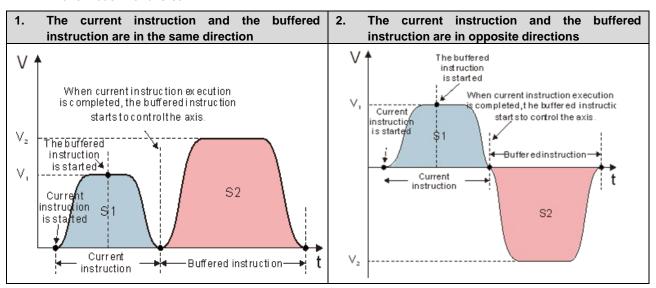
Here, the maximum velocity of the first relative displacement instruction is V1 and the displacement is S1 while the maximum velocity of the second relative displacement instruction is V2 and the displacement is S2.

By changing the BufferMode of the second displacement instruction, it results in different transiting processes as shown in the figures below:

BufferMode=mcAborting

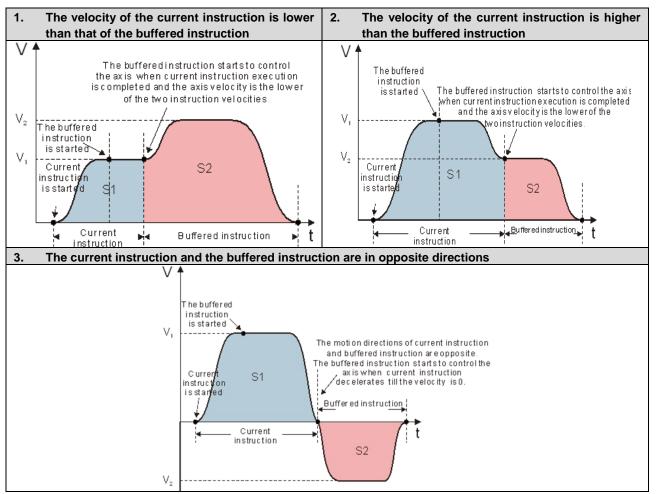


BufferMode=mcBuffered

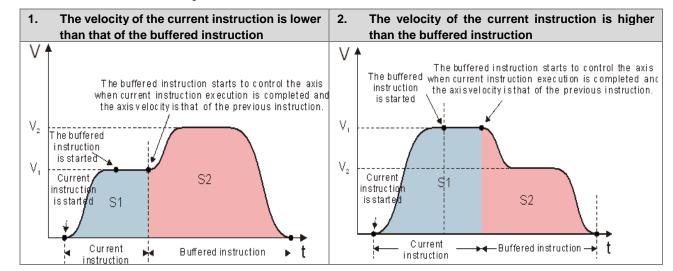


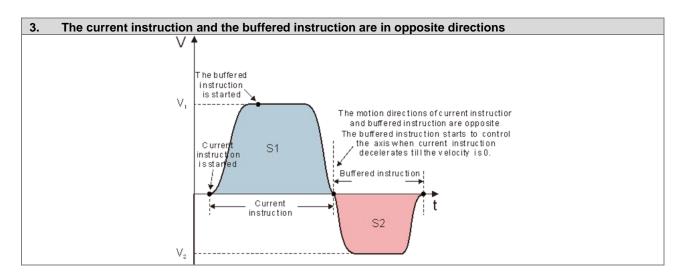
7

■ BufferMode=mcBlendingLow

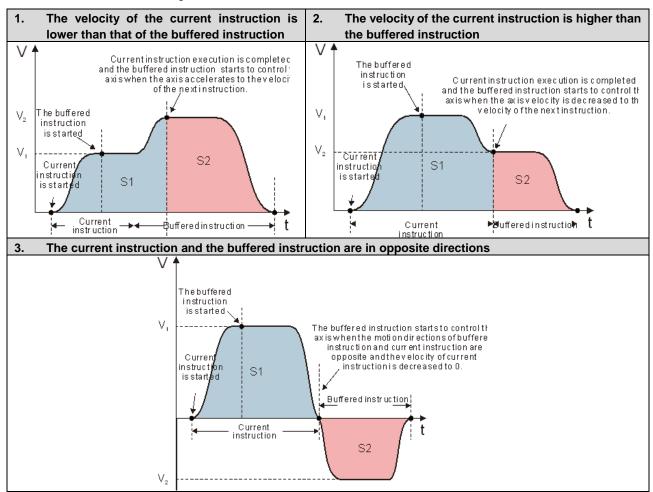


■ BufferMode=mcBlendingPrevious

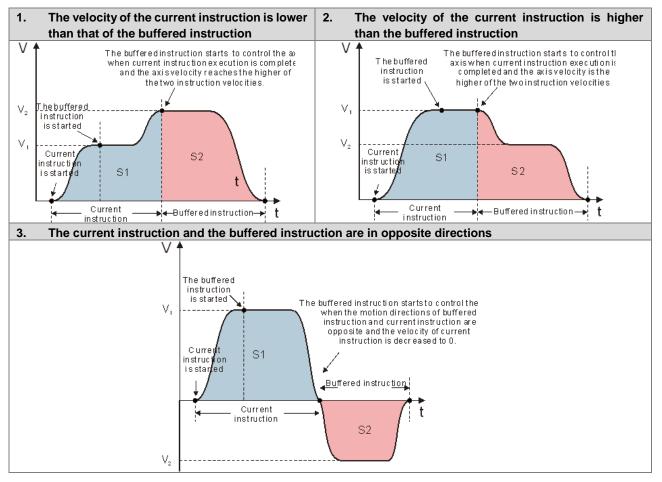




BufferMode=mcBlendingNext



BufferMode=mcBlendingHigh



■ BufferMode curve is planned mainly based on input parameters of function block by satisfying the sequence: Jerk → Acceleration / Deceleration → Position → Velocity.

For example, when Position < Velocity, Velocity = Acceleration / Deceleration, and Jerk < Acceleration / Deceleration, the curve planning is as follows:

| Position o | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Velocity ₀ | |
| _ | |
| Jerk Target | |

Due to insufficient path, the planned Acceleration, Deceleration, and Velocity will not reach Target as Jerk does.

7.6.4 Position

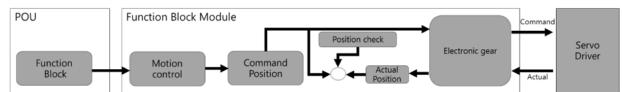
This section introduces the positioning process of motion control programming.

7.6.4.1 Types of Positions

The MC function blocks are composed of the following two types of positions:

- 1. Command position: The command position given by the motion function block.
- 2. Actual position: the feedback position from servo drives.

The figures below illustrate the relation between the command position and the actual position:



The following items are the same for the command position and the actual position.

| Туре | Definition |
|------------------|---|
| Command position | The position output by the motion controller to servo drive |
| Actual position | The position feedback from servo drive or encoder |

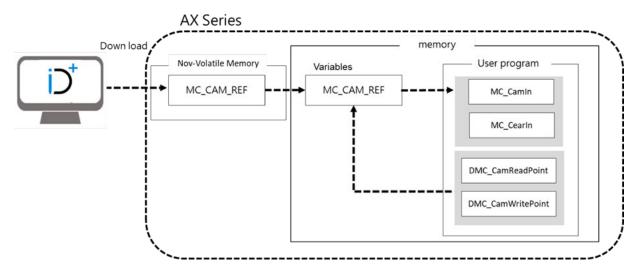
Note: For axes configured as virtual, the command position is equal to the actual position.

7.6.5 Cam Tables and Framework

This section introduces electronic cam (E-CAM) operation as well as applications, and cam table generation as well as setting through DIADesigner-AX software. For detailed instructions, refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.6.5.1 E-CAM Framework

Adopt cam Editor of DIADesigner-AX for cam curve planning and download to PLC through communication protocols so that MC function blocks can be used to control cam.



7.6.5.2 E-CAM Establishment

The data that defines the relation between the master / slave (cam shaft) is called E-CAM data.

To use cam Editor of DIADesigner-AX, it is crucial to know the relation between master and slave positions via the following two methods.

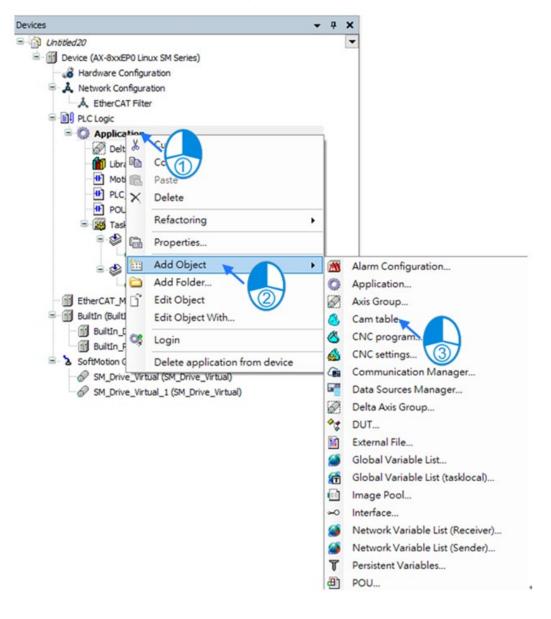
Method 1: Obtain the connection between positions of master and slave axes based on E-CAM data setting.

Method 2: Measure the correspondence between positions of master and slave axes from actual work.

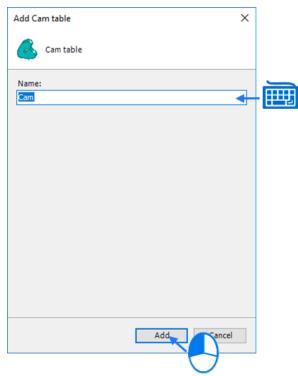
After the relationship between cam master and slave is confirmed, the slave axis position can be obtained based on the the master axis position.

Creating DIADesigner-AX cam tables

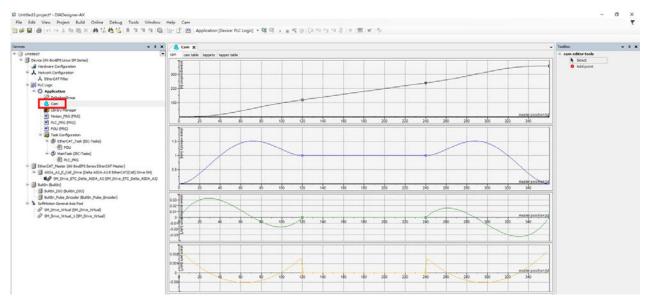
1. Right-click Application on the left, select Add Object, and then select Cam table.



2. In the Add Cam table window, Name refers to the name of the cam table, which can be modified by yourself.



3. After clicking **Add**, you can see the **Cam** icon on the left.



4. Click Cam table on the Cam page.

| Devices 👻 👎 🗙 | 👌 Cam | × | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------|--------------|--------------|-----|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-----------|--------|
| - Dutitled3 | cam cam | table tappet | s tappet tal | ble | | | | | | | |
| Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | X | Y | V | A | J | Segm | min(P | max(P | max([V | max(A |
| | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | 4 | 4 |
| Set Network Configuration | 0 | | • | | • | v | Poly5 | 0 | 120 | 1.5120 | 0.0328 |
| A EtherCAT Filter | 1 | 120 | 120 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 10175 | | 120 | 1.0120111 | 0.0520 |
| B DLC Logic | • | 120 | 120 | • | • | | Poly5 | 120 | 240 | 1 | 0 |
| = O Application | 1 | 240 | 240 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 10195 | 120 | 210 | | |
| DeltaAxisGroup | • | 210 | 210 | • | | • | Poly5 | 240 | 360 | 1 512 | 0.0328 |
| - 💪 Cam - 🎁 Library Manager | | 360 | 360 | 0 | 0 | 0 | roiys | 210 | 500 | 1.512 | 0.0520 |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) PLC_PRG (PRG) POU (PRG) EtherCAT_Task (EC-Tasks) DOU Stark Configuration Stark C | | | | | | | | | | | |

- 5. On the **Cam Table** screen, you can add or delete cam data.
 - Click o to add new cam data
 - Click to delete cam data
 - X: Spindle Point
 - Y: Slave Axis Point
 - V: Slave Axis Speed
 - A: Slave Axis Acceleration
 - J: Slave Axis Jerk (Jerk)
 - Segment Type: Curve Type

| Cam | Cam table | Tappets | Tappet table | 2 | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------|---------|--------------|---|---|---|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| | | × | Y | V | А | J | Segment Type | min(Position) | max(Position) | max(Velocity) | max(Acceleration |
| | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| | 6 | | | | | | Poly5 | 0 | 120 | 1.5120000000000007 | 0.03283528294141416 |
| W | 8 | 120 | 120 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| 0 | | | | | | | Poly5 | 120 | 240 | 1 | |
| W | P. | 240 | 240 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| | d. | | | | | | Poly5 | 240 | 360 | 1.512 | 0.03283528294141414 |
| | | 360 | 360 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |

6. Multiple tappets can be configured on the **Tappets** page, and several tappet points can be set for each tappet ID. After setting the **Tappet table**, a diagram which illustrates the relation between tappets and master axes would be shown on **Tappets** page. While dragging the points on **Tappets** page, the setting parameters on the **Tappet table** page change simultaneously.



- 7. You can configure tappets on Tappet table screen and use SMC_GetTappetValue to read the status of the tappet, which can also be modified according to the settings in Tappet table and the direction when cam master passes the tappets.
 - Click on to add a Track ID.
 - Click to delete Track ID.
 - Track ID: track ID
 - X: Tappet point position
 - Positive pass: When forward rotation encounters the tappet point action, the action settings are as follows:
 - None: no action
 - Switch to ON: TRUE
 - Switch to OFF: FALSE
 - Invert: reverse
 - Negative pass: When the reversal encounters the tappet point action, the action setting is as follows:
 - None: no action
 - Switch to ON: TRUE
 - Switch to OFF: FALSE
 - Invert: reverse

| Cam Ca | am table Tappe | ts Ta | ppet table | |
|--------|----------------|-------|---------------|---------------|
| • | Track ID | × | positive pass | negative pass |
| 1 | | 180 | switch ON | switch OFF |
| 1 | | 360 | switch OFF | none |
| • | 2 | | | |
| 1 | | 90 | switch ON | none |
| 1 | | 200 | invert | switch OFF |
| 0 | | | | |

7.7 Motion Control Functions

7.7.1 System Structure

The single axis motion instructions of MC function blocks can be used in three control modes - velocity control, position control, and torque control - to plan the motion trajectory of the axis according to the parameters set by the user.

The AX series controllers support the CoE (CANopen over EtherCAT) application protocol. According to the CiA402 standard, the motion modes supported include Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode, Cyclic Synchronous Velocity Mode, and Cyclic Synchronous Torque Mode, which will be further explained in the following sections.

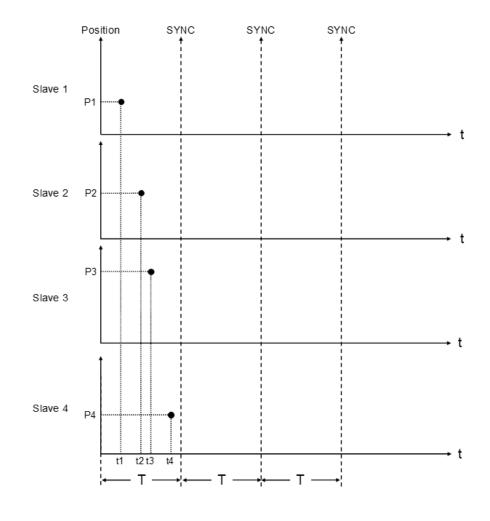
7.7.2 Single-axis Control

7.7.2.1 Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode

The data synchronization between AX series controllers and servo drives is accomplished via sync signal transmission from controllers to servo drives. These incoming data will not take effect until Distributed Clock (DC) in each servo drives are synchronized.

As shown in the figure below, four servo drives are connected and sent with control data at different timing (t1, t2, t3, t4) within one synchronous cycle (T). However, the control data become valid only when all servo drives are synchronized with the SYNC event of the DC system.

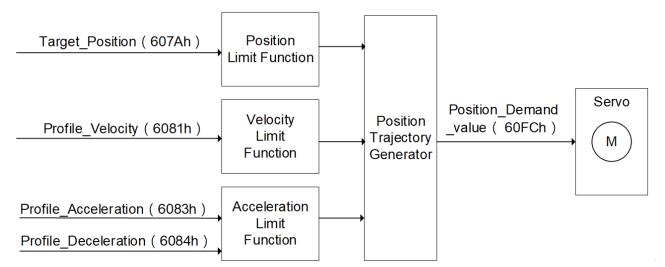
*1: Cyclic synchronous position mode is used for synchronous axes.



7.7.2.2 Profile Position Mode

After the servo drive receives the position command sent by the master device, it drives the motor to reach the target position. In profile position mode^{*1}, the master device only informs the drive of configuration about target position, velocity command, acceleration and deceleration at the beginning; the mtion plannings, from activation of command to achievement of target position, are executed by the trajectory generator inside servo drive.

*1: The profile position mode is used for positioning axes.

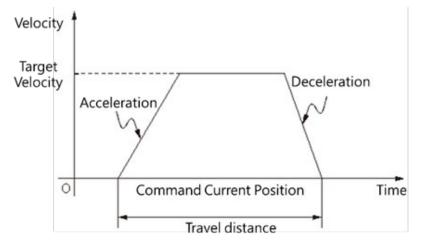


7.7.2.3 Positioning

• Absolute positioning

The curve for motion planning is based on the input value set by the user and the current position. It enables the axis to move to the absolute coordinate of the target position with the origin as the reference point. In addition, the range of the absolute position for modulo axis is limited to the range of its rotation period. For more information, refer to the MC_MoveAbsolute function block.

The motion trajectory of absolute positioning is shown in the figure below.



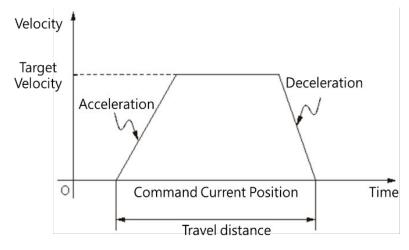
- Rotary axes setting
 - After selecting Rotary Axis for axis type, set the range of rotation for the rotary axis in Modulo value.

| General Setting | Axis Type and Limits | Motion Parameter | | | |
|--|---|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Commissioning Homing Setting | Virtual mode Finite Unear Axis Software Limits Modulo Activated Negative [u]: 0 | Velocity Ramp Type Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic | | or Reaction Quick Stop | |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: IEC Objects | Positive [u]: 1000 | O Quadratic(smoo | oth) | | |
| Status | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings Modulo value [u]: 360 | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/s ² | | |
| Information | Modulo Value [u]: 560 | 5 | 100 | 100 | 10000 |
| | | Position Lag Supervi Position Lag Reaction | | Lag Limit [u] | : 1 |
| | Transmission Mechanism Mechanism Type Ball Screw · (1) | Mechanism Settings (1) Command pulse (4) Pitch: 10000 | per motor rotation: | 1280000 | [Pulse] |
| | | Gear Box Gear Ratio = | (2) Gear ratio num | nerator 1 | × |
| | (3) | | (3) Gear ratio den | ominator 1 | × |

Relative Positioning

The curve for motion planning is based on the input value set by the user and the current position. It enables the axis to move to the relative coordinate of the target position in relation to the current actual position. For more information, refer to the MC_MoveRelative function block.

The motion trajectory of relative positioning is shown in the figure below.



7.7.2.4 Stop Method

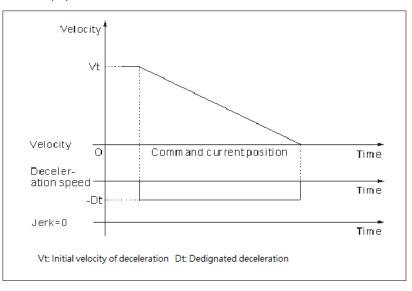
The stopping state can be achieved by giving motion control instructions, or enabling limit input which results in error stop.

Using motion control instructions to stop

To stop single-axis movement, use MC_Stop or MC_Halt.

- MC_Stop
 - MC_Stop stops the axis in motion according to the specified method and changes the axis state to Stopping.
 - This instruction aborts any instructions in progress. When the axis state is **Stopping**, no instructions can be executed.
 - The state **Stopping** continues until velocity reaches 0 or Execute becomes False. When velocity reaches 0, Done turns into True.
 - When Done becomes True and Execute becomes False, the axis will enter Standstill state.

The motion trajectory of MC_Stop is shown in the figure below. The velocity is determined according to the specified deceleration (Dt).



MC_Halt

- MC_Halt temporarily stops the axis in motion and switches the axis state to **DiscreteMotion** until the axis velocity reaches 0. After the axis stops, the state turns into **Standstill**.
- During deceleration, other motion instructions can be executed to abort MC_Halt operation.

Limit input stop

Software limit

Sotware limit can be activated / deactivated and configure its parameter settings on axis parameter setting page.

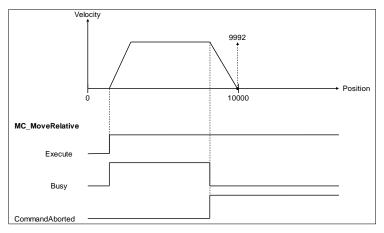
When the axis is approaching software limit, it will start decelerating based on the axis parameters and stop within the software limit.

Example:

- Set the positive limit to 10,000 and the negative limit to 0 with software limit **Activated**. Then set Deceleration to 1,000 (the item appears after Quick Stop is unchecked).

| General Setting | Axis Type a | nd Limits | Motion Parameter | | | |
|---|-------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| Commissioning | Virtual n | unear Axis Software Limits | Velocity Ramp Type | | Reaction | |
| Homing Setting SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: | Finite Modulo | Activated Negative [u]: 0 | Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smoothing) | Decel | uick Stop eration [u/s²]: | |
| IEC Objects | | Positive [u]: 1000 | Dynamic Limits | | | |
| Status | | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings | Velocity [u/s]: | Acceleration [u/s ²]: | Deceleration [u/s2]: | Jerk [u/s³]: |
| Information | | Modulo value [u]: 360 | 5 | 100 | 100 | 10000 |
| | Transmissio | n Mechanism | Position Lag Reaction | n Deactivated * | Lag Limit (u): 1 | |
| | 1000 | | Mechanism Settings | | | |
| | Mechanish | n Type Ball Screw Y | (1) Command pulse | per motor rotation: 12 | 80000 [Puls | e] |
| | | | (4) Pitch: 10000 | [Unit] | | |
| | | | Gear Box | | | |
| | • | | | (2) Gear ratio numer | ator 1 | - |
| | | | Gear Ratio = | | | |

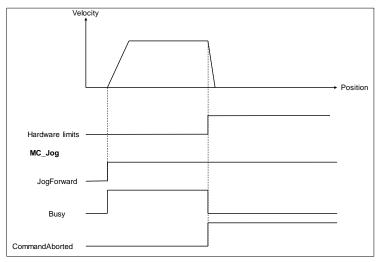
- Use function block MC_MoveRelative and activate it after the position reaches 11,000. When the axis moves to around 8,000, Busy of the function block will shift from TRUE to FALSE while CommandAborted will shift from FALSE to TRUE. The axis then starts decelerating till stop within the software limit.



Hardware limit

As hardware signals are carried in the EtherCAT servo wires, the stop methods for hardware limit differ from manufacturers to manufacturers. In the following, Delta ASDA-A2-E is taken as an example for further explanation.

- Use MC_Jog to perform forward rotation. Once the ahardware limit is reached during axis rotation, ASDA-A2-E servo drive will be stopped and error messages will be reported through communication.

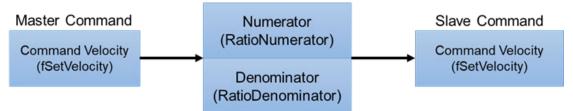


7

After reaching software / hardware limit, you can use MC_Reset to clear errors. The system will automatically synchronize the command position based on the values of the feedback position and keep the axis moving in the direction away from the limit so as to resume normal operation.

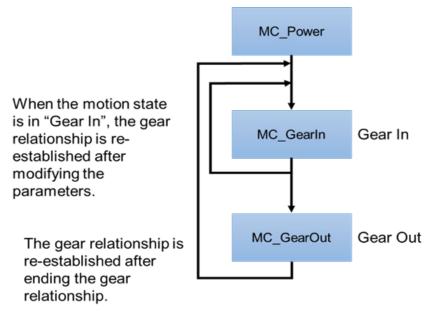
7.7.2.5 MC_GearIn

Use MC_GearIn instruction to control gear movements and MC_GearOut instruction to cancel synchronization between master and slave axes. Please refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual** for details about function blocks.



You can specify the master and slave axes, gear ratio numerator and denominator, acceleration and deceleration as well as jerk in MC_GearIn.

• Execution order of instructions for electronic gears



When executing MC_GearIn, the slave axis enters the state of synchronized motion; however, for MC_GearOut execution, the slave axis gets out of the synchronized state, the slave axis will continue to move at the speed at the moment of separation, and the slave axis state machine enters Continuous Motion.

During synchronized motion, if executing MC_Stop on the slave axis, MC_GearIn will be aborted. The master axis maintains in Continuous Motion state while the slave axis enters Stopping state and will not return to Standstill until the MC_Stop is Done.

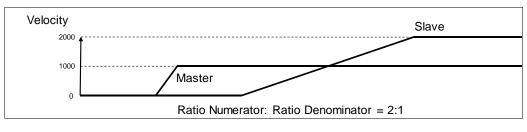
When the slave axis is in the state of Synchronized motion, its velocity alters according to the velocity of the master axis through adjustment of gear ratio.

When the master axis and the slave axis are in synchronization state, use MC_SetPosition to avoid accidents caused due to rapid rotational speed of motors.

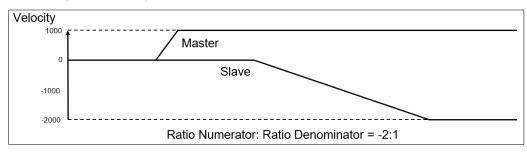
7-76

• Set the gear ratio between master and slave axes through RatioNumerator and RatioDenominator in MC_GearIn.

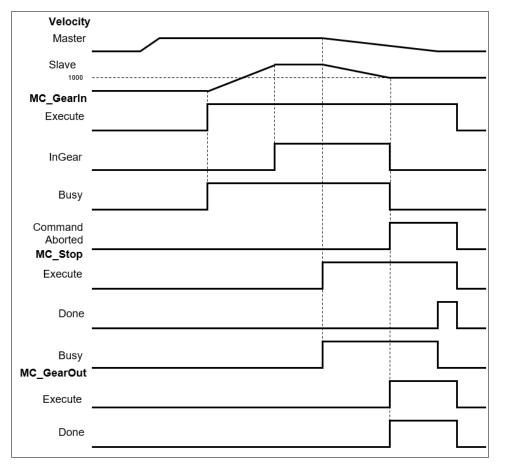
When the gear ratio is positive, the master and slave axes move in the same direction.



Conversely, when the gear ratio is negative, the master and slave axes move in opposite directions.



• Synchronization of master and slave axes is achieved when the slave axis velocity reaches the value set in the instruction.



When MC_GearIn is enabled, the slave axis starts to engage with the master axis and its velocity is twice the master's velocity (RatioNumerator: RatioDenominator = 2:1).

When InGear is True, the master and slave axes are synchronized and the slave axis state enters Synchronized Motion.

When MC_Stop is enabled, the master axis start decelerating and the slave axis also decelerates synchronously according to the gear ratio.

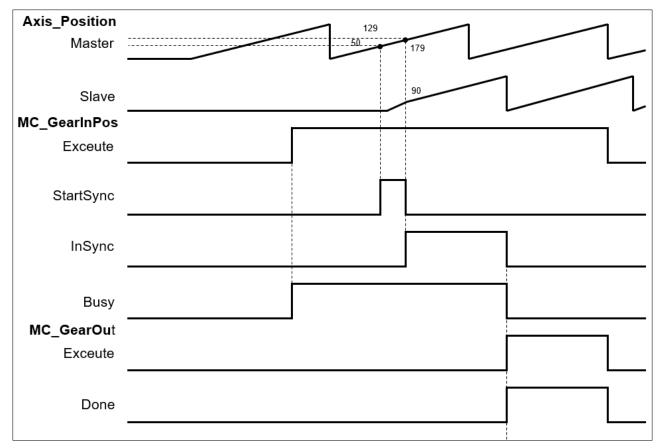
When MC_Stop is in operation and MC_GearOut is enabled, the master and slave axes are out of synchronization. The slave axis keeps moving at the velocity when synchronization is aborted and then enters the state of Continuous Motion.

7.7.2.6 MC_GearInPos

MC_GearInPos is adopted to assign the starting position for synchronization of master and slave axes.

• MC_GearInPos sequence

In MC_GearInPos, it is allowed to assign master axis and slave axis, gear ratio numerator and gear ratio denominator, synchronous starting position, master axis distance when starting synchronization and whether to enable reversal. The function block will automatically complete planning motion curve of the slave axis according to the settings, so as to engage the master and slave axes at the specified position.



The position where the master axis starts to synchronize is MasterSyncPosition (180) - MasterStartDistance (50). When the master axis reaches this position, StartSync \Rightarrow True starts to synchronize.

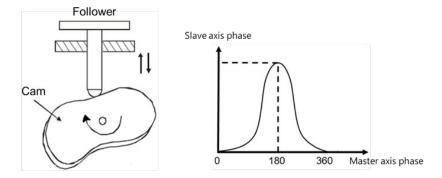
The slave axis generates a motion curve on its own based on other parameters. When the master axis reaches MasterSyncPosition (180), the slave axis also reaches SlaveSyncPosition (90). At this time, StartSync is False and InSync is True.

When MasterStartDistance ≤ 0 , the function block is completed upon execution. In the meantime, the position of the slave axis jumps directly to the specified synchronous position.

If the slave reversal is not allowed, the user must set AvoidReversal to True.

7.7.2.7 MC_CamIn

The slave axis synchronizes with the master axis based on cam table. You can use MC_CamTableSelect to pre-assign the cam table to follow and designate master and slave axes. In addition, the instruction MC_CamIn can be utilized for cam engagement whereas MC_CamOut is used to remove gear engagement.



After engagement, synchronization between master and slave axes is achieved and the state of slave axis is Synchronized Motion. The following describes the information regarding E-CAM establishment:

Initial settings

Create E-CAM data

The E-CAM curve data can be drawn by the following two methods:

Method 1: The relation of master and slave positions is determined according to standard functions.

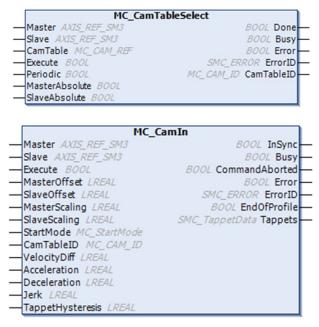
Method 2: The corresponding relation between the master and slave axes is measured in actual work.

• Setting and operation of E-CAM master and slave axes

By using MC_CamIn and MC_CamTableSelect, you can set up E-CAM master and slave axes and basic operation.

Master and slave axes source setting

In function blocks, MC_CamTableSelect and MC_CamIn, the master source is determined by the input pin Master while the slave source is determined by the pin Slave^{*1}.

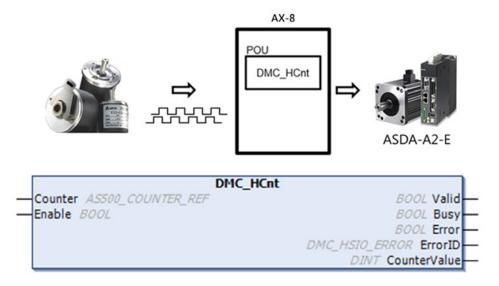


*1: For information on pin function, refer to the AX Series Motion Controller Manual.

An external counter as the master axis

The sources of E-CAM master axis are actual and virtual axes as well as counters. Using an external counter as the master source, it is required to activate external pulse counting function via DFB_HCnt function block.

System structure and DMC_HCnt:



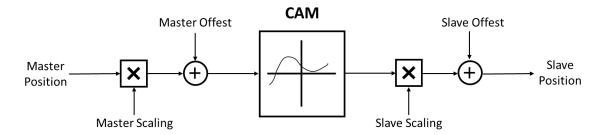
The relation between master and slave positions

The cam relation pre-planned via the software refers to the relative positions of master and slave axes instead of their actual positions. If the pre-planned cam relation is regarded as cam function, its input is the cam master phase, and the output is the cam slave phase.

x: cam master phase; y: cam slave phase; y = CAM(x)

The cam phase is derived from the axis positions in which conversion may take place. The conversion in between is related to the parameters MasterAbsolute, SlaveAbsolute, MasterOffset, SlaveOffset, MasterScaling, and SlaveScaling.

Under the instruction MC_CamIn, the slave axis follows the master axis to perform synchronized motion. The relation between the master and slave positions is built on the pre-planned cam relation (cam curve or cam table). The process to derive position of the slave axis from the master position is depicted below:



Calculation:

Position_Slave = SlaveScalingxCAM (MasterScalingxMasterPosition + MasterOffset) + SlaveOffset

When master is in absolute mode, the current master position is the arithmetic result of rotary axis; on the contrary, when the master is in relative mode, its position is the starting point relative to cam (usually = 0).

Relation between StartMode and MasterAbsolute / SlaveAbsolute of CamTableSelect

Absolute mode (StartMode = 0): At the start of E-CAM synchronization, the cam calculation is independent from the current slave position. If the current slave position differs from the calculated starting position, it will result in Jump.

Relative mode (StartMode = 1): Cam changes in accordance with the current slave axis position. The slave position is derived by adding the current slave position. Also, Jump occurs when position at which the slave axis engages is different from the result of calculated starting position plus the current position.

Ramp mode (StartMode = 2, 3, 4): Add a curve for motion compensation based on VelocityDiff, Acceleration, Deceleration and Jerk to prevent Jemp during cam engagement.

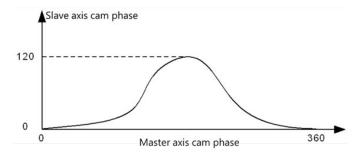
| MC_CamTableSelect.MasterAbsolute | Master mode |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| absolute | Absolute mode |
| relative | Relative mode |

| MC_CamIn.StartMode | MC_CamTableSelect.SlaveAbsolute | Slave mode |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| absolute | True | Absolute mode |
| absolute | False | Relative mode |
| relative | True | Relative mode |
| relative | False | Relative mode |
| ramp_in | True | Ramp in Absolute mode |
| ramp_in | False | Ramp in Relative mode |
| ramp_in_pos | True | Forward Ramp in Absolute Mode |
| ramp_in_pos | False | Forward Ramp in Relative mode |
| ramp_in_neg | True | Reverse Ramp in Absolute mode |
| ramp_in_neg | False | Reverse Ramp in Relative mode |

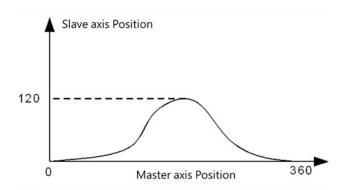
Offset and scaling (MasterOffset/MasterScaling/SlaveOffset/Slavescaling)

Although the cam relation between master and slave axis is pre-planned, during cam execution, you can still perform position offset or position scaling based on the relation via the parameters Offset or Scaling. For instance, only one kind of cam relation is required despite the fact that there are different sizes for the same product after being processed because you are able to change the parameters Offset and Scaling for adaption. The user can specify the offset and scaling factors for master and slave axes respectively.

The values of offset and scaling of the master and slave axes jointly determine the actual cam relation. The effect is described in the following example. Below is the preset cam relation:

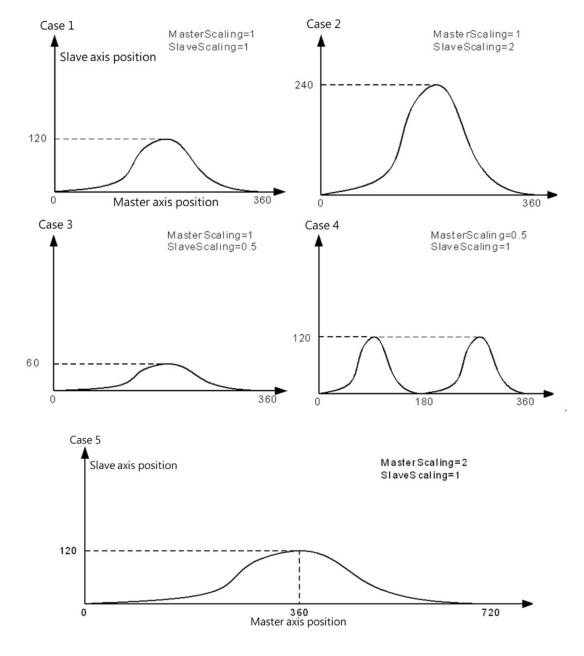


When master and slave axes are in absolute mode and engaging with each other, the axis positions are both 0. Without offset and scaling (default), the cooresponding relation of actual master and slave positions during cam execution is shown in the figure below.



When the offset or scaling is not in default value, its influence on the corresponding relation between the actual position of master and slave axes during cam execution is drawn below:

- The influence of scaling ratio on relation between master and slave positions during cam execution when offset for both axes is 0:



Case 1: When the scaling ratio for master and slave is 1 and the offset is 0, the actual relation is consistent with the pre-planned one.

Case 2: When the scaling ratio for master is 1 and for slave is 2 with the offset as 0, the slave position in relation to the master position becomes twice the amount of the pre-planned one.

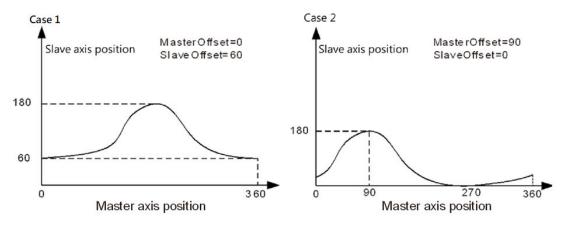
Case 3: When the master scaling ratio is 1, the slave scaling ratio is 0.5 and the offset is 0, the slave position in relation to the master position becomes half of the pre-planned value.

Case 4: When the master scaling ratio is 2, the slave scaling ratio is 1 and the offset is 0, the master position corresponding to the slave's becomes twice as planned. From the perspective of cam phase, the master cam phase is twice the amount of the pre-planned one, meaning that the master cam cycle changes from 360 to 180 while the slave cam phase remains unchanged.

Case 5: When the scaling ratio for master is 0.5 and for slave is 1 with the offset as 0, the master position corresponding to the slave position becomes half of the pre-planned one. From the perspective of cam phase, the master cam is half of the pre-planned one, meaning that the master cam cycle changes from 360 to 720 while the slave cam phase remains unchanged.

- The influence of offset on relation between master and slave positions during cam execution when scaling ratio for both axes is 1:

Master offset affects the horizontal movement of cam curves whereas slave offset affects the vertical movement of cam curves.

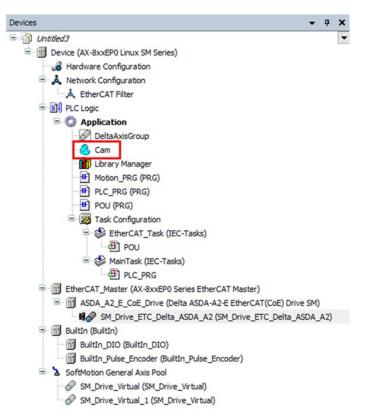


Case 1: When the scaling ratio is 1, the master offset is 0, and the slave offset is 60, the pre-planned value of the slave position corresponding to the master position is added 60. For instance, in the plan the master position is 180 and the slave position that cooresponds is 180. But in the actual situation, the corresponding slave position is 240 (240=180+60).

Case 2: When the scaling ratio is 1, the master offset is 90, and the slave offset is 0, the master position corresponding to the slave position offsets by 90 (adding offset value) based on the pre-planned value. For instance, in the plan the master position is 180 and the slave position that cooresponds is 180; in the actual situation, the master position 90 cooresponds to the slave position 180, which is the cooresponding slave position of the pre-planned master position 180 (180=90+90).

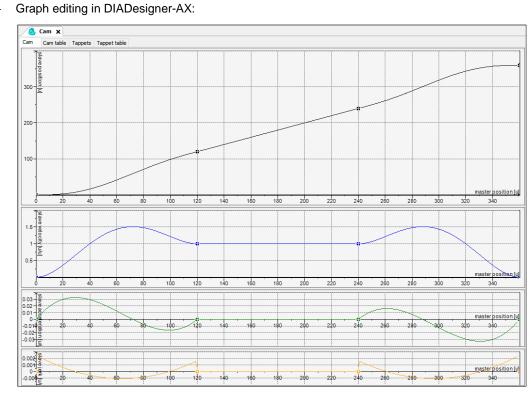
Cam Table

By selecting **Cam** in DIADesigner-AX project tree, you can edit cam curve which determines the operation of slave cam.



- Features of cam curve table
 - The cam curve provides information on the movement of the corresponding slave axis at any time point including moving range, velocity, acceleration and jerk. The curve type between each key point can be set, for example, as straight line or quintic curve.
 - By default, the master coordinate starts from 0 and end at 360, and can be modified according to the actual path.

Cam curve editing



Cam table is edited graphically. The abscissa indicates the master position and its length decides the range of cam operation. There are four curves above, which respectively represent position, velocity, acceleration and jerk (jump). In terms of cam design, curves that indicate position and velocity are used for motion range adjustment while curve representing acceleration are modified to achieve smoother movement.

Cam table editing in DIADesigner-AX:

In addition to editing on graphics, the software allows revisions directly to cam table, including any increase or decrease on key points and positions.

| <u> </u> | 🔏 Cam 🗙 | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------------------------|----|---|-----|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| Cam | Cam table Tappets Tappet table | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | |) | ĸ | Y | V | А | J | Segm | min(P | max(P | max(V | max(A |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | Poly5 | 0 | 120 | 1.5120 | 0.0328 |
| W | 1 | 12 | 0 | 120 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | Poly5 | 120 | 240 | 1 | 0 |
| W | 1 | 24 | 0 | 240 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | Poly5 | 240 | 360 | 1.512 | 0.0328 |
| | | 36 | 0 | 360 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |

Programming editing:

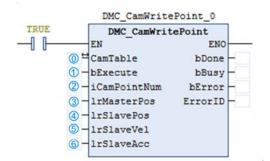
Users can also adopt function blocks to modify key points on cam table. But modifications through programming will not appear on software display accordingly.

Modification through the function block DMC_CamWritePoint is as explained below:

- O Specified cam table
- ① Execute function blocks

7-85

- ② Select the cam point number to be read
- 3 Position of cam master axis
- ④ Position of cam slave axis
- S Velocity of cam slave axis
- 6 Acceleration of cam slave axis



For details of function blocks, refer to the AX Series Motion Controller Manual.

Cam table properties

You can adjust the properties of cam table such as the starting and ending positions of master and slave axes, periodic parameters setup, required curve continuity and editing format on the **Properties** window.

| Devices | ▼ ₽ | |
|---|---|---|
| EtherCAT_POU Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Serie | | cam cam table tappets tappet table |
| Hardware Configuration | s) | Properties - Cam [Device: PLC Logic: Application] |
| A. Network Configuration A. EtherCAT Filter Difference Difference Cam Difference | Cut Copy Paste | Common Cam Build Access Control Dimensions Master start position: 0 360 Slave start position: 0 Slave end position: 360 Period Veriod Slave period: 360 |
| POU (PRG) Task Configurat C | Browse | Continuity requirements Position Velocity Acceleration Jerk |
| □ ∰ POU □ ∰ MainTask (II | Refactoring | Compile format |
| PLC_PR | Properties | polynomial (XYVA) |
| Builtin (Builtin) Builtin DIO (Builtin) Builtin Pulse_Encod SoftMotion General Axis | Add Object Add Folder Edit Object Edit Object With | one dimensional point array elements: 256 two dimensional point array |
| | | OK Cancel Apply |

- E-Cam setup
 - 1. Cam table configuration: set up the ranges for master and slave axes, create starting point, ending point and other key points, and adjust curve type.
 - Using MC_CamTableSelect to connect the configured cam table to the actual one and obtain cam ID for further use in the following steps.
 - 3. After obtaining cam ID, use MC_CamIn to engage the specified master axis with the slave axis.
 - 4. Use MC_CamOut to terminate the master-slave relation. In addition, for synchronous movement, adopting MC_Stop and MC_Halt on the slave axis can stop synchronization between the axes.

Cam table switching

The reference cam table can be changed at runtime by using MC_CAM_REF to replace the reference cam table of MC_CamTableSelect.

- Variable Declaration

P: MC_CAM_REF; //CamTable reference CamTableID: INT; //CamTable Switch

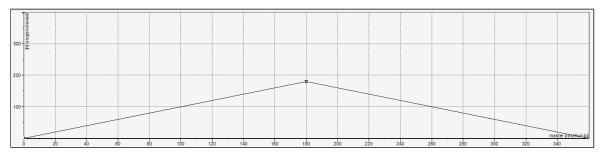
- Switch cam table

| CASE CamTableID OF | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 0: P:=Cam; | | | | |
| <pre>1: P:=Cam_1;</pre> | | | | |
| END_CASE | | | | |

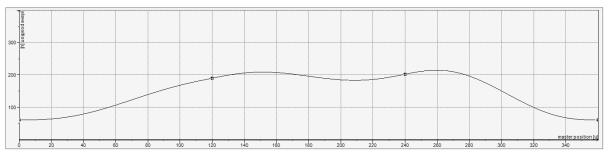
The example switches CamTableID to change MC_CAM_REF so as to switch between cam tables.

The two cam tables are as follows:

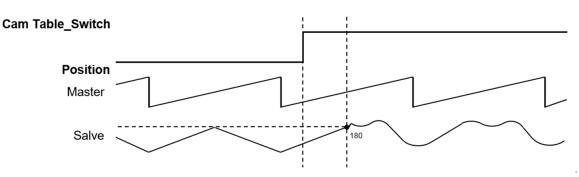
The first cam table (Cam)



The second cam table (Cam_1)



Timing diagram for cam table switching



Switching the cam tables, the slave axis still follows the trajectory planned in the first table and turns to follow the trajectory of the second table until the master position reaches the next key point of the first table.

7.7.3 Velocity Control

Velocity control is classified into three servo control modes: Cyclic Synchronous Position (CSP), Cyclic Synchronous Velocity (CSV) and Profiel Velocity Mode.

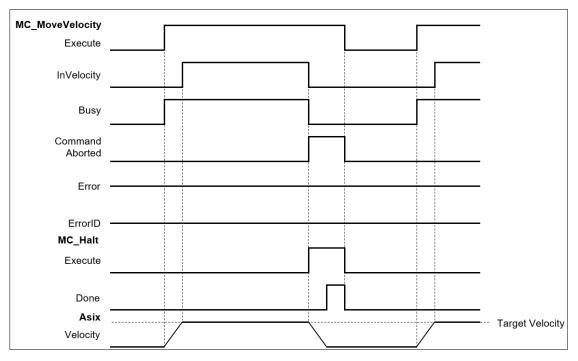
7.7.3.1 CSP Mode

As introduced in **Section 7.7.2.1**, the CSP mode stands for cyclic synchronous position mode. In this mode, the controller calculates the command position that it should reach in each cycle according to the assigned velocity (as well as acceleration, deceleration, and jerk), and then send the command position in every cycle to the servo for positioning.

If the current servo position falls behind the command position due to external interference, vibration occurs in order to compensate for the errors.

The application of function block MC_MoveVelocity means executing velocity control in CSP mode, in which the axis will enter the continuous_motion state. You can specify its acceleration, deceleration, and jerk before reaching the specified velocity or when buffering. MC_Stop, MC_Halt, or other instructions are used to stop the control mode when needed.

In the following diagram, MC_MoveVelocity is used for velocity control and MC_Halt is applied to stop it:

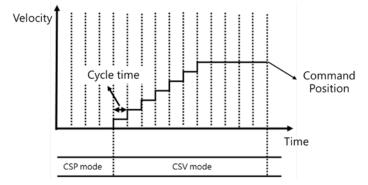


The velocity can be specified as 0. Although being stationary, the system is still in the state of continuous_motion.

In the AX series, MC_MoveVelocity can be used for single-axis velocity control in CSP mode. For details, please refer to the **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.7.3.2 CSV Mode

CSV mode stands for cyclic synchronous velocity mode. The velocity control is achieved by the controller calculating the velocity for each cycle according to the assigned velocity (as well as acceleration, deceleration, and jerk), and then send the command in each cycle to the servo for execution.

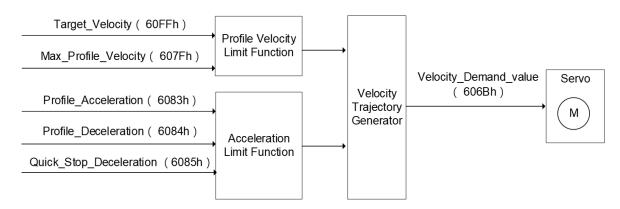


In this mode, there is no changes in velocity for compensation resulting from external interference like that in CSP mode since it is the command velocity given to the servo in each cycle.

In AX series, MC_VelocityControl can be used for single-axis velocity control in CSV mode. For details of function blocks, refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual.**

7.7.3.3 Profile Velocity Mode

In profile velocity mode^{*1}, the motion trajectory is planned by the velocity trajectory generator based on the conditions such as velocity command, acceleration and deceleration specified by the host device.



*1: This mode is used for positioning axes.

7.7.4 Torque Control

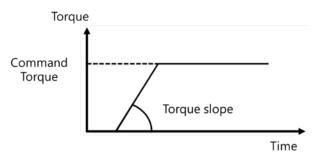
Torque control is classified into two servo control modes: Cyclic Synchronous Torque (CST) and Profile Torque (PT).

• Profile Torque^{*1} (PT)

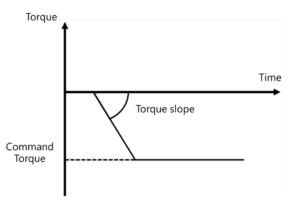
Use DMC_TorqueControl to assign a single axis to continuously generate the specified torque output.

Precautions:

- When using DMC_TorqueControl, the control mode is switched to cyclic synchronous torque mode.
- When using DMC_TorqueControl, the control mode is switched to torque mode and function blocks regarding displacement or velocity are unavailable. Instead of using MC_Stop to stop the motor, set DMC_TorqueControl.Enable to False and you can stop it immediately.
- Torque cannot be set to 0. If so, DMC_TorqueControl will be reported as error.
- The velocity of DMC_TorqueControl can be utilized to set the maximum velocity for servo motors with the intention to avoid high-speed rotation as motor load declines in PT mode.
- Adopt TorqueRamp to set the torque change rate for achieving the target torque value.
- When Torque > 0, the motor runs in the forward direction.



■ When Torque < 0, the motor runs in the reverse direction.



*1:

ASDA-A3-E Series V1.1165 or later supports Profile Torque Mode.

ASDA-B3-E Series V1.0665 or later supports Profile Torque Mode.

7.7.5 Common Functions of Single-axis Control

The common functions of single-axis control are shown below.

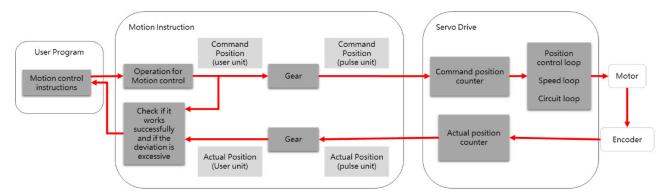
7.7.5.1 Position Command

Positions in MC function modules can be subdivided into the following two types.

| Туре | Definition | | |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| Command position | The function block output used to control the position of the axis | | |
| Actual position | Feedback position from the servo drive*1 | | |

*1: If it is a virtual axis, since there is no position feedback from the servo drive, the command position directly substitutes for the actual position

The connection is drawn in the figure below:



Comparisons between the two types:

| Item | Command Position | Actual Position |
|----------------|---|--|
| Counting mode | Linear axis / rotary axis | The same setting as in command position. |
| Command unit | Length unit (m, mm, inch) / angle unit (degree) / | The same setting as in command position. |
| Software limit | Set the limit of the position range for motion instructions | The same setting as in command position. |
| Positioning | Subject to be positioned to anywhere within a limited range | The same setting as in command position but possibly with position lag ^{*1} |

*1: Affected by the mechanism and servo settings, there may be subtle differences between command position and actual position, the so-called position lag. Position lag may increase slightly as the motion velocity increases. To control this gap, you can monitor position lag by adjusting axis settings and take actions in response to increasing position lag. There is no position lag when the actual position of a virtual axis equals its command position.

The relevant parameters are as follows:

Position unit

The position unit refers to the command unit.

• Setting of position lag

| Setting | Value | Definition |
|--------------------------|---------------|--|
| | deactivated | Position lag is not checked. |
| | disable drive | The axis is in Servo Off when position lag exceeds the set limit. |
| Position lag supervision | do quick stop | The axis is in quick stop when position lag exceeds the set limit. |
| | stay enabled | The axis remains Servo On when position lag exceeds the set limit. |
| Lag limit [u] | LREAL | The limit of permissible error |

Except for the value deactivated, the error SMC_ERROR.SMC_DI_POSITIONLAGERROR will be reported when the limit of error is exceeded.

• Software limits

| Setting | Value | Definition | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Software limits Activated | Checked / Unchecked | Whether to activate soft limits | |
| Negative [u] | LREAL | Soft limits in negative direction | |
| Positive [u] | LREAL | Soft limits in positive direction | |

• Description of position in MC Function Modules

There are two different descriptions for the input variables regarding position in MC function modules.

| Item | Definition | |
|----------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Position | Target position (absolute position) | |
| Distance | Moving distance (relative position) | |

• Position monitoring

Observation of position changes can be done by monitoring the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type).

| Variable Name | Position Type | Data Type | |
|---------------|------------------|-----------|--|
| .FSetposition | Command position | LREAL | |
| .fActPosition | Actual position | LREAL | |

7.7.5.2 Velocity Command

| Туре | Definition | | |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| Command velocity | The outputs of MC function modules is used to control the axis velocity | | |
| Actual velocity | Velocity derived from the actual position provided by the servo drive at each time point $^{\!\!^{\star_1}}$ | | |

There are two types of velocity in MC function modules.

*1: For virtual axis, since there is no servo drive, the command position will replace the actual position.

The relevant parameters are explained as follows:

• Velocity unit

The velocity unit: command unit/s.

• Velocity ramp type

| Setting | Value | Definition | |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|--|
| | Trapezoid | The velocity curve is trapezoidal (the acceleration of each line segment is constant) | |
| | Sin ² | Velocity curve as sin2 function (fixed acceleration curve) | |
| Velocity ramp type | Quadratic | The acceleration curve is trapezoidal (acceleration is limited by jerk) speed curve | |
| | Quadratic (smooth) | Same as Quadratic but the jerk (jump) curve is a continuous speed curve | |

• Description of velocity in MC function modules

The input variables related to speed in the motion function block are as follows:

| Item | Definition |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| Velocity | Target velocity ^{*1} |

*1: The target velocity might not be achieved due to inadequate trajectory length, poor acceleration and jerk, etc.

• Velocity monitoring

To observe the speed change, you can monitor the two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type):

| Variable Name | Туре | Data Type |
|---------------|------------------|-----------|
| .fSetVelocity | Command velocity | LREAL |
| .fActVelocity | Actual velocity | LREAL |

7.7.5.3 Acceleration and Deceleration Command

Acceleration in MC function modules can be subdivided into the following two types.

| Position Type | Definition | |
|----------------------|---|--|
| Command acceleration | Acceleration for axis control from the outputs of MC function modules | |
| Actual acceleration | Acceleration derived rom actual the velocity | |

The relevant parameters are explained as follows:

• Acceleration unit

The acceleration unit: command units/s².

• Acceleration ramp type

Refer to Section 7.7.5.2 of this manual.

• Description of acceleration in MC function modules

The input variables related to acceleration / deceleration in the MC function modules are as follows:

| Item | Definition | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Acceleration | Target acceleration ^{*1} | |
| Deceleration | Target deceleration ^{*1} | |

*1:

The target acceleration and deceleration might not be achieved due to inadequate trajectory length and jerk, etc.

The application standard of acceleration and deceleration is that when the absolute value of the current velocity needs to be reduced, Deceleration will be applied; on the contrary, when the absolute value of the current velocity needs to be increased, Acceleration will be applied.

For example, the following diagram depicts the velocity and acceleration curves under the situation when the current velocity is 500 and the motion command is in reverse direction (Velocity = 1000, Acceleration = 1200, Deceleration = 600):

| Axis.fSetVelocity | Velocity=0 Current Velocity = 500 |
|-----------------------|---|
| | Targer Velocity = -1000 |
| Axis.fSetAcceleration | fSetAcceleration = Decceleration = 600 fSetAcceleration = Acceleration = -1200 |

• Acceleration monitoring

If observation of changes in acceleration is needed, you can monitor the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type):

| Variable | Туре | Data Type |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| .fSetAcceleration | Command acceleration | LREAL |
| .fActAcceleration | Actual acceleration | LREAL |

7.7.5.4 Jerk Command

Jerk assigns the rate of changes in acceleration / deceleration. When the jerk is specified, the velocity ramp is in S-curve (the ramp is shown as increasing or decreasing without jerk), which reduces mechanical shock. There are two types of jerk:

| Туре | Definition | |
|--------------|--|--|
| Command jerk | The outputs of MC function modules used for jerk control | |
| Actual jerk | Jerk derived from the actual acceleration | |

The relevant parameters are described as follows:

• Jerk unit

The jerk unit: command unit/s³.

• Jerk ramp type

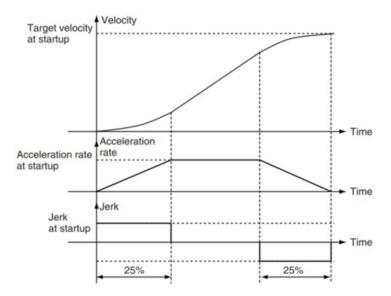
Refer to section 7.7.5.2 of this manual.

• Description of jerk in MC function modules

The input variable related to jerk in MC function modules:

| Project | Function |
|---------|---------------------------|
| Jerk | Target jerk ^{∗1} |

*1: When the velocity ramp type is Trapezoid or Sin2, the setting values of jerk are not applied in the movement; contrarily, when the velocity ramp type is Quadratic or Quadratic smooth, the setting values of jerk will affect the velocity ramp.



• Jerk monitoring

To observe changes in jerk, you can monitor the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type):

| Variable Name | location type | data type |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| .fSetJerk | Command jerk | LREAL |
| .fActJerk | Actual jerk | LREAL |

7.7.5.5 Axis Direction

The following cases require specified direction for operation:

- When the axis is moving at a constant velocity and the input value of velocity is an absolute value
- When the axis is set as a rotary one and is able to reach the target position in both forward and reverse directions

The input variables related to direction in MC function modules are as follows:

| Item | Setting | Definition |
|-----------|----------|---|
| | negative | Move in negative direction |
| | shortest | Move along the shortest path (only valid for rotary axis) |
| Direction | positive | Move in positive direction |
| | current | Move along the current motion direction (only valid for rotary axis) |
| | fastest | Move along the path which takes the least time (only valid for rotary axis) ^{*1} |

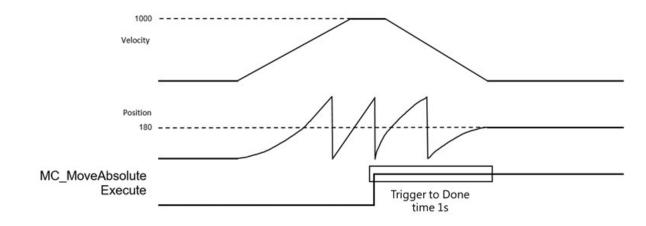
*1: shortest (moving distance) and fastest (moving time) are similar in concept, but not completely the same. Please refer to the following example:

Settings:

Set the axis as rotary axis with a range of 360.

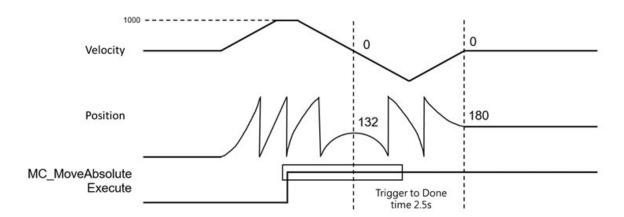
Set the velocity ramp type of the axis to Trapezoid.

- Steps:
 - Use MC_MoveVelocity to move at constant velocity (velocity = 1000).
 - When the motor reaches 350 with the velocity coming to 1000, MC_MoveAbsolute is executing twice respectively in different directions under the same circumstance.
 - Execute MC_MoveAbsolute (Position=180, Velocity=Acceleration=Deceleration=1000, Direction=fastest).



When MC_MoveAbsolute.Execute is triggered, the system determines that the least time-consuming direction to reach position 180 is to decelerate in positive direction to 0. The process takes about 1 second.

- Execute MC_MoveAbsolute (Position = 180, Velocity = Acceleration = Deceleration = 1000, Direction = shortest).



When MC_MoveAbsolute.Execute is triggered, the system determines that the shortest path to reach position 180 is to go in opposite direction (350 - 180 = 170). However, it turns out to take more time because of reversal of the velocity during the process. The process takes about 2.5 seconds.

7.7.6 Axis Group Control

An axis group must consist of more than one axis to achieve axis group movement, which is configured via DIADesigner-AX. Up to six axes are supported for linear axes while three axes are supported by rotary axes with extra three axes as following axes.

7.7.6.1 Linear Interpolation

TransitionMode: Changing the interpolation trajectory while in motion may result in machine vibrations and noises. To alleviate the situation, it is suggested to apply the input variable TransitionMode.

• Available TransitionMode

| Mode | Describe | |
|---------|---|--|
| None | No effect (default) | |
| Overlap | Continue by combining the deceleration of the previous motion with the acceleration of the current motion | |

• Buffer modes supported by TransitionMode

| Mode | Aborting | Buffered | Blending Low | Blending Previous | Blending Next | Blending High |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| None | А | А | Ν | Ν | Ν | Ν |
| Overlap | А | А | D | D | D | D |

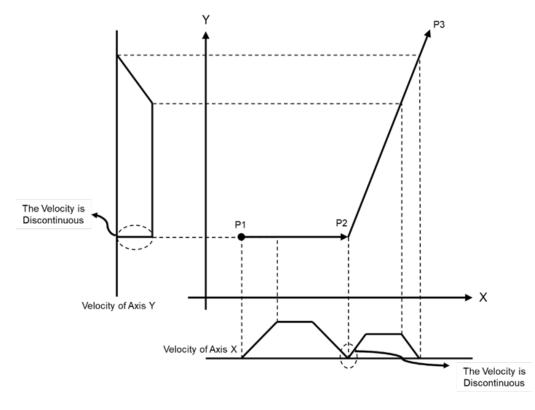
A = Supported

N = Not supported

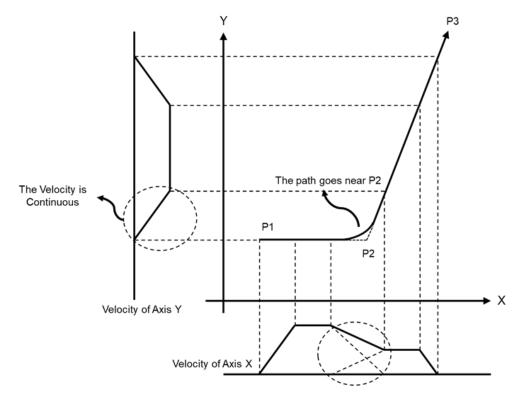
D = Continue with Blending mode

TransitionMode

In the situation below, set the mode to None or Overlap and then select Buffered.

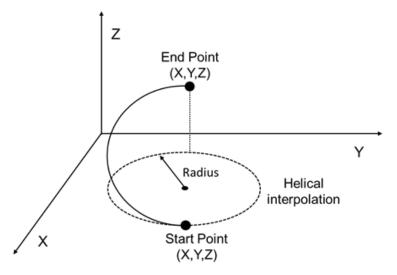


In the situation below, set the mode to Overlap and then select Blending. It is suggested refering to the deceleration and acceleration given to the motion function blocks of each axis group for planning.



7.7.6.2 Helical Interpolation

In helical interpolation, it supports three axes and performs X, Y, Z axes movement in a 3D system with three additional following axes.

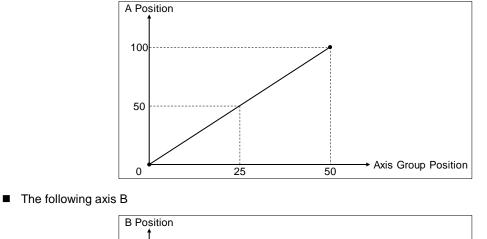


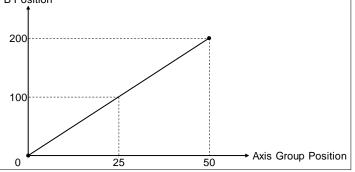
• Concept of following axes in axis group

The following axes (A, B, C) move synchronously in a proportional manner as the axes (X, Y, Z) are moving.

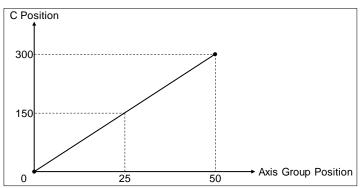
The movement of the axis group starts from 0, in which the axes (X, Y, Z) move to (30, 40, 0) with a distance of 50 and the following axes move to (100, 200, 300). The following figures show the synchronous movements of each following axis:

The following axis A





The following axis C



When the axes (X, Y, Z) stay still, the input velocity given to the axis group is instead applied to the following axis which keeps the longest distanc; and, the other following axes will follow synchronously in proportion to the distance.

7.7.6.3 Stop Command for Axis Group

There are two ways to stop an axis group:

• Programming stop

Adopt DMC_GroupStop in programming to decelerate and stop the axis group at its current position. At this time, the axis group state switches to GroupStopping in which no motion instruction can be executed.

The velocity for deceleration stop should be set to the IrDeceleration pin.

• Error stop

The axis group stops running once it encounters errors during movement.

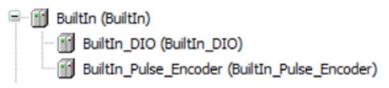
For example, if Hardware Limit is reached while the axis group is in motion, the velocity drops to zero as a result of the output of CommandAborted.

| CommandAborte | |
|----------------|--|
| | |
| Hardware Limit | |
| 3000 | |
| Velocity | |

7.7.7 High-speed I/O

This chapter provides information regarding I/Os including configurations as well as parameter settings.

7.7.7.1 I/O Configuration



The following configurations are available for high-speed I/Os on the CPU module:

- DIO: Filtering, polarity and other functions are set here. Details are in Section 7.7.7.2.
- SSI Encoder: SSI encoder, clock frequency and SSI data size are set here. Details are in Section 7.7.7.3.
- Pulse Encoder: Variable declaration of high-speed counter/ timer and pulse-type encoder and encoder Z inverse are set here. Details are in **Section 7.7.7.4**.
- Capture / Compare: Variable declarations of high-speed capture or high-speed comparator are set here. Details are in **Section 7.7.7.5**.

7.7.7.2 DIO Settings

This section introduces functions including filtering and polarity of I/Os on device with DIO.

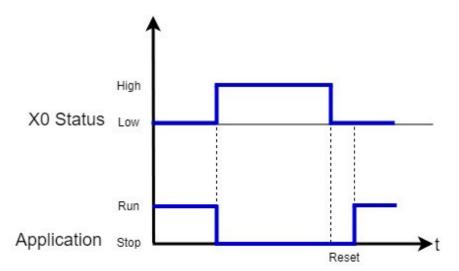
Double-click **DIO** to enter the setting page.

| ices 👻 🕈 🛪 | BuiltIn_DIO X | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------|---------------|------|------------------------------|
| Chobled3 Ch | BuiltInDIO Parameters | Parameter | Туре | Value | Default Value | Unit | Description |
| Hardware Configuration A. Network Configuration | BuiltInDIO I/O Mapping | DI Parameters Ø X0 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X0 |
| A EtherCAT Filter | | X1 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X1 |
| P III PLC Logic | BuiltInDIO IEC Objects | X2 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X2 |
| = O Application | 1 Constanting | X3 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X3 |
| DeltaAxisGroup | Status | A Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X4 |
| - Cam | Information | | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X5 |
| Library Manager | Inomation | X6 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X6 |
| H Motion_PRG (PRG) | | X7 Filter Select | Enumeration of BYTE | NotFilter | NotFilter | | Choose the filter time of X7 |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | 2 Ø X0 Function Type Choose | Enumeration of BYTE | GeneralInput | GeneralInput | | Choose the Function Type o |
| POU (PRG) | | DO Parameters | | | | | |
| E Task Configuration | | V0 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y0 output(Enab |
| EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | Y1 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y1 output(Enab |
| - B POU | | Y2 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y2 output(Enab |
| 🖻 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | Y3 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y3 output(Enab |
| DIC_PRG | | V4 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y4 output(Enab |
| EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) | | YS Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y5 output(Enab |
| ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) | | Y6 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y6 output(Enab |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) | | Y7 Output Inverse | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | Reverse the Y7 output(Enab |
| Butto (Butto) Butto (Butto)DO) Butto (Butto)DO) Butto /DAke_Encode (Butto)Loo Softwoton General Ause Fod Softwoton General (SM_Drive_Virtual) | | | | | | | |

Configuration

| Function | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| | Set the filter time: default is NotFilter. |
| ① Filter | Drop-down list: |
| | Not Filter, 0.1ms, 0.5ms, 1ms |
| | Set X0 Function Type, default is GeneralInput. |
| (2) X0 Function Type | Drop-down list: |
| | GeneraInput Stop/Start PLC Control |
| | Set the output Inverse, default is not reverse. |
| ③ Polarity | True: Reverse |
| | False: Not Reverse |

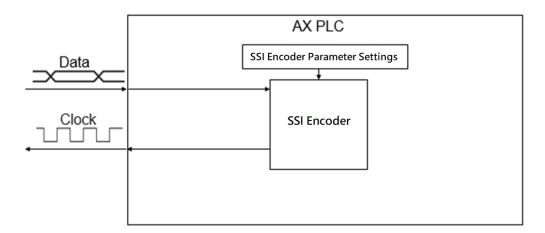
Stop / Start PLC Control



7.7.7.3 SSI Encoder Settings

AX Series PLC supports one set of SSI Encoder through Rx and Tx connection with the controller, providing 5V power input to support the encoder. User needs to set the Serial Communication Mode as SSI and activate DFB_SSI_Encoder. After setting up the preferred parameters, dataset can be received through the hardware channel.

• SSI Encoder Structure

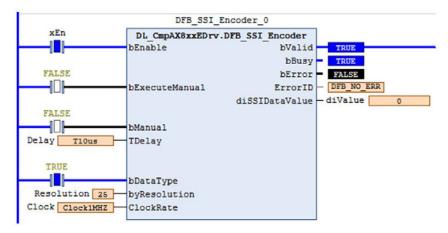


Serial Communication Mode

- Go to Device > System Parameter and select SSI in the Serial Communication Mode drop-down list.
- Parameter settings in the offline mode
- Effective after downloading

| Device X | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|-------|---------------|------|---|
| Communication Settings | Parameter | Туре | Value | Default Value | Unit | Description |
| | 🚽 🌵 Application Run Mode | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | [TRUE]:Enable Run Mode [FALSE]:Disable Run Mode |
| Applications | Serial Communication Mode | Enumeration of BYTE | SSI | RS-485 | | Choose Serial Communication Mode |
| Backup and Restore | NetworkInterface Settings Enable | BOOL | TRUE | TRUE | | [TRUE]:Enable GLAN1/GLAN2 NetworkInterface Settings [FALSE]:Disable GLAN1/GLAN2 NetworkInterface Settings |
| Files | | | | | | |
| Log | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings | | | | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | | |
| licensed Software Metrics | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| System Settings | | | | | | |
| lystem Settings tight Settings | | | | | | |

• DFB_SSI_Encoder



7.7.7.4 Pulse Encoder Settings

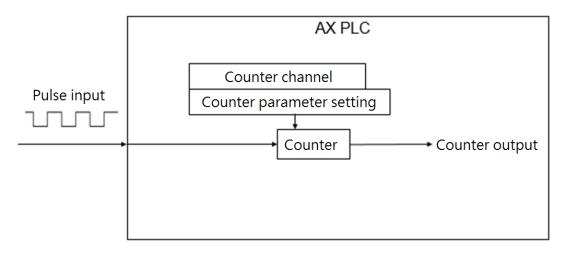
AX-8 Series PLC CPU supports:

- 1. 1 differential input: A, B and Z encoder connecting to the PLC can be utilized to count / time the pulse value or the frequency of the encoder.
- 2. 8 sets of open collector inputs: connecting through the blocks installed on the I/O board; up to 8 sets of high-speed counters / timers can be utilized to count or time the pulse value or the frequency of the encoder.

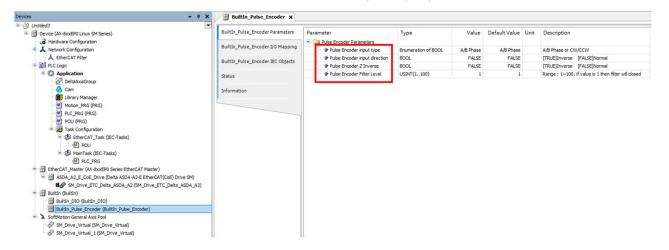
You need to enable pulse-type encoder function and set up the required parameters before you can receive data via the configured hardware channel.

The following section introduces the function modules of the pulse-type encoder. The maximum group of high-speed counters and timers supported by AX-8 is up to 9.

• High-speed counter (Cnt)



- Differential input high-speed counting
 - Double-click BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder to enter I/O Mapping setting page.



AX-8 Series Operation Manual

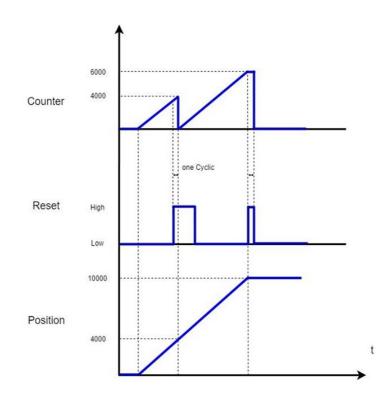
| vices 👻 🕈 🗙 | BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder X | | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|--------------|---|
| Linsted Linsted Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | BuiltIn Pulse Encoder Parameters | Find | Filter Show all | | 🗸 🍁 Add FB for IO Channe |
| B Hardware Configuration A Network Configuration | BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder I/O Mapping | Variable | Mapping Channel Address | | |
| A EtherCAT Filter | BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder IEC Objects | 1 | Counter %ID3 Reset %QX9.0 | DINT BOOL | Counter value Reset Counter value(Execution) |
| Application DeltaAxsGroup | Status | | | | |
| - Gam (b) Usrany Manager | Information | | | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | | | | |
| - • PLC_PRG (PRG) - • POU (PRG) | | 1 | | | |
| Task Configuration Set EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | | | | |
| 一圈 POU | | | | | |
| > 😕 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) - ∰ PLC_PRG | | | | | |
| If EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) | | | | | |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) | | | | | |
| Gill Builtin (Builtin) ☐ Builtin_DIO (Builtin_DIO) | | | | | |
| Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder) | | | | | |
| SoftMoton General Axis Pool | | | | | |
| SM_Drive_Virtual (SM_Drive_Virtual) SM_Drive_Virtual) | | | | | |

Configuration.

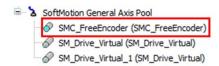
| Function | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Encoder Type | Settings of the differential input encoder type, the default is A/B Phase. Drop-down list: A/B Phase, CW/CCW |
| Encoder direction | Settings of the differential input encoder direction. True: Reverse False: Not Reverse |
| Encoder Z Inverse | Settings of the encoder Z inverse polarity; the default is not reverse. True: Reverse False: Not Reverse |
| Encoder Filter Level | Settings of differential input filter level, setting range: 1~100. 1 stands for no filter and 100 represents moving average of the pulse input (including the 100th) within 100 periods. |
| Counter | Settings of PLC program variables and Channel Counter for Mapping. The differential input pulse count can be read through variables in the program. |
| Reset | Settings of PLC program variables and Channel Reset for Mapping. The differential input pulse count can be cleared through the upper source trigger variables in the program. True \rightarrow False: Valid |

7

Reset Diagram

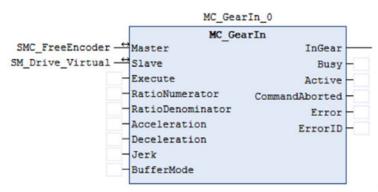


- Differential input high-speed counting used in the program
 - Add SMC_FreeEncoder in the project and use SMC_FreeEncoder.dEncoderPosition and Channel Counter for Mapping.



| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder Parameters | Find Filter Sho | ow all | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder I/O Mapping | Variable | Mapping | Channel Counter | Address %ID1 |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder IEC Objects | | | Reset | %QX1.0 |
| AX3 (SM_Drive | oder (SMC_FreeEncoder) e_Virtual) | | | |
| AX3 (SM_Drive | | | | |
| aX3 (SM_Drive | | ow all | | |
| uiltIn_Pulse_Encoder BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder Parameters | e_Virtual) | ow all Mapping | Channel | Address |
| | e_Virtual) | Mapping | | Address %ID8 |

■ Use the **MC_GearIn** function block in POU. The source of the master axis is SMC_FreeEncoder.



• Open collector input high-speed counting

Setting and activation through DFB_Counter. Maximum of 8 sets of high-speed counters / timers can be utilized to count or time the pulse value or the frequency of the encoder.

DFB_Counter

| | DFB_Cou | inter |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------|
| _ | bEnable BOOL | BOOL bvaild |
| _ | Mode Counter_Mode | BOOL bBusy |
| | bUpDownSelcet BOOL | BOOL bError |
| | bTrigerMode BOOL | DFB_AX8_ERROR ErrorID |
| | wCounterNumber WORD | DINT diCounterValue |

Counter_Mode

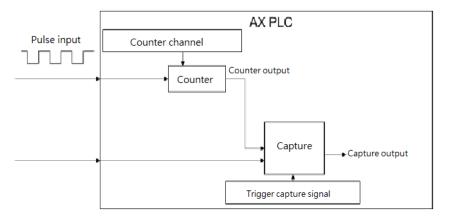
For example: Up to 8 sets of high-speed counting in Mode3. When Counter Number 0 is enabled, user can count up or down through the X0 input of I/O panel.

| Number | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--------|
| Mode 3 | U/D1 | U/D2 | U/D3 | U/D4 | U/D5 | U/D6 | U/D7 | U/D8 | 8 sets |
| Mode 4 | U/D1 | R1 | U/D3 | R3 | U/D5 | R5 | U/D7 | R7 | 4 sets |
| Mode 5 | U/D1 | DI 1 | R1 | S1 | U/D5 | DI 5 | R5 | S5 | 2 sets |
| Mode 6 | U1 | D1 | R1 | S1 | U5 | D5 | R5 | S5 | 2 sets |

7.7.7.5 Capture / Compare Settings

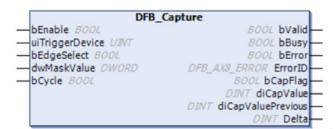
This section is about the function modules of capture and compaer. A maximum of 4 groups of high-speed captures and one set of high-speed compare are supported by AX series motion controllers. The high-speed compare allows a maximum of 256 compare units.

Capture

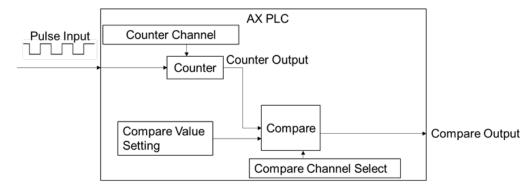


DFB_Capture

Here you can choose from X0~X3 to set up the TrggerDevice. For example, select X0 as trigger source and activate Capture function. As the X0 is triggered, the function block will capture the A and B impulse input value.



• Compare



• DFB_Compare

After setting up the comparison position table and the output pulse length then activate the comparison function, the output Y0 will be enabled according to the pulse length. A maximum of 256 positions can be written into the table.

| DFB_Com | ipare |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| - bEnable BOOL | BOOL bBusy |
| - diPosition ARRAY [0255] OF DINT | BOOL bDone |
| -uiTableSize UINT | Compare_FIFO_State FifoState |
| -rOneShotTime REAL | BOOL bError |
| -byTimeExten BYTE | DFB_AX8_ERROR ErrorID |

7.7.8 Other Features

7.7.8.1 Changing Current Position

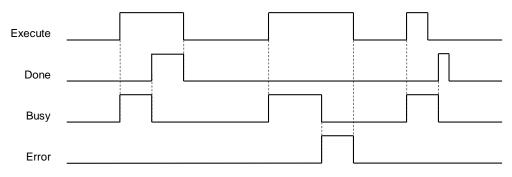
MC_SetPosition

Execution on servo axis turns the current position into the specified target position; on the other hand, execution on encoder axis changes the current feedback position to the specified target position.

Change of the commanded current position also influence the current feedback position. The position lag between two positions remains unchanged.

This function block executes in the way of shifting the coordinate system without any displacement in servo or motor.

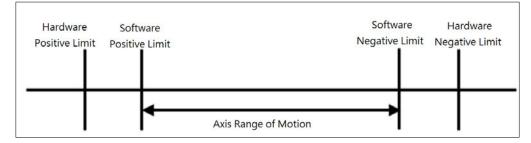
• Timing Diagram



7.7.8.2 Software Limit

In addition to hardware limit, software limit serves as another way to limit the range for axis movement.

Values of range for forward and reverse limit must be set in advance of activating software limit^{*1}. To avoid damage to the device resulting from inappropriate operation, software limit is not activated as default.



*1 : For examples on Stop Method, refer to Section 7.7.2.4.

7.7.8.3 Position Lag Settings

The command position and the actual position reported back are 0 when the axis moves, and a runtime error is ouput when the difference between the command position and the reported actual position is too large.

By default, the position lag function is not enabled.

| Name | Function |
|---------------|---|
| Deactivated | Not enabled. |
| Disable drive | When the position lag exceeds the set limit, the axis shifts to Servo Off. |
| Do quickstop | When the position lag exceeds the set limit, the axis shifts to quick stop. |
| Stay enabled | When the position lag exceeds the set limit, the axis remains Servo On. |

| Seneral Setting | Auto Tomo a | and Linethe | Motion Parameter | | | |
|---|--|-------------------------|---|--------------|--|--|
| ommissioning loming Setting M_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: EC Objects tatus nformation | Axis Type a Virtual n Finite Modulo | | Velocity Ramp Type Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smooth) Dynamic Limits Velocity [u/s]: Acceleration [u 5 100 Position Lag Supervision | | rror Reaction Quick Stop Deceleration [u/s ²]: 100 S ²]: Deceleration [u/s 100 | ²²]: Jerk [u/s ³]: |
| | | m Type Ball Screw v (2) | Position Lag Reaction Mechanism Settings (1) Command pulse (4) Pitch: 10000 | Stay Enabled | Lag Limit [u]: [| 1 Pulse] |
| | | | Gear Box | | | |

7.7.8.4 Cam Switch

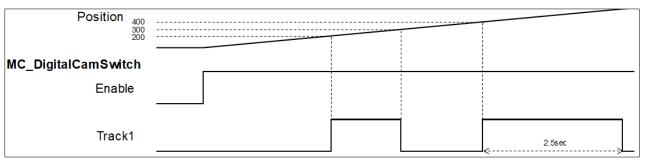
• MC_DigitalCamSwitch

Designate the tappet position. It is True when the axis moves to the specified position and turns False when passing by. The following is an example in which two switches are used in the same track with MC_DigitalCamSwitch instruction.

Parameter setting

| Parameter | Туре | Switch1 | Switch2 |
|---------------------|------|------------|---------|
| TrackNumber | INT | 1 | 1 |
| FirstOnPosition [u] | REAL | 200 | 400 |
| LastOnPosition [u] | REAL | 300 | - |
| AxisDirection | INT | 0=Both | 0=Both |
| CamSwitchMode | INT | 0=Position | 1=TIME |
| Duration | TIME | - | 2500ms |

Trigger and timing



- Switch1 on Track1 turns on when the position reaches 200 and turns off when reaching 300.

- Switch1 turns on again when the position reaches 400 but turns off after passing 2500ms.

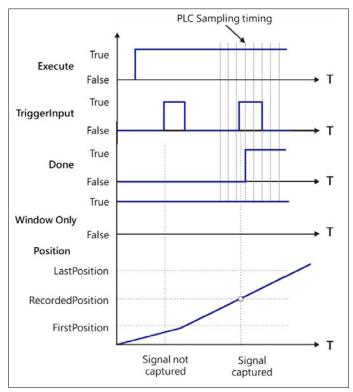
7.7.8.5 Position Capture

In function block MC_TouchProbe, a senser is used as trigger signal. The current position of the servo is captured and recorded when a trigger event occurs.

For each axis it is allowed to set two trigger signals.

Plus, MC_AbortTrigger is used to abort the capture function.

- Function description
 - When the input pin Execute of the function block MC_TouchProbe is True, only the effective position value of the first trigger signal will be captured and the subsequent signals are ignored.
 - One function block instance only relates to one MC_TouchProbe instruction. If there are multiple MC_TouchProbe instances on the same axis, another TouchProbeID will be added to MC_TRIGGER_REF to distinguish different TouchProbe actions. TouchProbeID is also associated with MC_AbortTrigger.
 - The operation of window mask function in MC_TouchProbe:



- For the first trigger signal input, the signal is not captured because the axis position has not reached the Window Mask section.
- For the second input, the signal is captured as the axis position has reached the Window Mask section. And the signal Done is output as True in the following cycle right after the capture is completed.

7.8 Programming Example

A programming example is elaborated in the following sections.

7.8.1 Device Framework

The following devices are applied in the example.

| Device | Model Name | |
|-------------|-----------------|--|
| CPU | AX-8 | |
| Power | DVP-PS02 | |
| Servo drive | Delta ASDA-A2-E | |
| Servo motor | Delta ECMA-C | |

7.8.1.1 Utilization

Please refer to the following manuals for information regarding device configuration and wiring.

| Device | Reference | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| CPU and power | Chapter 2 | | |
| Server drive | Delta servo drive manuals | | |
| Wiring for EtherCAT slave | Delta ASDA A2-E EtherCAT Interface Servo Drive User Manual | | |

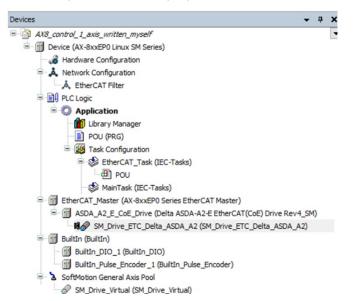
7.8.1.2 Configuration

| The following | configuration | is applied in the exam | ple. |
|---------------|---------------|------------------------|------|
| The following | ooringaration | io uppliou in the oxum | pio. |

| Device | Configuration Setting | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|
| Controller | The default settings in Chapter 2 in this manual are applied. | | |
| Motion control settings | Chapter 7 | | |
| Servo Parameters | The default settings of ASDA-A2-E slave (gear ratio = 10000:10000) are applied. | | |

7.8.2 Examples

The following example takes the same POU in the EtherCAT task for demonstration. All variables used are declared and utilized in this POU task (the POU naming in LD and ST languages is different for demonstration purpose).



The time for EtherCAT synchronization is set to 4ms.

| S EtherCAT_Task x | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| nfiguration | | |
| riority (031): | | |
| Туре | | |
| 🕑 Cyclic 🗸 🗸 🗸 | terval (e.g. t#200ms): 4000 | µs v |
| | | |
| Watchdog | | |
| Enable | | |
| Time (e.g. t#200ms): | | ms. 🛩 |
| Para Maria | | |
| Sensitivity: | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| Add Call 🗙 Remove Call 🛄 | Change Call Move Up Move Down | |
| POU | Comment | |
| EcatMotion | | |

The electronic gear ratio is set to 10000:10000.

| General Setting | Axis Type and Limits | Motion Parameter |
|--|--|--|
| Commissioning | Virtual mode Finite Linear Axis Software Limits | Error Reaction |
| Homing Setting | O Modulo Activated | |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: IEC Objects | Negative [u]: 0 Positive [u]: 1000 | Velocity Ramp Type O Trapezoid Sin ² Quadratic Quadratic(smooth) |
| Status | Rotary Axis Modulo Settings Modulo value [u]: 360 | Position Lag Supervision Position Lag Reaction Deactivated V Lag Limit [u]: 1 |
| nformation | | Position Lag Reaction Deactivated ~ Lag Limit [u]: 1 |
| | Transmission Mechanism | |
| | Mechanism Type Ball Screw Y | Mechanism Settings |
| | (4) | (1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1280000 [Pulse] |
| | | |
| | | (4) Pitch: 10000 [Unit] |
| | | Gear Box |
| | | |

7.8.2.1 Servo On

In this example, when EtherCAT data communication is established, the MC_Power (Servo On) instruction is executed to enable the servo drive. Ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST) languages are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Data Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|---|
| SM_Drive_Virtual | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Virtual Axis Variables |
| Start | BOOL | FALSE | When turning on the servo, switch to True to start Servo On |

• LD language

When Start is True, confirm whether the EtherCAT network communication works. If the communication is normal, enable MC_Power via Servo On output. The activation is succeeded when Status is True.



• ST language

When Start is True, confirm whether the EtherCAT network communication works. If the communication is normal, enable MC_Power via Servo On output. The activation is succeeded when Status is True.

At the same time, you can also observe the output status of the variables through monitoring window with no need to name the output variables.

```
IF Start THEN
ServoOn :=TRUE;
ELSE
ServoOn :=FALSE;
END_IF
```

//MC_Power

```
MC_Power_0(
Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
Enable:= ServoOn,
bRegulatorOn:= TRUE,
bDriveStart:= TRUE,
Status=> ,
bRegulatorRealState=> ,
bDriveStartRealState=> ,
Busy=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );
```

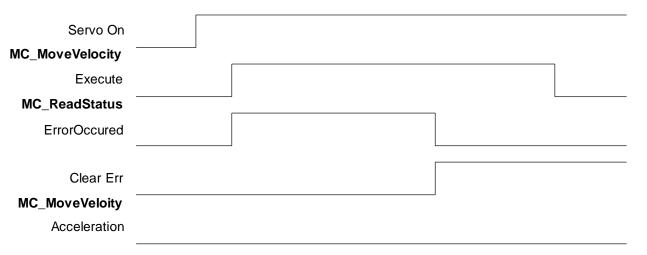
7.8.2.2 Resetting and Monitoring Single-axis Errors

In this example, the error information of variable state can be viewed through the watch table. Take MC_MoveVelocity input as example. When the acceleration is set to 0, Execute is True and Error is True with the ErrorID status shown as Row Data 301, the error message SMC_MV_INVALID_ACCDEC_VALUES can be checked in the watch table. After troubleshooting is done, MC_MoveVelocity functions well by shifting Execute from False to True. As for MC_Reset, it is specially for servo error clearance. Ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST) languages are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

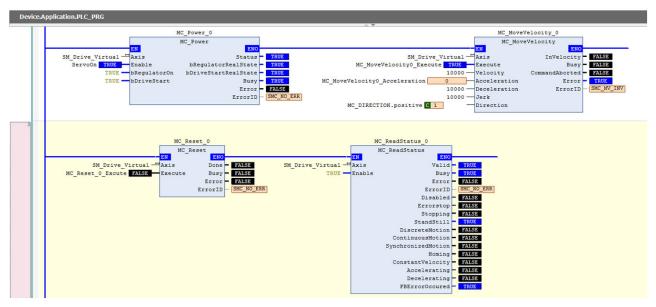
| Name | Data Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--|
| SM_Drive_Virtual | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Virtual axis variables |
| ServoOn | BOOL | FALSE | To enable MC_Power |
| MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute | BOOL | FALSE | Velocity command for Execute |
| MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration | LREAL | 0 | Velocity command for Acceleration, used to set acceleration |
| MC_DIRECTION.positive | MC_Direction | - | Specify the moving direction as forward |
| FBErrorOccured | MC_ReadStatus | FALSE | True when an error occurs |
| ClearErr | BOOL | FALSE | When FBErrorOccured is True, SMC_ClearFBError can be triggered to clear errors |

• Timing diagram

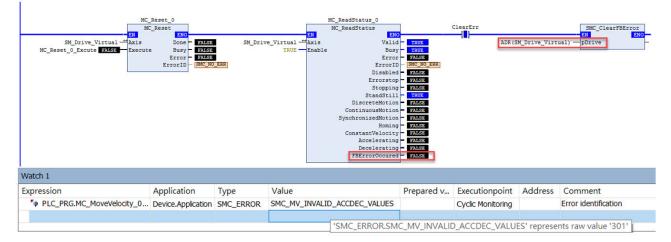


AX-8 Series Operation Manual

• LD language



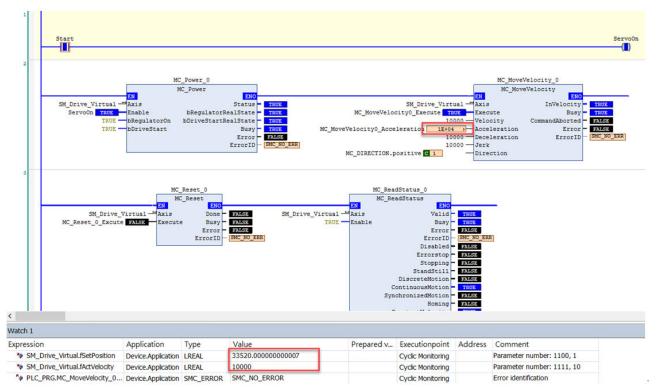
When an error occurs, the output FBErrorOccured of MC_ReadStatus can be cleared via SMC_ClearFBError. As the input to SMC_ClearFBError is transmitted through pointers, it is necessary to add ADR (input variable) and use bool to clear the error flag in function block.



Disable Execute input in MC_MoveVelocity to update the status of Error output.



Set the MC_MoveVelocity acceleration to 10000 and then restart Execute to True. The output of MC_MoveVelocity is Busy and the fSetVelocity and fSetPosition on the watch table are operating normally.



• ST language

MC_MoveVelocity_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Execute:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute, Velocity:= 10000, Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration, Deceleration:= 10000, Jerk:= 10000, Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive, InVelocity=> , Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_ReadStatus_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Enable:= TRUE);

Set the MC_MoveVelocity acceleration to 10000 and then restart Execute to True. The output of MC_MoveVelocity is Busy and the fSetVelocity and fSetPosition on the watch table are operating normally.

MC_MoveVelocity_0(Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Execute:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute,

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

Velocity:= 10000, Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration := 10000, Deceleration:= 10000, Jerk:= 10000, Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive, InVelocity=> , Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_ReadStatus_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Enable:= TRUE);

7.8.2.3 Monitoring Instruction Errors

In this example, if an error occurs while executing the MC_Power (Servo On) instruction, no further processing will be performed. However, the ProgNext will indicate whether to proceed with the execution. Ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST) languages are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

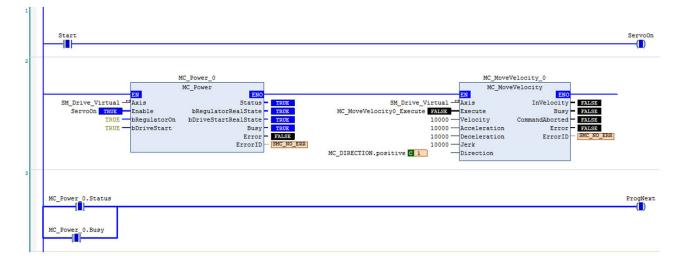
| Name | Data Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|--|
| SM_Drive_Virtual | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Virtual axis variables |
| ServoOn | BOOL | FALSE | To enable MC_Power |
| ProgNext | BOOL | FALSE | ProgNext indicates whether further execution is possible |
| MC_Power_0.Status | BOOL | FALSE | Axis is ready to move when the state is True |
| MC_Power_0.Busy | BOOL | FALSE | Execution of function block has not yet completed when the state is True |

• Timing diagram

| Start | |
|--------------------|--|
| Servo On | |
| MC_Power | |
| Busy | |
| MC_Power Status | |
| ProgNext | |

• LD language

Check if there is any error in MC_Power before further processing.



ST language

IF Start THEN ServoOn :=TRUE; ELSE ServoOn :=FALSE; END_IF

```
IF (MC_Power_0.Status=TRUE) OR (MC_Power_0.Busy=TRUE) THEN
ProgNext :=TRUE;
ELSE
ProgNext :=FALSE;
END_IF
```

```
//MC_Power
```

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Enable:= ServoOn, bRegulatorOn:= TRUE, bDriveStart:= TRUE, Status=> , bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

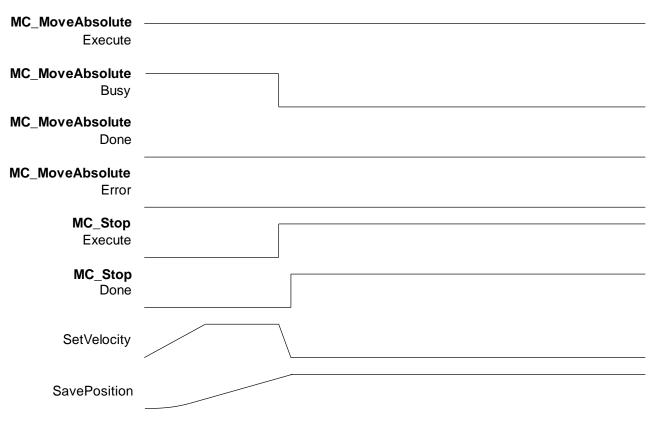
7.8.2.4 Quick Stop for Single Axis

In this example, if minor error occurs during the execution of MC_MoveAbsolute (absolute positioning), use MC_Stop to stop single-axis movement. Ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST) languages are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Data Type | Initial Value | Annotation | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|--|--|--|--|
| SM_Drive_Virtual | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Virtual axis variables | | |
| ServoOn | BOOL | FALSE | To enable MC_Power | | |
| MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute | BOOL | BOOL FALSE Execute input of MC_MoveAbs | | | |
| MC_DIRECTION.positive | MC_Direction | - | Specify the moving direction - forward (valid for rotary axis) | | |
| StopOn | BOOL | FALSE | Activate MC_Stop when the state is True | | |
| MC_Stop_0.Done | BOOL | FALSE | MC_Stop is done when the state is True | | |

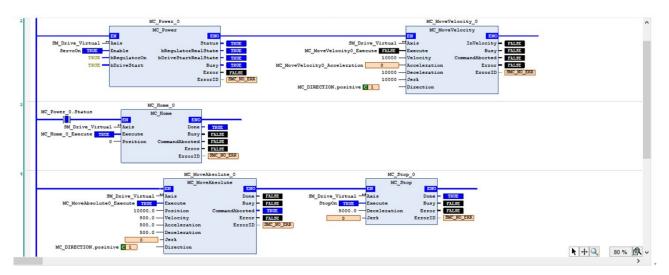
• Timing diagram



7

• LD language

Execute homing when the status of MC_Power output is normal. Once homing is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute (absolute positioning). If an emergency stop is in need, you can execute MC_Stop where absolute positioning will be aborted with the state of CommandAborted output being True. At this time, the axis stops according to the assigned deceleration, and the Done output of MC_Stop shifts to True after the stop instruction is completed.



• ST language

The process is the same as that of LD. After MC_Home is finished, the state would be in StandStill.

//MC_Power

MC_Power_0(Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Enable:= ServoOn, bRegulatorOn:= TRUE, bDriveStart:= TRUE, Status=>, bRegulatorRealState=>, bDriveStartRealState=>, Busy=>, Error=>, ErrorID=>);

//MC_Home

IF MC_Power_0.Status THEN MC_Home_0(Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual, Execute:= MC_Home_0_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> , Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

END_IF

Execute MC_Stop if an emergency stop is required during execution of MC_MoveAbsolute. As a result, absolute positioning is aborted and the state would be in Stopping.

```
//MC_MoveAbsolute & MC_Stop
MC_MoveAbsolute_0(
      Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
      Execute:= MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute,
      Position:= 10000.0,
      Velocity:= 500.0,
      Acceleration:= 500.0,
      Deceleration:= 500.0,
      Jerk:=,
      Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive,
      Done=>,
      Busy=>,
      CommandAborted=>,
      Error=>,
      ErrorID=>);
      MC_Stop_0(
      Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
      Execute:= StopOn,
      Deceleration:= 5000.0,
      Jerk:=,
      Done=>,
      Busy=>,
      Error=>,
      ErrorID=>);
```

7.8.2.5 Homing

Delta currently supports homing modes 0-35, and the OD used is 6098 (Homing method) / 6099sub1 (Speed during search for switch) / 6099sub2 (Speed during search for zero). For details, refer to the user manual **Delta AC Servo Drive ASDA-A2-E Series**.

In this section, the application of homing instruction is introduced with the example below.

Add A2-E servo to the EtherCAT slave, then specify the parameters of the abovementioned OD:

Homing method = 33 (perform homing once meeting Z pulse)

Speed during search for switch =1000[unit 1.0rpm] (search for limit switch at the speed of 100rpm) Speed during search for z phase pulse=20[unit 0.1rpm] (search for zero at the speed of 2rpm)

After setup, execute MC_Home in either LD or ST language with the cooresponding OD.

| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA | |
|------------------------------|---|
| ral Setting | Homing Mode 33 × |
| issioning | Homing speed during search for switch 100 |
| Setting | Homing speed during search for z phase pulse 20 🛱 [0.1 rpm] Homing Acceleration 100 🛊 [ms] |
| e_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2: ects | Description |
| | Mode 33 : Depending on Z pulse in the negative direction |
| ition | In mode 33, The homing instruction is executed and the axis moves at the second-phase speed (Homing speed during search for Z phase pulse) in the negative direction. And the place where the axis stands is the home position once the first Z pulse is met. |
| | 00 |
| | Negative direction |
| | |
| | |
| | Z pulse |

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Data Type | Initial Value | Annotation | |
|---------|--------------|---------------|---------------------|--|
| Axis_1 | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Real axis variables | |
| ServoOn | BOOL | FALSE | To enable MC_Power | |

• Timing diagram

| MC_Home Execute | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| MC_Home Done | |
| MC_ReadStatus Disabled | |
| MC_ReadStatus StandStill | |
| MC_ReadStatus - Homing | |

• LD language

Confirm that the ouptout status of MC_Power is normal and the state is in Standstill. Then execute MC_Home with the state shifting to homing and back to Standstill after compeletion.

| MC_Power_0 | | н | C_Nome_0 | MC_ReadStatus_0 MC_ReadStatus | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|--------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | MC_Power | | NC_Home | | | |
| EN | ENO | EN | ENO | EN | ENO | |
| Axis_1 - Axis | Status - TRUE | Axis_1 -Axis | Done - TRUE | Axis_1 - Axis | Valid - T | |
| ServoOn TRUE Enable | bRegulatorRealState - TRUZ | TRUE Execute | Busy - PALSE | IRUE Enable | Busy - T | |
| TRUEbRegulatorOn | bDriveStartRealState - TRUZ | 0 - Position | CommandAborted - FAISS | | Error - FA | |
| TRUE - bDriveStart | Busy - TROE | | Error - PALSE | | ErrorID - IM | |
| | Error - PALSE | | EFFOFID - SHC_NO_ERR | | Disabled - FA | |
| | EFFOFID - SMC_NO_ERR | | | | Errorstop - 12 | |
| | and the second se | | | | Stopping - PA | |
| | | | | | StandStill - 7 | |
| | | | | | DiscreteMotion - | |
| | | | | | ContinuousMotion - 12 | |
| | | | | 1 | ynchronizedNotion - | |
| | | | | | Noming - 12 | |
| | | | | | ConstantVelocity - | |
| | | | | | Accelerating - 12 | |
| | | | | | Decelerating - 12 | |
| | | | | | FBErrorOccured - | |

• ST language

The process is the same as that of LD. After MC_Home is completed, the state returns to StandStill. The output status can be checked by assigning variables or through the watch table.

MC_Home_0(

```
Axis:= Axis_1,
Execute:= ,
Position:= 0,
Done=> ,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );
```

MC_ReadStatus_0(

Axis:= Axis_1, Enable:= TRUE, Valid=>, Busy=>, Error=>, ErrorID=> , Disabled=>, Errorstop=>, Stopping=>, StandStill=>, DiscreteMotion=>, ContinuousMotion=> , SynchronizedMotion=> , Homing=>, ConstantVelocity=>, Accelerating=>, Decelerating=>,

FBErrorOccured=>);

7.8.2.6 Absolute Positioning

The example below introduces the way to perform displacement at one speed via MC_MoveAbsolute.

Ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST) languages are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Data Type Initial Value | | Annotation | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| Axis_1 | AXIS_REF_SM3 | - | Real axis variables | | |
| ServoOn | BOOL | FALSE | To enable MC_Power | | |
| MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute | BOOL | FALSE | Execute input of MC_MoveAbsolute | | |
| MC_DIRECTION.positive | MC_Direction | - | Specify the moving direction - forward (valid for rotary axis) | | |

• Timing diagram

| Servo On | |
|----------------------------|--|
| MC_MoveAbsolute Execute | |
| MC_MoveAbsolute Busy | |
| MC_MoveAbsolute Done | |
| MC_MoveAbsolute Error | |
| SetVelocity | |
| SavePosition | |

• LD language

Confirm that the ouptout status of MC_Power is normal. Then execute MC_MoveAbsolute to move from the starting position 0 to the assigned position 50000.

| 1 | 1C_Power_0 | | MC_MoveAbsolute_0 |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| | MC_POWER | | MC_MoveAbsolute |
| EN | ENO | EN | ENO |
| Axis_1 - Axis | Status - TRUE | Axis_1 - Axis | Done - TRUE |
| ServoOn TRUE Enable | bRegulatorRealState - TRUE | MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute TRUE Execut | e Busy - FALSE |
| TRUE bRegulatorOn | bDriveStartRealState TRUE | 50000 - Positi | on CommandAborted - FALSE |
| TRUEbDriveStart | Busy - TRUE | 10000 - Veloci | ty Error - FALSE |
| | Error - FALSE | 100000 - Accele | ration ErrorID - SMC_NO |
| | ErrorID - SMC_NO_ERR | 100000 - Decele | ration |
| | | 10000000 - Jerk | |
| | | MC_DIRECTION.positive C 1 Direct | ion |
| | | | |

• ST language

MC_Home_0(

Axis:= Axis_1, Execute:= , Position:= 0, Done=> , Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_MoveAbsolute_0(

Axis:= Axis_1, Execute:= MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute, Position:= 50000, Velocity:= 10000, Acceleration:= 100000, Deceleration:= 100000, Jerk:= 100000, Direction:= SM3_Basic.MC_DIRECTION.positive, Done=> , Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

7.8.2.7 Switching Cam Tables during Cam Operation

The example shows how to switch cam table when the cam is in operation.

Add master and slave axes and create two MC_CamIn instructions to switch between two cam tables. Different output parameters are configured for the two cams. Use CamTable1 when the instruction position of the master axis is below 3000 and switch to CamTable2 when the position exceeds 3000.

Two programming languages, ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST), are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Variable Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| Axis_Master | AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL _SM3 | - | Master-related axis variables |
| Axis_Slave | AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL _SM3 | - | Slave-related axis variables |
| CamTable1 | MC_CAM_REF | - | Relevant variables in cam table 1 |
| CamTable2 | MC_CAM_REF | - | Relevant variables in cam table 2 |
| StartFlag | BOOL | FALSE | If this variable is TRUE and communication with the axes is normal, Servo On will be activated with the subsequent actions being performed |
| MC_Power0_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for master; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Power1_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for slave; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Home0_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for master; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_Home1_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for slave; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_MoveAbs_Busy | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_MoveAbsolute output Busy for master; TRUE when in execution |
| CamTableSelect | MC_CAM_REF | - | Variables of the coorsponding cam table which is specified |
| CamTable1_En | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when CamTable1 is chosen |
| CamTable2_En | BOOL | FALSE | TRUE when CamTable2 is chosen |
| CamTableID | MC_CAM_ID | - | The internal data structure of the selected cam table, which is from MC_CamTableSelect and uased as MC_CamIn input |
| MC_CamIn1_InSync | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_CamIn output InSync in cam table 1; TRUE when master and slave cams are synchronized |
| MC_CamIn2_InSync | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_CamIn output InSync in cam table 2; TRUE when master and slave cams are synchronized |

• CamTable1:

| . slave | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|---------------------|
| 200 | | | | | |
| .9 100년 | | | | | |
| | | | | n | naster position [u] |

• CamTable2:

| Slave | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------------|---|------------------|-----------|
| Soo s | | | | | | | | | |
| .음 100 ^도 | | | | | | \searrow | | | |
| | | | | | | | m | ister <u>pos</u> | ition [u] |

• Timing Diagram

| StartFlag | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| MC_Power0_Status | |
| MC_Power1_Status | |
| MC_MoveAbs_Busy | |
| - CamTable1_En | |
| CamTable2_En | |
| MC_CamIn1_InSync | |
| MC_CamIn2_InSync | |
| Axis_Master. 6000 - fSetPosition | |
| Axis_Slave. fSetPosition | ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ |

• LD language

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and slave axes is normal or not.



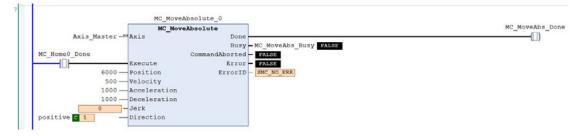
If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.



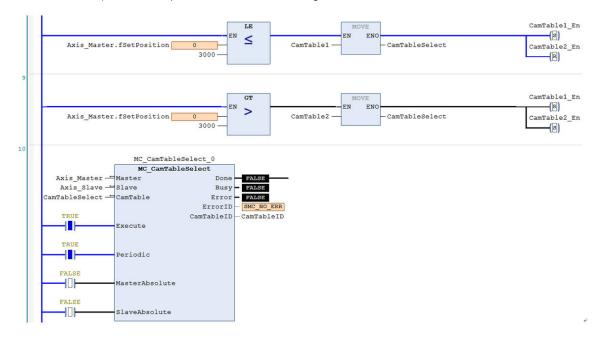
If the master and slave axes are in the Servo On state with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

| | MC_Home MC_Hom | | MC_Home0_Done |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Axis_Master | - Axis | Done | ()) |
| | | Busy - FALSE | |
| MC_Power0_Status | Comm | andAborted - FALSE | |
| | Execute | Error - FALSE | |
| 0 | - Position | ErrorID _ SMC_NO_ERR | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | MC_Home MC Hom | | MC_Home1_Don |
| Axis_Slave | MC_Hom | | MC_Home1_Don |
| Axis_Slave | MC_Hom | | MC_Home1_Don |
| Axis_Slave MC_Power1_Status | MC_Hom | Done | MC_Home1_Done |
| 1.00 | MC_Hom | Done Busy - PALSE | MC_Home1_Don |

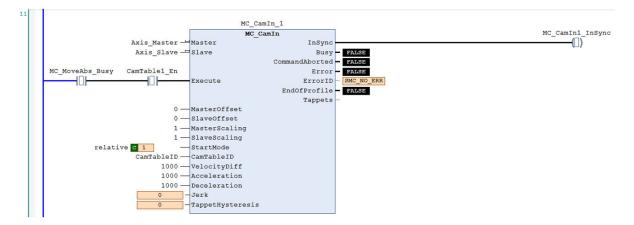
After homing of the master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute.



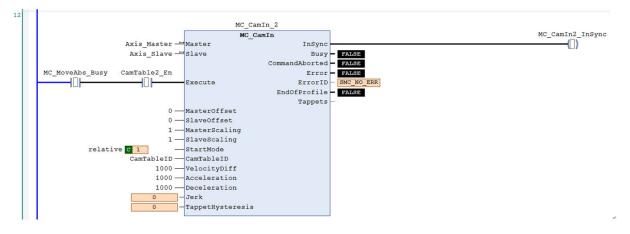
Use CamTable1 when the instruction position of the master axis is under 3000 (CamTable1_En=True; CamTable2_En=False); instead, choose CamTable2 when it is greater than 3000 (CamTable1_En=False, CamTable2_En=True). Set the respective cam table according to the instruction MC_CamTableSelect.



When the master axis performs absolute positioning and CamTable1_En=True, go with CamTable1.



When the master axis performs absolute positioning and CamTable2_En=True, go with CamTable2.



• ST language

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and slave axes is normal or not.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;
MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;
MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
END_IF
```

If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power0_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

```
MC_Power_1(
```

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power1_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

If the master and slave axes are in the Servo On state with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN
MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN
MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

MC_Home_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home0_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_Home_1(

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home1_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

After homing of the master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute.

MC_MoveAbsolute(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_Home1_Done, Position:= 6000, Velocity:= 500, Acceleration:= 1000, Deceleration:= 1000, Jerk:= , Direction:= positive, Done=> MC_MoveAbs_Done, Busy=> MC_MoveAbs_Busy, CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

Use CamTable1 when the instruction position of the master axis is under 3000 (CamTable1_En=True; CamTable2_En=False); instead, choose CamTable2 when it is greater than 3000 (CamTable1_En=False, CamTable2_En=True). Set the respective cam table according to the instruction MC_CamTableSelect.

```
IF Axis_Master.fSetPosition > 3000 THEN
CamTableSelect := CamTable2;
CamTable1_En := FALSE;
CamTable2_En := TRUE;
ELSE
CamTableSelect := CamTable1;
CamTable1_En := TRUE;
CamTable2_En := FALSE;
END_IF
```

```
IF (CamTable1_En = TRUE) OR (CamTable2_En = TRUE) THEN
CamTable_En := TRUE;
END_IF
MC_CamTableSelect(
```

```
Master:= Axis_Master,
Slave:= Axis_Slave,
CamTable:= CamTableSelect,
Execute:= CamTable_En,
Periodic:= TRUE,
MasterAbsolute:= FALSE,
SlaveAbsolute:= FALSE,
Done=> MC_CamTableSelect_Done,
Busy=> ,
ErrorID=> ,
ErrorID=> ,
CamTableID=> CamTableID);
```

When the master axis performs absolute positioning and CamTable1_En=True, go with CamTable1.

IF (MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE) AND (CamTable1_En = TRUE) THEN

MC_CamIn_1(Master:= Axis_Master, Slave:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= TRUE, MasterOffset:= 0, SlaveOffset:= 0, MasterScaling:= 1, SlaveScaling:= 1, StartMode:= relative, CamTableID:= CamTableID, VelocityDiff:= 1000, Acceleration:= 1000, Deceleration:= 1000, Jerk:= . TappetHysteresis:= , InSync=> MC_CamIn1_Insync, Busy=>, CommandAborted=> , Error=>, ErrorID=>, EndOfProfile=>, Tappets=>);

END_IF

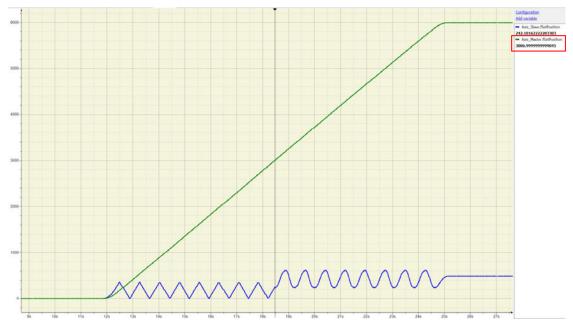
When the master axis performs absolute positioning and CamTable2_En=True, go with CamTable2.

IF (MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE) AND (CamTable2_En = TRUE) THEN

MC_CamIn_2(Master:= Axis_Master,

Slave:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= TRUE, MasterOffset:= 0, SlaveOffset:= 0, MasterScaling:= 1, SlaveScaling:= 1, StartMode:= relative, CamTableID:= CamTableID, VelocityDiff:= 1000, Acceleration:= 1000, Deceleration:= 1000, Jerk:=, TappetHysteresis:= , InSync=> MC_CamIn2_Insync, Busy=>, CommandAborted=> , Error=>, ErrorID=>, EndOfProfile=> , Tappets=>); END_IF

Based on the settings above, switch between two different cam tables when the master position is over 3000.



7.8.2.8 Executing Master Phase Offset during Cam Operation

After the slave axis is aborted during execution of MC_phasing, it synchronizes with the master axis which is under control. When PhasingActive is True, execute MC_Phasing to compensate the phase offset of the master axis. The slave axis will move synchronously after offset is done.

Two programming languages, ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST), are provided in the following example.

• Main Variables Used in Programming

| Name | Variable Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|---|
| Axis_Master | AXIS_REF_ VIRTUAL_SM3 | - | Master-related axis variables |
| Axis_Slave | AXIS_REF_ VIRTUAL_SM3 | - | Slave-related axis variables |
| CamTable | MC_CAM_REF | - | Relevant variables of cam table |
| StartFlag | BOOL | FALSE | If this variable is TRUE and axis communication is normal, Servo On will be activated with the subsequent actions being performed |
| MC_Power0_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for master; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Power1_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for slave; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Home0_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for master; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_Home1_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for slave; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_MoveVelocity_ Velocity | LREAL | 500 | The target velocity for the master axis to move at a constant velocity |
| MC_MoveVelocity_ InVelocity | BOOL | FALSE | The variables of MC_MoveVelocity output InVelocity; TRUE when the specified velocity reaches the target velocity |
| CamTableID | MC_CAM_ID | - | The internal data structure of the selected cam table, which is from MC_CamTableSelect and uased as MC_CamIn input |
| MC_CamIn1_InSync | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_CamIn output InSync in cam table 1; TRUE when master and slave cams are synchronized |
| PhasingActive | BOOL | FALSE | If this variable is TRUE and the cam is in InSync, MC_Phasing begins execution |
| MC_Phasing_PhaseShift | LREAL | 500 | Specify the relative phase offset for the master axis and the slave axis |
| MC_Phasing_Velocity | LREAL | 300 | Specify the relative velocity of the master axis and slave axis when performing phase offset |

| Name Variable Type | | Initial Value | Annotation | | | |
|--------------------|------|------------------|--|--|--|--|
| MC_Phasing_Done | BOOL | FALSE | The variable of MC_Phasing output Done; TRUE when phase offset is completed | | | |

CamTable

| 700 | <u>`v</u> | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|----------------------------|------|--------------------|
| 100 | AK . | 1 | 8 | | | | | | | |
| 500 | g | | | | | | | | | |
| _ | Š. | | | | | | | | | |
| 300 | 9 | | | | | | | , , , , , , | | |
| - | <u>e</u> | | | | | | | | | |
| 100 | | | | | | | | | | eter position [u] |
| | | | | | | | | | | aster position [u] |

• Timing diagram

| | | | i | |
|------------------------------|---|-------|--------|--|
| StartFlag | | | | |
| MC_Power0_Status | | | | |
| MC_Power1_Status | | | | |
| MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity | | | | |
| MC_CamIn1_InSync | | | | |
| PhasingActive | | | | |
| MC_Phasing_Done | | | | |
| Axis_Master. fSetPosition | | | | |
| Axis_Master. fSetVelocity | / | | | |
| Axis_Slave. fSetPosition | | ~~~~~ | | |
| Axis_Slave. fSetVelocity | | | \sim | |

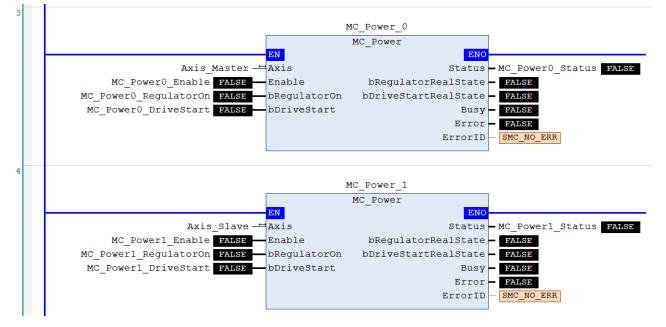
7

• LD language

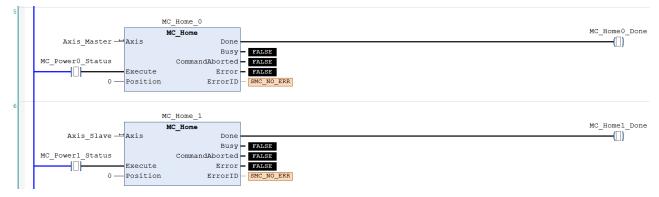
Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and the slave axis is normal or not.



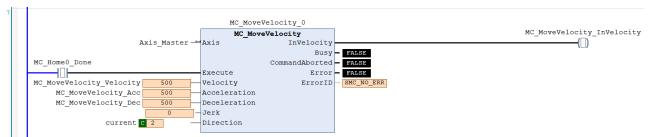
If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.



If the master and slave axes are in the Servo On state with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

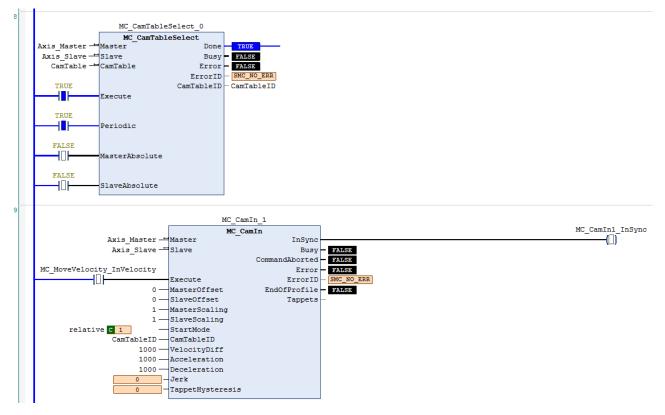


7

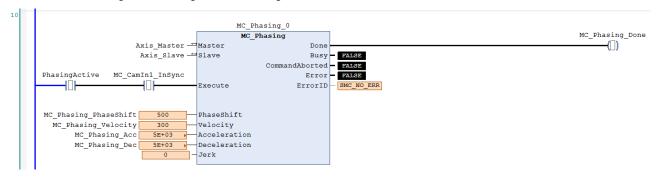


After homing of the master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveVelocity.

After the master axis attains the target velocity, set the respective cam table based on MC_CamTableSelect settings to execute cam motion.



If PhasingActive is True and the cam is synchronizing, it starts phase offset between the master axis and the slave axis. Where the original master-slave axis relationship in cam is broken, the slave axis starts phase synchronization with the master axis according to the setting of MC_Phasing.



When performing phase offset of the master axis based on the settings above, the slave axis will synchronize with the phase after offset is done and the phase difference is fixed.

Take the cursor timing 3500-3000 in the fugure as example, the PhaseShift is 500 and the velocity of the slave axis is 200 (velocity of the master axis 500 minus velocity 300) when offset is performed.



• ST language

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and the slave axis is normal or not.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
```

IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE; MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE; MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;

END_IF

```
IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;
MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;
```

END_IF END_IF

If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power0_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> ,

```
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );
```

MC_Power_1(

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power1_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

If the master and slave axes are in the Servo On state with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE; END_IF

```
IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN
MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

MC_Home_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home0_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_Home_1(

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home1_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

After homing of the master axis is completed, execute $\ensuremath{\mathsf{MC_MoveVelocity}}$.

MC_MoveVelocity(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_Home0_Done, Velocity:= MC_MoveVelocity_Velocity,

```
Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity_Acc,
Deceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity_Dec,
Jerk:= ,
Direction:= current,
InVelocity=> MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );
```

After the master axis attains the target velocity, set the respective cam table based on MC_CamTableSelect settings to execute cam motion.

MC_CamTableSelect(

Master:= Axis_Master, Slave:= Axis_Slave, CamTable:= CamTable, Execute:= TRUE, Periodic:= TRUE, MasterAbsolute:= FALSE, SlaveAbsolute:= FALSE, Done=> MC_CamTableSelect_Done, Busy=> , ErrorID=> , CamTableID=> CamTableID);

IF MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity = TRUE THEN

MC_CamIn_1(

Master:= Axis_Master, Slave:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= TRUE, MasterOffset:= 0, SlaveOffset:= 0, MasterScaling:= 1, SlaveScaling:= 1, StartMode:= relative, CamTableID:= CamTableID, VelocityDiff:= 1000, Acceleration:= 1000, Deceleration:= 1000, Jerk:=, TappetHysteresis:= , InSync=> MC_CamIn1_Insync, Busy=>, CommandAborted=>, Error=>, ErrorID=>, EndOfProfile=>, Tappets=>);

END_IF

If PhasingActive is True and the cam is synchronizing, it starts phase offset between the master axis and the slave axis. Where the original master-slave axis relationship in cam is broken, the slave axis starts phase synchronization with the master axis according to the setting of MC_Phasing.

IF (PhasingActive = TRUE) AND (MC_CamIn1_Insync = TRUE) THEN

MC_Phasing_Execute := TRUE;

END_IF

MC_Phasing(

Master:= Axis_Master, Slave:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_Phasing_Execute, PhaseShift:= MC_Phasing_PhaseShift, Velocity:= MC_Phasing_Velocity, Acceleration:= MC_Phasing_Acc, Deceleration:= MC_Phasing_Dec, Jerk:= , Done=> MC_Phasing_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

7.8.2.9 Changing Current Position in Movement

To change the current position of the axis in the coordinate system to the specified target position in movement, change the current feedback position to the specified target position. In this example, the interactive influence of the function blocks MC_MoveRelative and MC_SetPosition is explained.

Two programming languages, ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST), are provided in the following example.

• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Variable Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|---|
| Axis_Virtual | AXIS_REF_VIR TUAL_SM3 | - | Relevant variables of axis |
| StartFlag | BOOL | FALSE | If this variable is TRUE and axis communication is normal, Servo On will be activated with the subsequent actions being performed |
| MC_Power0_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Home0_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_MoveRel_Distance | LREAL | 8000 | Target relative position of MC_MoveRelative |
| MC_MoveRel_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_MoveRelative output Done; TRUE when relative positioning is complete |
| MC_MoveRel_Busy | BOOL | FALSE | Variable of MC_MoveRelative output Busy; TRUE when the instruction is triggered and executed |
| MC_SetPosition_Execute | BOOL | FALSE | If TRUE, MC_SetPosition is executed |
| MC_SetPosition_Position | LREAL | 3000 | The absolute position or relative distance changed by MC_SetPosition |
| MC_SetPosition_Mode | BOOL | TRUE | MC_SetPosition is to set the axis position to be the absolute or relative position |
| MC_SetPosition_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_SetPosition output Done; TRUE when position is modified |

Timing diagram
 StartFlag
 MC_Power0_Status
 MC_Hone0_Done
 MC_MoveRel_Done
 MC_MoveRel_Busy
 MC_SetPosition_Execute
 MC_SetPosition_Lexecute
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 11000
 1100

• LD language

.....

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the axis communication is normal or not.

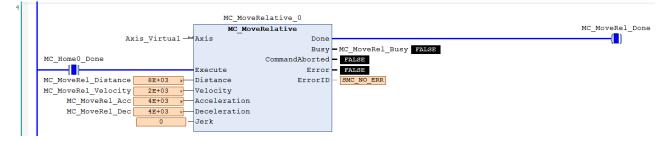
If normal, set the axis to the state of Servo On.

| 2 | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|------------------|
| | | Μ | C_Power_0 | |
| | | | MC_Power | MC_Power0_Status |
| | Axis_Virtual 🛁 | Axis | Status | (1) |
| | | | bRegulatorRealState | TRUE |
| | MC_Power0_Enable | | bDriveStartRealState | TRUE |
| | | Enable | Busy | TRUE |
| | | | Error | FALSE |
| | MC_Power0_RegulatorOn | | ErrorID | SMC_NO_ERR |
| | | bRegulatorOn | | |
| | | | | |
| | MC_Power0_DriveStart | | | |
| | | bDriveStart | | |
| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | |

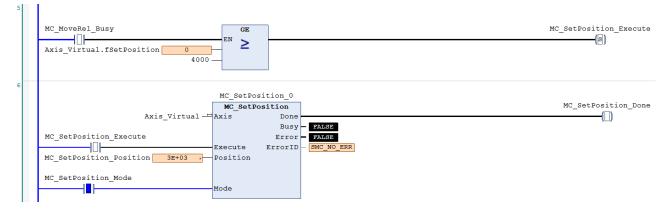
If it is in the state of Servo On with unsure starting point, perform homing once.



After homing is completed, execute MC_MoveRelative.



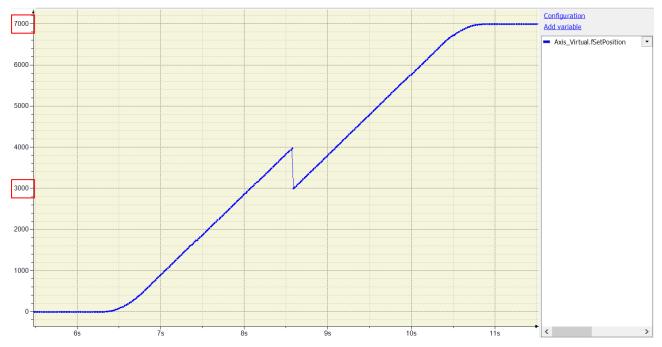
When the current position of the axis passes 4000, execute MC_SetPosition (Mode = Relative, Distance = 3000) and change the current position to be the specified target position.



According to the above settings, the current position of the axis in the coordinate system is changed to the relative target position in movement control, and the final position reaches 11000 as changed (11000 = 4000 + 3000 + (8000 - 4000)). The execution has no influence on the displacement of the physical mechanism in MC_MoveRelative operation, and the moving distance is the same as the set originally, which is 8000 (8000 = (4000 - 0) + (11000 - 7000)).



The difference between the picture below and the picture above is that the Mode of MC_SetPoition is changed to Absolute (Position = 3000), and the current position of the axis in the coordinate system is changed to the absolute target position, and the final position reaches 7000 after the change (7000 = 3000 + (8000 - 4000)), the execution of the change command position will not affect the displacement of the physical movement mechanism in the MC_MoveRelative operation, and the moving distance is the same as the original setting of 8000 (8000 = (4000 - 0) + (7000 - 3000)).



• ST language

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the axis communication is normal or not.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
IF Axis_Virtual.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;
MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;
END_IF
```

END_IF

If normal, set the axis to the state of Servo On.

```
MC_Power_0(
```

Axis:= Axis_Virtual, Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power0_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

If it is in the state of Servo On with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN
MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;
```

END_IF

MC_Home_0(

Axis:= Axis_Virtual, Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home0_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

After homing is completed, execute MC_MoveRelative. The target position for relative displacement = 8000.

MC_MoveRelative(

Axis:= Axis_Virtual, Execute:= MC_Home0_Done, Distance:= MC_MoveRel_Distance, Velocity:= MC_MoveRel_Velocity, Acceleration:= MC_MoveRel_Acc, Deceleration:= MC_MoveRel_Dec, Jerk:= , Done=> MC_MoveRel_Done, Busy=> MC_MoveRel_Busy, CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

When the current position of the axis passes 4000, execute MC_SetPosition (Mode = Relative, Distance = 3000) and change the current position to be the specified target position.

IF (MC_MoveRel_Busy = TRUE) AND (Axis_Virtual.fSetPosition >= 4000) THEN

MC_SetPosition_Execute := TRUE; END_IF

MC_SetPosition(

Axis:= Axis_Virtual, Execute:= MC_SetPosition_Execute, Position:= MC_SetPosition_Position, Mode:= MC_SetPosition_Mode, Done=> MC_SetPosition_Done, Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

7.8.2.10 Performing Superimposition during Gear Engagement

Perform MC_MoveSuperImposed on the designated slave axis while the master and slave axes engage with each other. The final target position of the slave axis will be the relative displacement to the master axis according to the gear ratio plus the specific distance superimposed during movement.

Two programming languages, ladder diagram (LD) and structured text (ST), are provided in the following example.

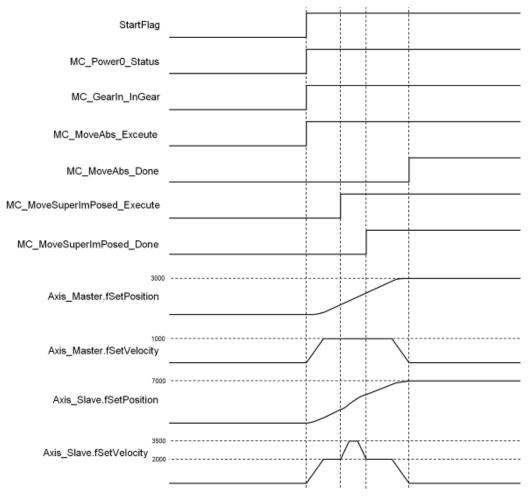
• Main variables used in programming

| Name | Variable Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| Axis_Master | AXIS_REF_ VIRTUAL_SM3 | - | Master-related axis variables |
| Axis_Slave | AXIS_REF_ VIRTUAL_SM3 | - | Slave-related axis variables |
| StartFlag | BOOL | FALSE | If this variable is TRUE and axis communication is normal, Servo On will be activated with the subsequent actions being performed |
| MC_Power0_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for master; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Power1_Status | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Power output Status for slave; TRUE when Servo On |
| MC_Home0_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for master; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_Home1_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_Home output Done for slave; TRUE when homing is completed |
| MC_GearIn_InGear | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_GearIn output InGear; TRUE when the engagement is completed |
| MC_GearIn_RatioNumerator | DINT | 2 | Numerator of the gear ratio between the master and slave axes |
| MC_GearIn_RatioDenominator | UDINT | 1 | Denominator of the gear ratio between the master and slave axes |
| MC_MoveAbs_Execute | BOOL | FALSE | MC_MoveAbsolute is executed when this variable is TRUE, |
| MC_MoveAbs_Position | LREAL | 3000 | Specify the absolute target position of the master axis |
| MC_MoveAbs_Velocity | LREAL | 1000 | Specify the target velocity of the master axis |

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Name | Variable Type | Initial Value | Annotation |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|--|
| MC_MoveAbs_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_MoveAbsolute output Done for master; TRUE when absolute positioning is completed. |
| MC_MoveAbs_Busy | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_MoveAbsolute output Busy for master; TRUE when the instruction is executed |
| MC_MoveSuperImposed_Exec ute | BOOL | FALSE | MC_MoveSuperImposed is executed when this variable is TRUE |
| MC_MoveSuperImposed_Done | BOOL | FALSE | Variables of MC_MoveSuperImposed output Done for slave; TRUE when superimposition is completed. |
| MC_MoveSuperImposed_Dista nce | LREAL | 1000 | Specify the superimposed displacement of the slave axis |
| MC_MoveSuperImposed_ VelocityDiff | LREAL | 1500 | Specify the relative velocity of the slave axis during superimposition compared to the master axis |

• Timing diagram

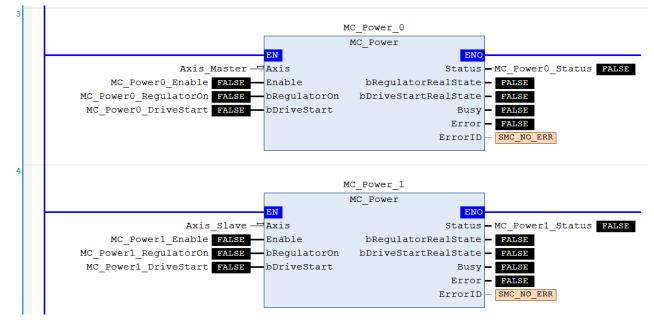


• LD language

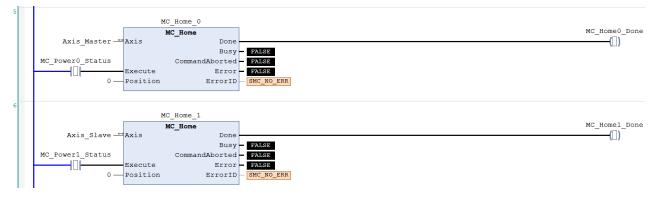
Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and the slave axis is normal or not.



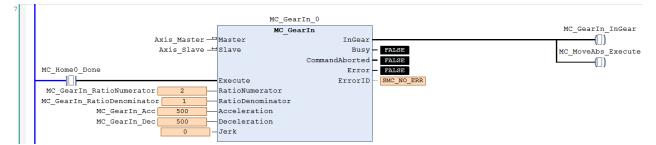
If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.



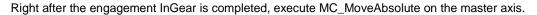
If the axes are in the state of Servo On with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

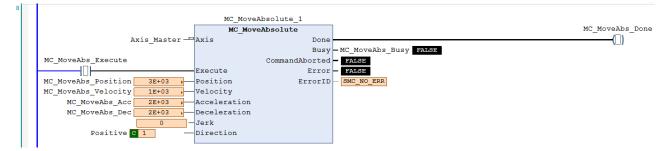


AX-8 Series Operation Manual

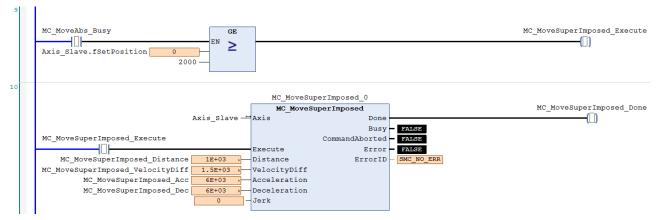


After homing of the master axis is completed, execute MC_GearIn to establish gear synchronization between the axes.





As for the slave axis, MC_MoveSuperImposed is executed when it moves in the manner of engagement to the preset triggering position 2000, in which the slave axis will move at a distance of the preset target position derived from the original gear ration plus the superimposed displacement.



Based on the settings above, the slave axis moves at a velocity set when superimposition is implemented on it and to the final target position which is the relative displacement to the master axis according to the gear ratio plus the specific distance superimposed during movement.

In the figure below, the moving distance of the master axis is 3000. As for the slave axis, its original target position is 6000 as derived from the gear ratio of 1:2; however, the target position increases to 7000 because an extra distance of 1000 is superimposed on the slave axis. During engagement, the master axis moving at the velocity 1000 and the slave axis at 2000. Yet, the velocity of the slave axis becomes 3500 (original velocity 2000 plus VelocityDiff 1500) during superimposition.



• ST language

Set StartFlag to True, then it will check whether the communication of the master axis and the slave axis is normal or not.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
```

```
IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN

MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;

MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;

MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;

END_IF

IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN

MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;

MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;

MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;

END_IF
```

END_IF

If normal, the master and slave axes are then set to the state of Servo On.

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master, Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power0_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_Power_1(

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable, bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn, bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart, Status=> MC_Power1_Status, bRegulatorRealState=> , bDriveStartRealState=> , Busy=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

If the axes are in the state of Servo On with unsure starting point, perform homing once.

IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN

```
MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;

END_IF

```
MC_Home_0(
```

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home0_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

MC_Home_1(

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute, Position:= 0, Done=> MC_Home1_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

After homing of the master axis is completed, execute MC_GearIn to establish gear synchronization between the axes.

MC_GearIn(

Master:= Axis_Master, Slave:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_Home0_Done, RatioNumerator:= MC_GearIn_RatioNumerator, RatioDenominator:= MC_GearIn_RatioDenominator, Acceleration:= MC_GearIn_Acc, Deceleration:= MC_GearIn_Dec, Jerk:= , InGear=> MC_GearIn_InGear, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

```
IF MC_GearIn_InGear = TRUE THEN
```

```
MC_MoveAbs_Execute := TRUE;
```

END_IF

Right after the engagement InGear is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute on the master axis.

```
MC_MoveAbsolute(
```

Axis:= Axis_Master, Execute:= MC_MoveAbs_Execute, Position:= MC_MoveAbs_Position, Velocity:= MC_MoveAbs_Velocity, Acceleration:= MC_MoveAbs_Acc, Deceleration:= MC_MoveAbs_Dec, Jerk:= , Direction:= Positive, Done=> MC_MoveAbs_Done, Busy=> MC_MoveAbs_Busy, CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>);

As for the slave axis, MC_MoveSuperImposed is executed when it moves in the manner of engagement to the preset triggering position 2000, in which the slave axis will move at a distance of superimposing the specified displacement on the preset target position of the original gear ratio.

```
IF MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE THEN
IF Axis_Slave.fSetPosition >= 2000 THEN
MC_MoveSuperImposed_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
END_IF
```

```
MC_MoveSuperImposed(
```

Axis:= Axis_Slave, Execute:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Execute, Distance:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Distance, VelocityDiff:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_VelocityDiff, Acceleration:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Acc, Deceleration:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Dec, Jerk:= , Done=> MC_MoveSuperImposed_Done, Busy=> , CommandAborted=> , Error=> , ErrorID=>); MEMO

7



Chapter 8 OPC UA Server

Table of Contents

| OP | C UA Server | 8-2 |
|-----|--|---|
| .1 | Creating a Project for OPC UA Access | 8-2 |
| Cor | nnection Settings | 8-4 |
| .1 | Setting up a Connection with UaExpert | 8-4 |
| Set | ting up an Encrypted Connection | 8-7 |
| .1 | Setting up User Account and Password | 8-7 |
| .2 | CODESYS Security Agent | 8-8 |
| .3 | Setting up an Encrypted Connection with Prosys OPC UA Client | 8-10 |
| .4 | Setting up an Encrypted Connection with UaExpert | 8-14 |
| | .1 Cor .1 .1 .1 .2 .3 | Connection Settings. .1 Setting up a Connection with UaExpert. Setting up an Encrypted Connection .1 Setting up User Account and Password .2 CODESYS Security Agent .3 Setting up an Encrypted Connection with Prosys OPC UA Client |

8.1 OPC UA Server

The standard installation of DIADesigner-AX includes an OPC UA server. You can use it to access the variable interface of the controller via a client. The OPC UA server communicates with connected OPC UA clients over a separate TCP connection. Therefore, the connections should be examined again separately for security purpose. Currently the OPC UA server can be safeguarded by using encrypted communication to protect the client and OPC UA user management. Details about the settings can be found in the following sections.

Below are features supported by the OPC UA server:

- Browse through data types and variables
- Standard read / write services
- Notification of value changes (focus on subscription and monitored items)
- Encrypted communication according to OPC UA standard (profile: Basic256SHA256)

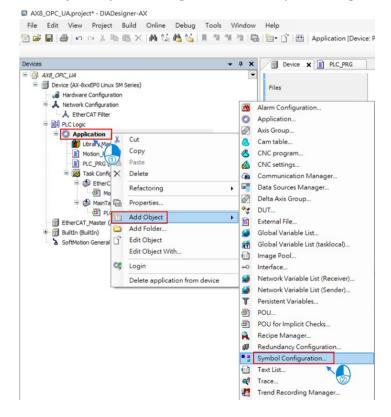
8.1.1 Creating a Project for OPC UA Access

Before using OPC UA server, the first thing is creating a project for OPC UA access. Follow the steps below:

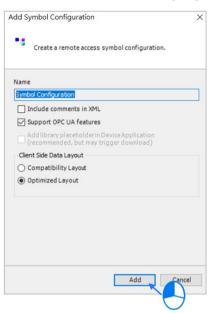
- 1. Create a new DIADesigner-AX project.
- 2. Declare some variables of different types in **PLC_PRG** program.

| PLC_PRG X | | | | | | | - |
|----------------------------|------------------|-------|----------------|---------|---------|---|----|
| Device.Application.PLC_PRG | | | | | | | |
| Expression | Туре | Value | Prepared value | Address | Comment | | N. |
| wval1 | WORD | 0 | | | | 1 | |
| dwval2 | DWORD | 0 | | | | | |
| 🗇 bval3 | BOOL | FALSE | | | | | |
| 🗄 🔌 aryval4 | ARRAY [020] OF B | | | | | | |

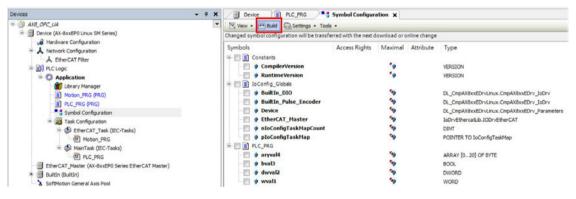
3. Go to Application > Add Object > Symbol Configuration to add a Symbol Configuation object.



4. Select Support OPC UA features and then click Add on the setting page of Add Symbol Configuration.



5. The tab **Symbol Configuration** appears in the setting window with a warning message. Click **Build** then the projects and variables are displayed in a tree structure. The warning message disappears after the click.



6. Select the variables whereof configuration and monitoring by OPC UA clients are allowed. Specify the access rights of each variable and then click **Build** again to complete the setting.

| Symbol Configuration X | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|----------------------|--|--------|
| 📉 View 🔹 🛗 Build 🛛 🛗 Settings 🔹 Tools | • | | | |
| Changed symbol configuration will be transf | erred with the next d | ownload or online ch | ange | |
| Symbols | Access Rights | Maximal Attrib | ute Type | Member |
| Constants | | | | |
| CompilerVersion | | * @ | VERSION | |
| RuntimeVersion | * * | * * | VERSION | |
| 🖶 🔳 📄 IoConfig_Globals | | | | |
| - BuiltIn_DIO | | ** | DL_CmpAX8xxEDrvLinux.CmpAX8xxEDrv_IoDrv | |
| - 🗇 🖗 BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder | | | DL_CmpAX8xxEDrvLinux.CmpAX8xxEDrv_IoDrv | |
| Device | | | DL_CmpAX8xxEDrvLinux.CmpAX8xxEDrv_Parameters | s |
| V Ø EtherCAT_Master | * | ** | IoDrvEthercatLib.IODrvEtherCAT | |
| nIoConfigTaskMapCount | | | DINT | |
| V 🖗 pIoConfigTaskMap | See | - | POINTER TO IoConfigTaskMap | |
| E PLC PRG | | | | |
| rval4 | * | | ARRAY [020] OF BYTE | |
| al3 | * | - | BOOL | |
| - 🗸 🛊 dwval2 | N | - | DWORD | |
| vval1 | N | 50 | WORD | |

7. Lastly, download the project to the AX-8 Series PLC.

8-3

8.2 Connection Settings

8.2.1 Setting up a Connection with UaExpert

Connect the client to the OPC UA server using unencrypted connection. The following illustrates how to set up the connection between the OPC UA server and the client, **UaExpert**. The steps can also be applied to other OPC UA clients.

The OPC UA client, UaExpert, is freely accessible here:

https://www.unified-automation.com/downloads/opc-ua-clients.html.

- 1. Double-click to start UaExpert.
- 2. Right-click Servers and then click Add to open the Add Server window.

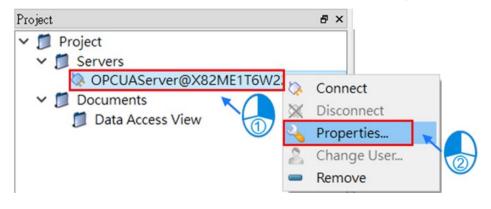
| Unified Automation UaExpert - The OPC Unified A | rchitecture Client - N | lewProject |
|--|------------------------|------------|
| File View Server Document Settings Help | | |
| | 💊 🚨 🗈 🛛 | |
| Project 🚽 🗗 🗙 | Data Access View | |
| ✓ | # Server | Node Id |
| Servers Docum Docum Data Cess View | | |

3. Go to Custom Discovery > <Double click to Add Server...> > Enter URL: enter opc.tcp://192.168.0.10 and click OK.

| Add Serve | | ? | 0 |
|---|--|-----------|------|
| Configuration Na | me | | |
| KI Store | Default | | |
| Discovery | Advanced | | |
| Endpoint Filte | No Filter | | • |
| > 😧 Loca ~ 🏵 Glob @ < ~ 🏵 Reve @ < ~ 🏵 Cust @ < O Rece | ersOnNetwork Network al Discovery Server Double click to Add GDS Server > rse Discovery Double click to Add Reverse Discovery > om Discovery Double click to Add Server > ntly Used Enter URL | × ing: | |
| Auth Auth Auth Userna Passwo Certifi | me 2 | | re |
| Private | Кеу | | |
| Connect Aut | matically | | |
| | | OK Ca | ncel |

- Add Server ? X Configuration Name PKI Store Default Discovery Advanced Endpoint Filter: No Filter Local > 🔍 ServersOnNetwork > 😪 Local Network ✓ Global Discovery Server < Double click to Add GDS Server... > ✓ S Reverse Discovery Souther Control of the Add Reverse Discovery... > Custom Discovery Souther states of the second secon opc.tcp://192.168.0.10 OPCUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 (opc.tcp://192.168.0.10) None - None (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) Recently Used Authentication Settings Anonymous Username Store Password Certificate C Private Key Connect Automatically OK Cancel
- 4. The window below pops up right after. You can find **AX-816E** under **opc.tcp://192.168.0.10.** Click **OK** to close the window. As mentioned, we are using the unencrypted connection so only the node **None-None** is detected.

5. To edit the server properties, go back to the starting page. Expand the option under **Project**. Then right-click **OPCUAServer@X82ME1Txxxx** and select **Properties...** to open the **Server Settings** window.



6. Rewrite Endpoint Url as opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840. Click OK to close the window.

| Configuration Name | OPCUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 | |
|--------------------------|---|------|
| 'KI Store | Default | |
| Server Information | | _ |
| Endpoint Url | opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840 | 9 |
| Reverse Connect | | |
| Security Settings | | |
| Security Policy | None | ٠ |
| Message Security Mode | None | • |
| Authentication Setti | ngs | |
| Anonymous | | |
| Username | s | tore |
| Password | | |
| Certificate | | |
| O Private Key | | |
| Session Settings | | |
| Session Name | urn:TWTC1NB0194:UnifiedAutomation:UaExpen | rt |

7. Right-click **OPCUAServer@X82ME1Txxxx** and select **Connect** on the context menu.

| Project | | | 8 | × |
|-------------------|---|-------------|---|----|
| 🗸 📁 Project | | | | |
| ✓ | | | | |
| 🔅 OPCUAServer@ | 0 | Connect | | ור |
| V 🗊 Documents | × | Disconnect | | - |
| 📁 Data Access Vie | 2 | Properties | | |
| | 2 | Change User | | |
| | - | Remove | | |

8. After the connection is built, you are able to change the variables via OPC UA client. Drag the variable you would like to modify from **Address Space** to **Data Access View**. Then double-click the variables in the column **Value** to edit.

| Project | đΧ | Da | ata Access View | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|----|----|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|--------------------------|------------|
| ✓ [™] Project | | # | Server | Node Id | Display Name | Value | Datatype | urce Timestar | rver Timestar | Statuscode |
| ✓ | | 1 | OPCUASer | NS4 String var | arvval4 | {0,0,0,0,0,0,0, | Bvte | | PM 03:55:0 | |
| OPCUAServer@AX-816EP0ME1T | | 2 | OPCUASer | NS4 String var NS4 String var | bval3 | false | Boolean | PM 03:55:0 | PM 03:55:0 | Good |
| ✓ | | 3 | OPCUASer | NS4 String var | dwval2 wval1 | 0 | UInt32 UInt16 | PM 03:55:1 | PM 03:55:1 PM 03:55:1 | Good |
| 📁 Data Access View | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Address Space | ēΧ | | | | | | | | | |
| 😏 No Highlight | - | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗀 Root | | | | | | | | | | |
| ✓ | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗸 👶 DeviceSet | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗸 👶 Delta-x86-Linux-SM | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗸 👶 Resources | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗸 👶 Application | | | | | | | | | | |
| DeviceManual | | | | | | | | | | |
| DeviceRevision | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 뤚 GlobalVars | | | | | | | | | | |
| HardwareRevision | | | | | | | | | | |
| Manufacturer | | | | | | | | | | |
| Model | | | | | | | | | | |
| 🗸 👶 Programs | | | | | | | | | | |
| V 🐥 PLC_PRG | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 💷 aryval4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 💷 bval3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 💷 dwval2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| > 💷 wval1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| RevisionCounter | | | | | | | | | | |
| SerialNumber | | | | | | | | | | |

8.3 Setting up an Encrypted Connection

To have a secure and encrypted connection, it is recommended to follow the instructions below to create certificates for OPC UA server and OPC UA client.

8.3.1 Setting up User Account and Password

Account and password setup for OPC UA server is the same as the way for controller. Refer to **section 4.2.1.8** of this manual for more information.

Below is an example of setting up a new account as guest. The default account is Administrator. And here you can see two accounts in the image.

| Communication Settings | Users and Groups 🔹 🖻 🔞 Device user: Administrator | |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| Applications | Synchronized mode: All changes are immediately downloaded to the device. | |
| 3ackup and Restore | S Administrator S guest | • Add |
| files | | Import. Edit |
| og | | • Delete |
| PLC Settings | | |
| PLC Shell | | |
| icensed Software Metrics | | |
| System Settings | | |
| Right Settings | | |
| System Parameters | Groups | |
| System IEC Objects | Sei Administrator F Sei derived from 'Developer' | Add Import. |
| ask Deployment | S has user member 'Administrator' S eveloper | 2 Edit |
| Status | Severyone Severyone Severyone Severyone | Delete |
| Information | 9 has user member 'guest' 9 99 Service | |
| | Watch | |

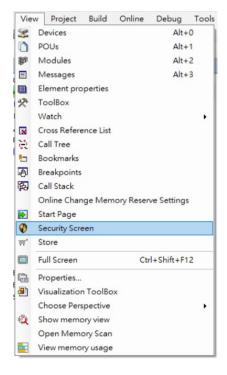
8.3.2 CODESYS Security Agent

In order to encrypt data and exchange it with the client safely, when the connection is established for the first time, a certificate which has been classified as trusted by the client is required for the OPC UA server. And, CODESYS Security Agent is indispensable for creating a certificate for DIADesigner-AX

- 1. Visit CODESYS Store to download the software for free: https://store.codesys.com/matrikon-flex-opc-ua-editor.html?___SID=U
- 2. Install the add-on **CODESYS Security Agent**. After installation, you should restart DIADesigner-AX. The window after installation is as shown below:

| Refresh | | | Sort by | Name 🗸 | Install |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|----------------------------|--|
| Vame | Version | Installation date | Update info | License info | Uninstall, |
| AX-8xxEP0 Series | 1.0.0.0 | 2019/12/2 | | No license required | Details |
| CODESYS Security Agent | 1.1.0.0 | 2019/12/11 | | No license required | |
| CODESYS SoftMotion | 4.6.0.0 | 2019/12/11 | | No license required | Updates |
| Delta_ASD_A2_M_Package | 1.0.0.2 | 2019/12/2 | | License info not available | - |
| Delta_AX-308EA0MA1T_Package | 0.30.0.9 | 2019/12/11 | | No license required | Search Updates |
| Delta_VFD_C2000_Package | 1.0.0.1 | 2019/12/2 | | License info not available | Download |
| Delta_VFD_MH300_Package | 1.0.0.0 | 2019/12/2 | | License info not available | - |
| Delta_VFD_MS300_Package | 1.0.0.2 | 2019/12/2 | | License info not available | CODESYS Store Reting CODESYS Store |
| C] Display versions | s in backeree | ind | | > | Close |

 Open DIADesigner-AX to create a project. Click View on the toolbar and then select Security Screen to open the setting page.



4. Select the **Devices** tab.

100 -

| Jser | 0 | Information | 54 | Information | Issued for | Issued by | Valid from | Valid until | Thumbprin |
|---------|---|--|----------|-------------|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| Project | 1 | Click the 'Refresh' button to load the data. | \times | | | | | | |
| | | | 23 | | | | | | |
| Devices | | | | | | | | | |

5. Click 🧔 to refresh and all services that require a certificate are listed on the right-hand side of the window.

| User | Φ | Information | Ea | Information | Issued for | Issued by |
|---------|----|--------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| | 54 | E Device | × | OPC UA Server (not available) | | |
| Project | | Own Certificates | Taber 1 | Encrypted Application (not available) | | |
| Devices | 9 | Trusted Certificates | 123 | Encrypted Communication | X82ME1T6W22160002 | X82ME1T6W22 |
| Devices | | Unstrusted Certificates | | | | |
| | | Quarantined Certificates | | | | |

6. Click [to open the **Certificate Settings** window for creating a new certificate for the device.

a. Click the service OPU UA Server (not available).

| User | 0 | Information | | | 11 | Information | | Issued for | Issued by |
|---------|-----|-------------|--------------------|-------|------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| | -54 | E Device | | | × | OPC UA Server | (not available) | | |
| Project | | Own Cer | tificates | | 41.1 | Encrypted Appl | cation (not available) | | |
| Devices | | Trusted 0 | Certificates | | 횐 | Encrypted Com | munication | X82ME1T6W22160002 | X82ME1T6W221 |
| Devices | | C Unstruste | ed Certificates | | | | | | |
| | | Quaranti | ned Certificates | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | _ | | | | |
| | | | Certificate Settin | igs | | | × | | |
| | | | Key length (bit) | | | 3072 | ~ | | |
| | | | Validity period (| days) | | 365 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

b. Select Encrypted Application.

| User | 0 | Information | | Information | | Issued for |
|---------|---|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------|---|-------------------------------|
| Project | 1 | 😑 🚮 Device | | X OPC UA Se | erver | OPCUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 |
| Project | | Own Certificates | 57 | 17 Encrypted | Application (not available | |
| Devices | | Trusted Certificates | \sim | | Communication | X82ME1T6W22160002 |
| Derices | | Unstrusted Certificates | 3 | | | |
| | | Quarantined Certificate | s | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | Certificate Settings | | × | |
| | | | Key length (bit) | 3072 | ~ | |
| | | | | 3072 | No. No. No. No. No. No. No. No. No. No. | |
| | | | Validity period (days) | 365 | | |
| | | | | | | |

7. Then you have created two certificates OPC UA Server and Encrypted Application on the controller^{*1}.

| User | Information | 1 | Information | Issued for | Issued by |
|---------|--------------------------|----------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| - | The Device | × | 🙀 OPC UA Server | OPCUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 | OPCUASer |
| Project | Own Certificates | | Encrypted Application | X82ME1T6W22160002 | X82ME1T6 |
| Devices | Trusted Certificates | 1 | Encrypted Communication | X82ME1T6W22160002 | X82ME1T6 |
| Devices | Unstrusted Certificates | | | | |
| | Quarantined Certificates | | | | |

*1: You need to power off the controller and restart again to enable the certificates.

8.3.3 Setting up an Encrypted Connection with Prosys OPC UA Client

In this section, we use **Prosys OPC UA Client V3.2.0** as an example for connection to the OPC UA server. The following illustrates how to set up the connection and the steps can also be applied to other OPC UA clients.

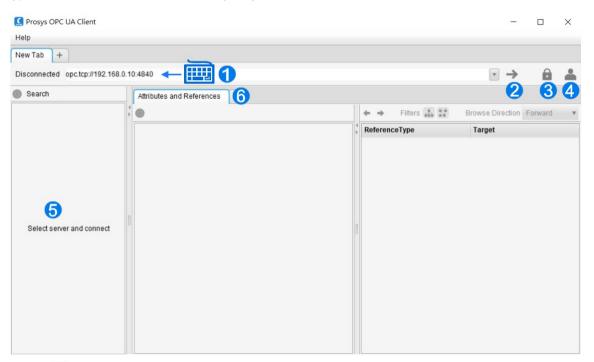
The OPC UA client, Prosys OPC UA Client, is freely accessible here:

https://downloads.prosysopc.com/opc-ua-client-downloads.php.

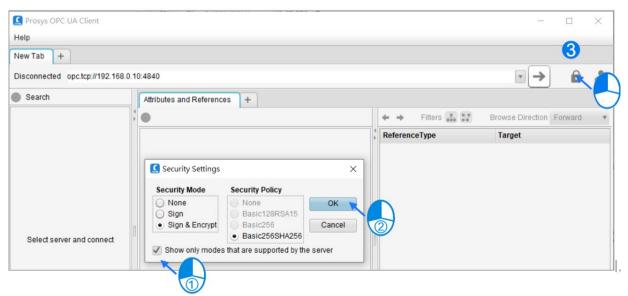
1. Double-click

to start **Prosys OPC UA Client**.

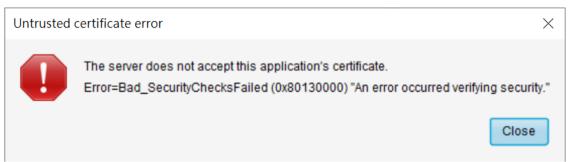
2. Type in the OPC UA Server IP address opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840 in the field of Disconnected as shown in (1).



3. Click ③ 🔒 to open the Security Settings window (only the connection type Basic256SHA256 is supported). Check Show only modes that are supported by the server and select both Sign & Encrypt and Basic256SHA256 in the window. Then click OK.



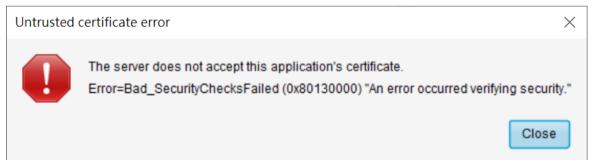
After click **OK**, you will see a warning message **Untrusted certificate error**, stating that **the server does not accept this application's certificate**.



4. Click ④ 📥 to set up Username and Password in the User Authentication setting window. Click Apply after the setting is done and then click ② 🍑 to connect to the controller.

| S Prosys OPC UA Client | | - 0 | × |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------|---|
| Help | | | |
| New Tab + | | 2 (| 4 |
| Disconnected opc.tcp://192.168.0 |).10:4840 | | |
| Search | Attributes and References + | | |
| | ► → Filters 🚠 🔛 | Se Direction | Ŧ |
| | ReferenceType | Target | |
| | User Authentication | 1 | |
| | Anonymous Username and Password Certificate and Private Key Apply Cancel | | |
| | Username Administrator Password *** | | |
| | | | |
| Select server and connect | | | |
| | | | |

You will see a warning message **Untrusted certificate error** stating that the server does not accept this application's certificate. It is because ProsysOpcUaClient is not a trusted certificate for the AX-8 Series PLC.



5. To deal with the error described in point 3 and 4, go back to DIADesigner-AX. Click View on the toolbar and go to Security Screen > Quarantined Certificates. Find ProsysOpcUaClient and drag it to the folder Trusted Certificates. Note that you must make sure the AX-8 Series PLC has been connected to the software beforehand.

| User | • | Information | 2. | Information | Issued for | Issued by | Valid fro |
|-----------------|------------|---|------------|-------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Project | 1 | B Device | × | ĕ ₽ | ProsysOpcUaClient | ProsysOpcUaClient | 2/9/2023 |
| Devices | | Own Certificates Trusted Certificates Unstrusted Certificates | 1 | | D) | | |
| | | Quarantined Certificates | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | - | | | | | |
| | | - | | | | | |
| Security Screen | × m Device | • | | | | | |
| Security Screen | | | 5 * | Information | Insued for | terund by | Valid fro |
| | Φ | Information | [] | Information | Issued for | Issued by | |
| Jser | | E Device | × | Information | Issued for ProsysOpcUaClient | Issued by ProsysOpcUaClient | |
| Jser Project | Φ | | | | | | |
| Jser | Φ | Device Own Certificates | × | | | | Valid fro 2/9/2023 1 |

6. Back to ProsysOpcUaClient and you can find the connection to OPC UA Server showned in (5). Then you can edit the settings in the controller through ProsysOpcUaClient in (6).

| Help | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| OPCUAServer@X82ME1 | 1T6W22160002 + | | | | |
| Running opc.tcp://192.168 | 0.10:4840 - urn:X82ME1T6W22160 | 002:Delta%20Electronics:Delta-x | 86-Linux-SM:OPCUA:Server | 💌 🗙 🔒 🚢 Admin | istrat |
| Search | Attributes and References | • 6 | | | |
| ► 🧧 Objects | 6 | | ← → Filters | Browse Direction Forward | |
| ▶ 🧰 Types ▶ 🛑 Views | Attribute | Value | ReferenceType | Target | |
| VIEWS | ▶ Nodeld | i=85 | Organizes | DeviceSet | |
| | NodeClass | Object | Organizes | Server | |
| | BrowseName | Objects | HasTypeDefinition | FolderType | |
| 6 | DisplayName | (en-Us) Objects | | | |
| | Description | | | | |
| | WriteMask | NONE (0) | | | |
| | UserWriteMask | NONE (0) | | | |
| | EventNotifier | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

a. User: Administrator

b. User: Guest (not authorized to write)

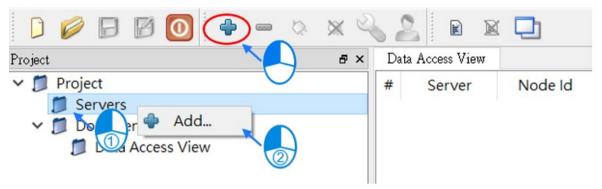
| OPCUAServer@AX-816EP0ME1T + | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Running opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840 - ur | n:AX-816EP0ME1T:Delta%20Elect | ronics:Delta-x86-Linux-SM:OPCUA: | Server 💌 | 🗙 🔒 💄 guest |
| Search | Attributes and References | + | | |
| 0bjects | | | ← → Filters | Browse Direction Forward |
| DeviceSet Delta-x86-Linux-SM | Attribute | Value | ReferenceType | Target |
| V Resources | ▶ Nodeld | ns=4;s= var Delta-x86-Linux | HasTypeDefinition | BaseVariableType |
| Application | NodeClass | Variable | | |
| DeviceManual | BrowseName | 4:dwval2 | | |
| DeviceRevision | DisplayName | (en-Us) dwval2 | | |
| GlobalVars | Error | | | × |
| HardwareRevision | | | | |
| Manufacturer | Diagnostic Info: | Fault: Bad_UserAccessDenied (0x801F0000) " | User does not have permission to | perform the requested operation." |
| Model | | | | |
| V Programs | | | | Close |
| V DLC_PRG | ArrayDimensions | null | | TROTE |
| ► 🔇 aryval4 | AccessLevel | CurrentRead, CurrentWrite | | |
| ► 🥴 bval3 | UserAccessLevel | CurrentRead, CurrentWrite | | |
| dwval2 | MinimumSamplingInterval | 100.0 | | |
| ► 🕄 wval1 | Historizing | false | | |
| ► III RevisionCounter | | | | |
| SerialNumber | | | | |
| SoftwareRevision | | | | |
| | | | | |

8.3.4 Setting up an Encrypted Connection with UaExpert

In this section, we use **UaExpert V1.5** as an example to connect to the OPC UA server. The following illustrates how to set up the connection and the steps can also be applied to other OPC UA clients.

The OPC UA client, UaExpert, is freely accessible here: https://www.unified-automation.com/downloads/opc-ua-clients.html.

- 1. Double-click to start UaExpert.
- 2. Right-click Servers and then click Add to open Add Server window.



3. Go to Custom Discovery > <Double click to Add Server...> > Enter URL: enter opc.tcp://192.168.0.10 and click OK.

| onfiguration Na | | | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|---------|--|---|
| KI Store | Default | | | | |
| Discovery | Advanced | | | | |
| Endpoint Filter | : No Filter | | | | • |
| 🔍 Local | | | | | |
| | ersOnNetwork | | | | |
| > 🕞 Local | Network | | | | |
| 🗸 🗑 Glob | al Discovery Serv | er | | | |
| | Double click to A | | > | | |
| 🗸 🗑 Reve | se Discovery | | | | |
| | Double click to A | dd Povorco Dicc | overv > | | |
| | DOUDIE CIICK TO A | uu neverse Disc | | | |
| | om Discovery | uu neverse Disc | | | |
| 🗸 😪 Custo | | | | | |
| ✓ 😪 Custo ♣ < | om Discovery | | | | |
| ✓ 😪 Custo | om Discovery Double click to A | | ? | | |
| ✓ 😒 Custo ♣ < ⊘ Receit ■ E | om Discovery Double click to A ntly Used nter URL | dd Server > | ? | | |
| ✓ Second ✓ Recent ✓ Enter | om Discovery Double click to An ntly Used nter URL the URL of a comp | dd Server > | ? | | |
| ✓ Second ✓ Recent ✓ Enter | om Discovery Double click to A ntly Used nter URL | dd Server > | ? | | |

4. The window below pops up right after. You can find **AX-816E** under **opc.tcp://192.168.0.10**. Select **Basic256Sha256** and set up **Username** and **Password** in the **Authentication Settings** field. Click **OK** to create an encrypted connection.

| | ? |) |
|---|---|--------|
| onfiguration Name OF | CUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 | |
| KI Store De | afault | |
| Discovery Advan | ced | |
| Endpoint Filter: No H | Filter | • |
| > 😁 Local Netw | ork | ^ |
| 🗸 💽 Global Disc | overy Server | |
| 🗣 < Doubl | e click to Add GDS Server > | |
| 🗸 💽 Reverse Dis | | |
| 🌳 < Doubl | e click to Add Reverse Discovery > | |
| 🗸 💽 Custom Dis | scovery | |
| 🌳 < Doubl | e click to Add Server > | |
| V 🔍 opc.tcp:/ | | |
| V 👰 OPCL | JAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 (opc.tcp://192.168.0.1 | 10) |
| n | | |
| 📫 No | one - None (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) | |
| | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) | |
| 🔒 Ba | | ~ |
| 🔒 Ba | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) | |
| Ba | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) | |
| 🤷 Ba | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) | × , |
| Ba | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed | × , |
| Ba | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed | × , |
| Authentication Set | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed | |
| Ba Ba Recently Us Authentication Set | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings | |
| Ba Ba Recently Us Authentication Set | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed | |
| Ba Ba Recently Us Authentication Set Anonymous Username Password | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings Administrator | |
| Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Certificate | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings Administrator | |
| Authentication Set | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings Administrator | |
| Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Username Password Certificate | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings Administrator | |
| Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Certificate Private Key | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings | |
| Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Username Password Certificate | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings | |
| Authentication Set Authentication Set Authentication Set Certificate Private Key | sic256Sha256 - Sign & Encrypt (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sic256Sha256 - Sign (uatcp-uasc-uabinary) sed tings | |

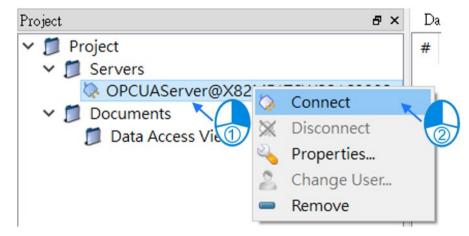
5. To edit the server properties, go back to the starting page. Expand the option under **Project**. Then right-click **OPCUAServer@X8xxxxxx** and select **Properties...** to open the **Server Settings** window.



6. Rewrite the Endpoint Url as opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840. Click OK to close the window.

| | OPCUAServer@X82ME1T6W22160002 |
|---|--------------------------------|
| KI Store | Default |
| Server Information | |
| Endpoint Url | opc.tcp://192.168.0.10:4840 <- |
| Reverse Connect | |
| Security Settings | |
| Security Policy | Basic256Sha256 |
| Message Security Mode | Sign & Encrypt |
| Authentication Setti O Anonymous Username | ngs Administrator |
| Password | ••• |
| | |
| Certificate | |
| Certificate Private Key | |
| 0 | |

7. Right-click **OPCUAServer@X8xxxxxx** and select **Connect** on the context menu.



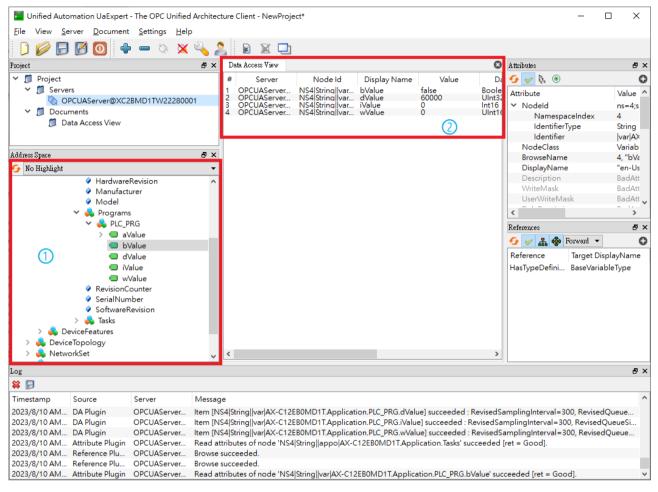
8. You will see a warning message as shown below. Click **Trust Server Certificate**.

| Certificate Validation | | | | ? | > |
|--|-------------------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----|
| Validating the certificat an error: | e of server 'OPCUAServe | r@X82ME1T6 | 5W2216000 | 2' return | .ed |
| BadCertificateUnt | rusted | | | | |
| ertificate Chain | | | | | |
| Name | | Trust Status | 5 | | |
| OPCUAServer@ | X82ME1T6W2216000 | 2 Untrusted | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| ertificate Details | | | | | |
| Errors | al made at factors | 1 | | _ | ^ |
| Error | ok [BadCertificateU | ntrusted] | | _ | |
| Subject Common Name | OPCUAServer@X8 | | 60002 | | |
| | OPCOASEIVERWAN | 211121101122 | 100002 | | |
| Organization | | | | | |
| OrganizationUnit | | | | | |
| Locality | | | | | |
| State | | | | | |
| Country | | | | | |
| DomainComponent | | | | | |
| Issuer | | | _ | | |
| Common Name | OPCUAServer@X8 | 2ME1T6W221 | 160002 | | |
| Organization | | | | | |
| OrganizationUnit | | | | | |
| Locality | | | | | |
| State | | | | | |
| Country | | | | | ~ |
| | | | Trust Server | Certifica | ate |
| | | | | | |
| A | e temporarily for this sessio | C | ntinue | Cancel | |

9. Go back to DIADesigner-AX. Click **View** on the toolbar and open **Security Screen** setting page. Select the **Devices** tab to find **UaExpert** under **Quarantined Certificates**. Drag **UaExpert** to the folder **Trusted Certificates**.

| User | Φ | Information | 📫 Informa | ation Issued for | Issued by |
|---|------------|-----------------------------|-----------|---|---------------------|
| | 1 | E Device | - TXT 🖏 | UaExpert@TWTC1NB0194 | UaExpert@TWTC1NB019 |
| Project | | Own Certificates | | | |
| Devices | | Trusted Certificates | 1 | | |
| Devices | | 🔲 Unstrusted Certificates | | \smile | |
| | | Quarantined Certificates | | | |
| | | + | | | |
| Security Screen ; | K 🕤 Device | + | | | |
| | × Device | Information | 1nforma | ition Issued for | Issued by |
| Jser | Φ | Information | | tion Issued for UaExpert@TWTC1NB0194 | |
| Jser | | | × | | |
| Jser Project | Φ | E Device | × | UaExpert@TWTC1NB0194 | UaExpert@TWTC1NB019 |
| Security Screen : User Project Devices | Φ | Device Own Certificates | × | UaExpert@TWTC1NB0194 | UaExpert@TWTC1NB019 |

10. Repeat step 7 to connect to the OPC UA server as an administrator. After the connection is established, you will see the tree node on the left side and the settings in the controller can be edited through UaExpert.





Chapter 9 Communication

Table of Contents

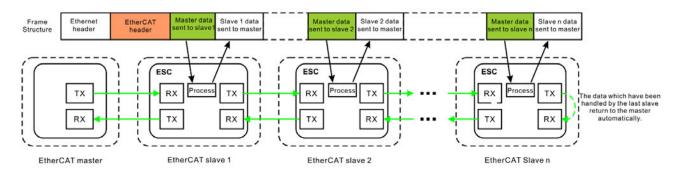
| 9.1 Intr | roduction to EtherCAT Communication9 |)-3 |
|----------|--|-----------------|
| 9.1.1 | Features of EtherCAT Fieldbus | ? -3 |
| 9.1.2 | Setting up EtherCAT Master |) -4 |
| 9.1.3 | Setting up EtherCAT Slave | 9-6 |
| 9.1.4 | Backup Parameters for EtherCAT Slaves | 9-9 |
| 9.1.4 | .1 Data Backup Procedure | 9-9 |
| 9.1.4 | .2 Introduction to Backup and Restore | ·10 |
| 9 | 9.1.4.2.1 Operation for Backup Function | ·12 |
| 9 | 9.1.4.2.2 Operation for Restore Function | ·14 |
| 9.2 Intr | roduction to Modbus Serial Communication9- | 16 |
| 9.2.1 | Modbus Serial Port | -16 |
| 9.2.1 | .1 Adding Delta Modbus COM | -16 |
| 9.2.1 | .2 Setting up Delta Modbus COM | 18 |
| 9.2.2 | Modbus Serial Master | ·20 |
| 9.2.2 | .1 Adding Delta Modbus Master/Slave COM | ·20 |
| 9.2.2 | .2 Setting up Modbus Serial Master | ·23 |
| 9.2.2 | .3 Setting up Modbus Serial Slave | ·26 |
| 9.2.3 | Modbus Serial Slave | -32 |
| 9.2.3 | .1 Adding a Modbus Serial Device | .32 |
| 9.2.3 | .2 Setting up the Modbus Serial Device | 34 |
| 9.3 Intr | roduction to Ethernet Communication9- | 36 |
| 9.3.1 | Ethernet | -36 |
| 9.3.1 | .1 Adding an Ethernet Adapter Device | -36 |
| 9.3.1 | .2 Setting up the Ethernet | 37 |
| 9.3.2 | Modbus TCP Master | 40 |
| 9.3.2 | .1 Adding a Modbus TCP Master/Slave9- | 41 |
| 9.3.2 | .2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Master | 45 |
| 9.3.2 | .3 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave | 46 |
| 9.3.3 | Modbus TCP Slave | ·51 |
| 9.3.3 | .1 Adding a Modbus TCP Slave Device | ·52 |
| 9.3.3 | .2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave Device | -54 |
| 9.4 Eth | erNet/IP9- | 56 |

| 9.4.1 Introduction to EtherNet/IP9-56 |
|---|
| 9.4.1.1 EtherNet/IP Overview9-56 |
| 9.4.1.2 Definition9-56 |
| 9.4.1.3 Features of Ethernet9-57 |
| 9.4.1.3.1 Delta EIP Structure9-57 |
| 9.4.1.3.2 Features of EIP9-57 |
| 9.4.2 EtherNet/IP Scanner Function9-58 |
| 9.4.2.1 Setting up AX-8 Series PLC9-58 |
| 9.4.2.1.1 Hardware Configuration9-58 |
| 9.4.2.1.2 Read-Write Setting for Implicit Messages |
| 9.4.2.1.3 CIP Object Read-Write for Explicit Messages |
| 9.4.3 Adapter Function |
| 9.4.3.1 Create an EDS File9-62 |
| 9.4.3.2 Import an EDS File9-67 |
| 9.4.4 CIP Object9-70 |
| 9.4.4.1 Object list |
| 9.4.4.2 Data Type9-72 |
| 9.4.4.3 Identity Object (Class ID: 01 Hex)9-74 |
| 9.4.4.4 Assembly Object (Class ID: 04 Hex)9-76 |
| 9.4.4.5 TCP/IP Interface Object (Class ID: F5 Hex)9-72 |
| 9.4.4.6 Ethernet Link Object (Class ID : F6 Hex)9-80 |
| 9.4.5 Delta EIP Product List9-83 |
| 9.4.5.1 Delta EIP Product List (Adapters Supported)9-83 |
| 9.4.5.2 Delta EIP Product List (Scanners Supported)9-83 |
| 9.5 Network Security |

9.1 Introduction to EtherCAT Communication

9.1.1 Features of EtherCAT Fieldbus

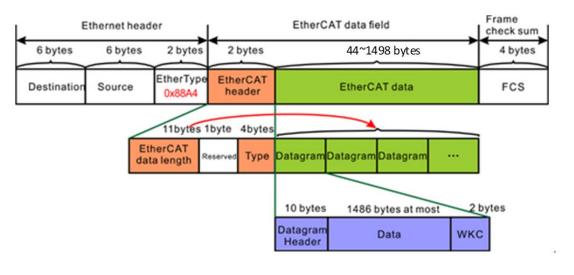
The EtherCAT bus is the Ethernet-based fieldbus. The communication rate of the EtherCAT network is 100Mbps and the distance between two adjacent nodes is within 50 meters. The EtherCAT network is noticeably very different from the general Ethernet network. One EtherCAT network has just one EtherCAT master and EtherCAT slaves contain ESC chips (EtherCAT Slave Controller) specially used for processing EtherCAT communication data and inserting the data which slaves need to transmit to the master into the EtherCAT frame. The last EtherCAT slave in the network will return the data which have been handled to the master in chronological order. See the illustration of data transmission shown below. Thanks to the ESC chips in slaves, the master can make a communication with all slaves in an EtherCAT data frame and thus the communication efficiency is enhanced.



• EtherCAT Communication between the Controller and Slaves

Since the EtherCAT bus is the EtherNet-based fieldbus, the EtherCAT data frame still adopts the UDP/IP Ethernet data frame structure.

EtherCAT data field includes 2 bytes of EtherCAT data header and 44~1498 bytes of EtherCAT data. EtherCAT Data field consists of one or more EtherCAT datagrams. EtherCAT Data can be defined and analyzed in a protocol as long as the master and slaves comply with the protocol. Currently, the mostly used two protocols are COE (CANopen Over EtherCAT) and SOE (Sercos Over EtherCAT). EtherCAT data frame structure is as displayed below.



9.1.2 Setting up EtherCAT Master

This section introduces functions in the tab of EtherCAT_Master.

| General 1 | Autoconfig master/slave | s | Ether CAT. |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Sync Unit Assignment | 2 EtherCAT NIC Settings — | | |
| Log | Destination address (MAC) | FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF | Broadcast Redundancy |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | Source address (MAC) Network name | 00-00-00-00-00-00 | Select |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | O Select network by MAC | | work by name |
| Status | 3 Distributed Clock | | - ⊿ Options 4 |
| Information | Cycle time 4000 Sync offset 20 | ↓us | Use LRW instead of LWR/LRD Messages pertask Automatic restart slaves |
| | Sync window 1 | ÷ µs | |

General

① Autoconfig Master/Slaves: Enable this option to have basic configurations done. Suggested to use this option.

- ② EtherCAT NIC Setting:
 - Destination address (MAC): MAC address of the device in the EtherCAT network that is to receive the telegrams.
 - Source address (MAC): MAC address of the controller (Browse Scan Slave Station and choose ECAT)
 - Network name: Name or MAC of the network, depending on which of the following options is activated.
 - Select network by MAC^{*1}: The network is specified by the MAC ID (The default name is ECAT^{*1}).
 - Select network by name: Network is identified by the network name and the project is device-independent.
 - *1: The default name is ECAT.
- 3 Distributed Clock
 - Cycle time: Master sends out corresponding data to the Slaves in a cycle time specified here.
 - Sync offset: Parameter for setting the delay time between the Distributed Clock time base of the EtherCAT slave and the cycle start of the PLC. With the default value of 20%, the PLC cycle starts 20% of the bus cycle time after the sync interrupt of the slave. For the controller program, 80% of the cycle is always available. Here the Sync offset determines only when the EtherCAT data of the master is exchanged to and from the slaves relative to the time base of the EtherCAT slave.
 - Sync window monitoring: Enabled to monitor the synchronization of the slaves.
 - Sync window: Time for Sync window monitoring.

④ Options

- Use LRW instead of LWR/LRD: Use combined read/write commands/PDO (LRW) instead of separating read (LRD) and write commands (LWR).
- Automatic restart salves: In the case of a communication breakdown, the master immediately attempts to restart the slaves.

Log

Here you can view the PLC log. It lists the events that was recorded on the target system. Refer to **section 4.2.1.5 Log** for more information.

| General | ₹ * + | 🛓 ! 0 🔕 3 🖲 0 | 🜒 15 🕕 0 Search in messages 🔍 🔍 💭 UTC Time 🛒 | ĵ | |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------------|--|---------------|--|
| Sync Unit Assignment | Severity | Time Stamp | Description | Component | |
| Sync Onic Assignment | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:44 | Preparation successful | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| Log | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:44 | Networkadapter opened | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| 77.50 | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:44 | No slaves added to the master | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:44 | Checking slaves: perhaps slave(s) missing, mismatch to configuration or no com I | | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:40 | Preparation successful | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:40 | Networkadapter opened | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:40 | No slaves added to the master | | |
| Status | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:40 | Checking slaves: perhaps slave(s) missing, mismatch to configuration or no com | | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:36 | Preparation successful | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| Information | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:36 | Networkadapter opened | | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:13:36 | No slaves added to the master | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:11:01 | Preparation successful | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:11:01 | Networkadapter opened | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 11:11:01 | No slaves added to the master | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 10:22:42 | Checking slaves: perhaps slave(s) missing, mismatch to configuration or no com | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 10:22:38 | Preparation successful | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 10:22:38 | Networkadapter opened | IoDrvEtherCAT | |
| | 0 | 15.06.2023 10:22:38 | No slaves added to the master | IoDrvEtherCAT | |

• EtherCAT I/O Mapping

Here you can select the bus cycle task for EtherCAT communication. The bus cycle task selected will be synchronized with the specified EtherCAT_Master cycle time.

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the EtherCAT communication time. When the option
 "Use parent bus cycle setting is selected", the system uses the shortest cycle time as the EtherCAT cycle time.

| General | Bus Cycle Options | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---|---|-------------------------|
| | Bus cycle task | EtherCAT_Task | ~ | Recreate required tasks |
| Sync Unit Assignment | _ | Use parent bus cycle setting EtherCAT_Task | | |
| Log | | MainTask | | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | | | | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | | | | |
| Status | | | | |
| Information | | | | |

9.1.3 Setting up EtherCAT Slave

This section introduces functions in the tab of Slave. You can either add slaves from the Product list or scan the network to add the slaves in.

| General | Address | | | Addit | ional — | | | _ |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|---------|-----|
| Expert Process Data | AutoIncaddress | 0 | | _ | Expert sett Optional | ings | Ether | AT. |
| Process Data | ▲ Distributed Clock | | - Local | | | | | |
| Startup Parameters | 2 Select DC | DC-Synch | nronous | | | ~ | | |
| Log | Enable | 4000 | Syncu | unit cycle (µs |) | | | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | Sync0 | | | | | | | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | Sync unit cycle | x 1 | ~ | 4000 | | Cycle time (µs) | | |
| Status | O User-defined | | | 0 | \$ | Shift time (µs) | | |
| Information | Sync1 | | | | | | | |
| | Sync unit cycle | x 1 | ~ | 4000 | * | Cycle time (µs) | | |
| | O User-defined | | | 0 | * | Shift time (µs) | | |
| | 3 ▲ Startup Checking | | | 4 Tir | neouts - | | | |
| | Check vendor ID | | | SDO | access | 2000 | | ms |
| | Check product ID | h | | I -> | P | 3000 | \$ | ms |
| | Check revision num | Der | | P -> | S/S->0 | 10000 | | ms |

- General
 - Address
 - ① EtherCAT address: Final address of the slaves, assigned by the master during bootup. The address is independent of the position of the slave in the network.
 - Distributed Clocks
 - ② Select DC: Cycle time for the data exchange.
 - ③ Startup Checking

| Function | Description | | | |
|-----------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Check vendor ID | Once the system starts, it checks if the vendor ID and product ID are the same as the | | | |
| Check product ID | configured. If not, the system stops without any further operation. | | | |
| Check revision number | Once the system starts, it checks if the revision number is the same as the drop-down list showed. | | | |

Timeouts

| Function | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| SDO access | Once the system starts, the SDO also starts transmitting. Unit: ms |
| $I\toP$ | Switching form Init mode to Pre-operational mode. Unit: ms |
| $P \to S / S \to O$ | Switching from Pre-operational mode to Safe Operational mode. Or switching from Safe-Op mode to Operational mode. Unit: ms |

• Process Data

The data mapping of the EtherCAT network is a cyclic data exchange between the master and slave through the CoEbased PDO mapping. The data that a slave sends to the master are packed in TxPDO and the data that the slave reads from the master are packed in RxPDO. The inputs and outputs on the pages of Select the Outputs and Select the Inputs contain the lists of PDOs which are available for data exchange and can be edited. For ESI file of a device, the PDOs and PDO contents for option have been defined and some PDO contents can be edited by users themselves as defined in ESI.

| General | Select the Outputs | | Select the Inputs | | | |
|----------------------|---|-------------|--------------------------------|--|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Process Data | Name I 16#1600 1st RxPDO Mapping (exclu | Туре | Index | Name I 16#1A00 1st TxPDO Mapping (e | Туре | Index |
| Startup Parameters | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 |
| Log | TargetVelocity | DINT | 16#607A:16#00 16#60FF:16#00 | ActualPosition Velocity actual value | DINT | 16#6064:16#00 16#606C:16#00 |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | TargetTorque ModeOfOperation | INT SINT | 16#6071:16#00 16#6060:16#00 | ActualTorque ModeOfOperationDisplay | INT SINT | 16#6077:16#00 16#6061:16#00 |
| | ✓ 16#1601 2nd RxPDO Mapping | | | ✓ 16#1A01 2nd TxPDO Mapping | | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | Control Word TargetPosition | DINT | 16#6040:16#00 16#607A:16#00 | Status Word ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6041:16#0 16#6064:16#0 |
| Status | 16#1602 3rd RxPDO Mapping (exclu Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | 16#1A02 3rd TxPDO Mapping (e Status Word | UINT | 16#6041:16#0 |
| Information | TargetVelocity | DINT | 16#60FF:16#00 | ActualPosition | DINT | 16#6064:16#0 |
| | Control Word | UINT | 16#6040:16#00 | Velocity actual value | DINT | 16#606C:16#00 |
| | TargetTorque | INT | 16#6071:16#00 | Status Word ActualPosition | UINT | 16#6041:16#00 16#6064:16#00 |
| | | | | ActualPosition | INT | 16#6054:16#0 |

If outputs of the device are activated here (for writing), these outputs can be assigned to project variables in the EtherCAT I/O Mapping window. And if inputs of the device are activated here (for reading), these inputs can be assigned to project variables in the EtherCAT I/O Mapping window. It takes more PLC system resources, if you use more PDOs.

• Startup Parameters

The table shows the commands which have been defined by default in ESI file when the master will read and write values⁻ to the slave in the specific status of EtherCAT network operation. Users can add or reduce or modify commands in the table.

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Function Button | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Add | By specifying new index/subindex entries, a new object can be added to the SDO that is not yet described in the EDS file. This is useful if only an incomplete object directory or none at all is present. |
| Edit | In this window you can change the parameters of the SDO before the SDO is added to the configuration. |
| Move Up | Moves the selected line upwards by one line. |
| Move Down | Moves the selected line downwards by one line. |

| General | 🖶 Add | 📶 Edit 🗙 Delete 🤞 | Move Up 🚸 Move Down | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------|------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| Process Data | Line | Index:Subindex | Name | Value | Bit Length | Abort on Error | Jump to Line on Error | Next Line | Comment |
| Frocess Data | 1 | 16#6060:16#00 | Op mode | 8 | 8 | | | 0 | Op mode |
| Startup Parameters | - 2 | 16#60C2:16#01 | Interpolation time period | 4 | 8 | | | 0 | Interpolation time period |
| | - 3 | 16#60C2:16#02 | Interpolation time index | -3 | 8 | | | 0 | Interpolation time index |
| Log | - 4 | 16#6098:16#00 | Homing method | 35 | 8 | | | 0 | |
| | - 5 | 16#609A:16#00 | Homing acceleration | 100 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| EtherCAT I/O Mapping | 6 | 16#6099:16#01 | Speed during search for switch | 100 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| | - 7 | 16#6099:16#02 | Speed during search for zero | 20 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| EtherCAT IEC Objects | - 8 | 16#212C:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P1-44 | 1 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| Onter | 9 | 16#212D:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P1-45 | 1 | 32 | | | 0 | |
| Status | 10 | 16#230C:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P3-12 | 256 | 16 | | | 0 | |

Click Add button to open the Select Item from Object Directory window. And select the parameter that you'd like to add and then click OK to add the item in.

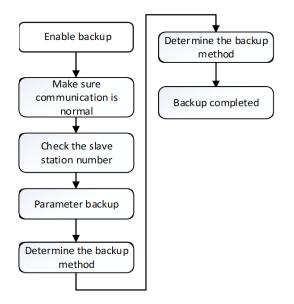
| ndex:Subindex | Name | Flags | Туре | Default | ^ |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-------|-------|---------|--------|
| 16#1600:16#00 | 1st Receive PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1601:16#00 | 2nd Receive PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1602:16#00 | 3rd Receive PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1603:16#00 | 4th Receive PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1A00:16#00 | 1st Transmit PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1A01:16#00 | 2nd Transmit PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1A02:16#00 | 3rd Transmit PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1A03:16#00 | 4th Transmit PDO Mapping | | | | |
| 16#1C12:16#00 | RxPDO assign | | | | |
| 16#1C13:16#00 | TxPDO assign | | | | |
| 16#1C32:16#00 | SM output parameter | | | | |
| 16#1C33:16#00 | SM input parameter | | | | |
| 16#2001:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P0-01 | RW | UINT | | |
| 16#2002:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P0-02 | RW | UINT | | |
| 16#2003:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P0-03 | RW | UINT | | |
| 16#2004:16#00 | DRV's Parameter P0-04 | RW | UDINT | | ~ |
| Name DF | RV's Parameter P0-01 | | | | |
| Index: 16# 20 | 01 🖨 Bit lengt | 16 | | - | ок 🔪 |
| SubIndex: 16# 0 | ◆ Value | 0 | | \$ | Cancel |

9.1.4 Backup Parameters for EtherCAT Slaves

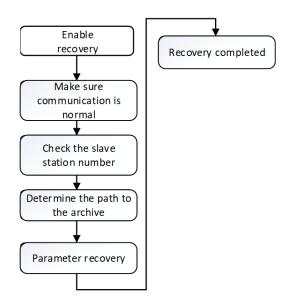
While using EtherCAT communication, we provide customized parameter storage feature for ASDA series servo drives with the backup feature to backup and restore parameters of all slave stations.

9.1.4.1 Data Backup Procedure

Backup procedure



• Recover procedure



If there's any existing axis error while executing parameter backup or recovery, the corresponding slave station would be skipped in the backup/ recovery procedure. After the backup/ recovery of all the rest of slave stations are completed, all the related messages of axis errors would be displayed.

9.1.4.2 Introduction to Backup and Restore

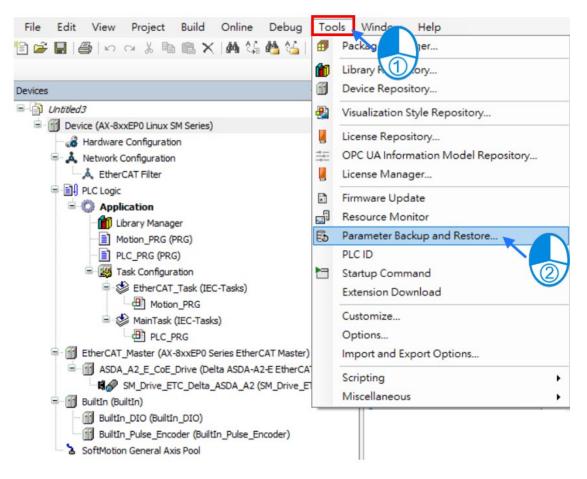
• Supported version for backup and recovery

- AX-8 series firmware version: V1.0.x.x and above
- DIADesigner-AX version: V1.5 and above
- Only models ASDA-A3-E and ASDA-B3-E are supported for parameter backup and recovery.
 - ASDA-A3-E firmware version: V11165 sub 92 and above
 - ASDA-B3-E firmware version: V10665 sub 75 and above

Data that is backed up

Servo parameters P0~P4 (Not including P0.001 and P4.000), P5.0003 + P5.0008~P5.0009 + P5.0020~P5.0030 + P6.0000~P6.0001.

• Enter the parameter backup page



_9

• Enter the parameter restore page

| \geq | | |
|---------|--|--|
| General | Action: | |
| | Backup to File v | |
| | Generate Target Device List from: 1 | |
| | v | |
| | Online Device | |
| | ¥ | |
| | Device Name: | |
| | Device Address: Device Type: | |
| | Device ID: | |
| | Device Version: | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | 🕚 0 Errors 🛕 0 Warnings 🚯 0 Messages 🚔 | |
| | Device Message | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

| Name | Function |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Online Device | Select the target device to connect. |
| Generate Target Device List from | Select EtherCAT project tree Archive File → EtherCAT topology file Online Topology → Online EtherCAT topology |
| Action | Select the target action Backup to File → Backup parameters to files. Backup to SD Card → Backup parameters to external SD cards. Restore from File → Restore parameters from files. Restore from SD Card → Restore parameters from SD cards. |
| | Save the current EtherCAT topology (Archive File) |
| | Execute the backup / restore feature |

• External SD card backup path

External SD card path: /PLC CARD/AX_/SysDup/ECAT/BackupRestore/ (The "_" in the path represents model types. For example, model AX-8 would be defined as AX8 here.)

9_

9.1.4.2.1 Operation for Backup Function

• Parameter backup

- ① Select Device
- 2 Configure EtherCAT topology for the current project
- 3 Set Action to "Backup to File"
- 4 Execute backup

| Parameter Backup and Restore | | - | | × |
|---|---|--------|--------|---------|
| | | | | |
| General ✓ Target Device List ✓ 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) | Action: 3 Backup to File Generate Target Device List from: Current Project Online Device Online Device Device Name: AX-8xxEP0 Device Address: 0005 Device Type: 4102 Device ID: 16F7 0314 Device Version: 1.0.1.4 | | | |
| | Image: Contract of the second seco | Action | Backup | to File |

• Change the PLC state to Stop.



9

• Click Close after the parameter backup is completed.

| Parameter Backup and Restore D | - O X |
|---|--|
| General Target Device List 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) | Action: Backup to File Generate Target Device List from: Current Project Online Device Gateway-1/0005 Device Add Device Add Device Add Device Ty Device Add Device Ty Device Ve Finished Close Close Device Ve Finished Device Ve Finished Device To Device Ve Finished Device Ve Finished Device Ve Finished Device Ve Device Ve Finished Device Ve Successfully backup destination already has a file named "1001_Delta_AS 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) Successfully backup device: 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) Comparison C |

Backup directory

| Parameter Backup and Restore Seneral Target Device List 1001 (De¹*A ASP⁻ 3-E) | General Address: 1001 | – – × |
|--|--------------------------|---|
| | Vendor Id: 1DI | D Product Code: 00006010 |
| | File Name: | 1001_Delta_ASDA_A3_E.par |
| | Directory: | \Users\Johnny.xie\Documents\Delta Industrial Automation\ParameterBackupRestore\ |
| | | |
| | Device | 0 Warnings 1 Messages Message ta ASDA-A3-E) Successfully backup device: 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) |
| | 4 | > |
| | | Action: Backup to Fil |

| Name | Function |
|------------------------|---|
| File Name | Set the name for parameter backup file. |
| Directory | Set the backup directory. |
| Clone to Other Devices | Change all the backup directory of other devices. |

9.1.4.2.2 Operation for Restore Function

• Parameter restoration

- ① Select Device
- ② Configure EtherCAT topology for the current project
- 3 Set Action to **Restore from File**

| | - | | × |
|--|---|---|---|
| Action: 3 Restore from File Generate Target Device List from: Current Project Current Proje | | | |
| | 3 Restore from File Generate Target Device List from: ● 2 Current Project > Online Device ● 1 Gateway-1/0005 > Device Name: AX-BxxEP0 Device Address: 0005 Device Address: 0005 Device ID: 16F7 0314 Device Version: 1.0.1.4 | Restore from File Generate Target Device List from: Current Project Device\EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion Online Device Gateway-1/0005 Device Name: AX-8xxEP0 Device Address: 0005 Device Type: 4102 Device ID: 16F7 0314 Device Version: 1.0.1.4 | Action: 3 Restore from File Generate Target Device List from: 2 Current Project Online Device 1 Gateway-1/0005 Device Name: AX-8xxEP0 Device Address: 0005 Device Type: 4102 Device UD: 16F7 0314 Device Version: 1.0.1.4 |

• Click on the target device and set the path to the file to restore.

| Parameter Backup and Restore | |
|--|--|
| | |
| General ✓ Target Device List ✓ 1001 (Delta AS ^{D+A3-E)} | General Address: 1001 Vendor Id: 1DD Product Code: 00006010 Settings Path: C:\Users\Johnny.xie\Documents\Delta Industrial Automation\ParameterBackupRestore\1001_Del © 0 Errors ① 0 Warnings ① 0 Messages ② Device Message |
| I | Action: Restore from |

9

• Activate the restore function

| Parameter Backup and Restore | | | | — | × |
|---|--|-----|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------|
| | | | | | |
| General ✓ Target Device List ✓ 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) | Action: Restore from File Generate Target Devic Current Project Online Device Gateway-1/0005 Device Name: AX-8xxf Device Address: 0005 Device Pype: 4102 Device HD: 16F7 0314 Device Version: 1.0.1. | • D | vevice\EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion | Action: Re | mFile |

• Change the PLC state to Stop.

| DIADesigner-AX | × |
|--|--------------------------|
| Po you want to stop the controller and service | o off the slave devices? |
| | |

• Click Yes after the restoration is completed, then reboot the device.

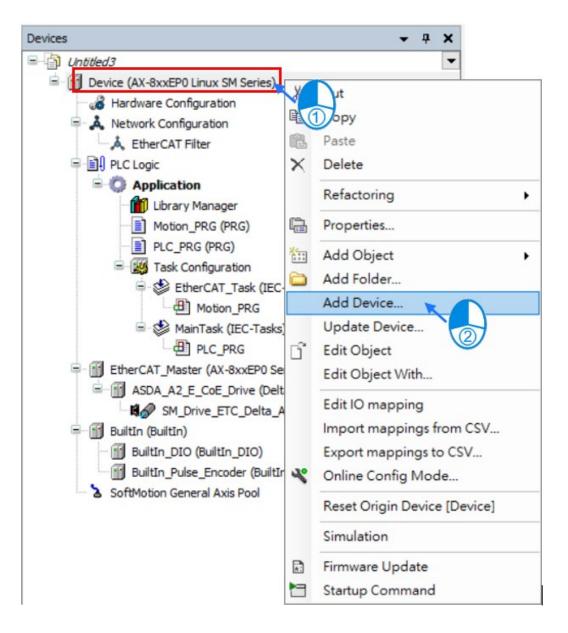
| General | Action: | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| ✓ Target Device List ✓ 1001 (Delta ASDA-A3-E) | Restore from File ~ | | |
| | Generate Target Device List from: 1 | | |
| | Current Project | | |
| | Online Device | | |
| | Gateway-1/0005 × | | |
| | DIADesigner-AX X | | |
| | Dease manually reboot the successfully restored devices. | | |

9.2 Introduction to Modbus Serial Communication

9.2.1 Modbus Serial Port

Related parameters of serial communication can be modified by adding new Modbus Serial Port. AX-8 Series supports the following Modbus network types, including one RS-422 and one RS-485, and each Modbus Serial Port allows one master. Follow the below section to set up the basic settings for communication via the serial port for the Modbus serial port.

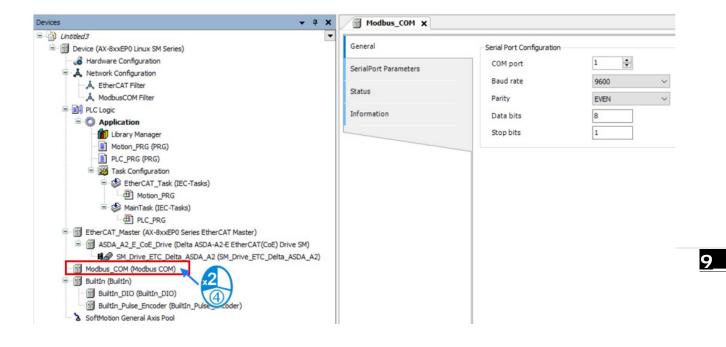
9.2.1.1 Adding Delta Modbus COM



9-16

Find **Modbus COM** (Modbus > Modbus Serial Port > Modbus COM) and then double-click it or click **Add Device** to add this port in.

| Append device 🔘 Inser | t device 🔵 Plug | device Ol | Jpdate device | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| String for a full text search | | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | | |
| Name | utomation | dor | | Version | Description |
| Profinet IO | | | | | |
| Group by category D | isplay all versions | (for experts o | only) 🗌 Display o | outdated vers | ions |
| < | oftware Solutions G Serial Port | imbH | only) 🗌 Display o | outdated vers | ions |



9.2.1.2 Setting up Delta Modbus COM

• System Parameters

Here you can configure Serial Port Parameters. Settings include Serial Communication Mode (RS-422/RS-485).

| Communication Settings | Parameter | Туре | Value | Default Value | Unit | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|------|--|
| | Application Run Mode | BOOL | FALSE | FALSE | | [TRUE]:Enable Run Mode [FALSE]:Disable |
| Applications | Serial Communication Mode | Enumeration of BYTE | RS-485 ~ | RS-485 | | Choose Serial Communication Mode |
| Backup and Restore | NetworkInterface Settings Enable | BOOL | RS-485 | TRUE | | [TRUE]:Enable GLAN1/GLAN2 NetworkInt |
| | Execute Startup Command when Power On | Enumeration of BOOL | RS-422 SSI | Enable | | [Enable]:Startup Command will be auto en |
| Files | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Log | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings | | | | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | | |
| FLC SIICII | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics | | | | | | |
| Licensed Software Metrics System Settings | | | | | | |
| System Settings | | | | | | |
| System Settings | | | | | | |
| System Settings Right Settings | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

• Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| Modbus_COM X | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|---|---------|
| General | SerialPort | : | Running |
| SerialPort Parameters | PCI-Bus | : | Running |
| Status | 1 | | |
| Information | | | |

| ltem | Description |
|------------|---|
| SerialPort | The status of Modbus Serial Communication |

Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| General | - General Name: Modbus COM |
|-----------------------|--|
| SerialPort Parameters | Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH |
| | Categories: Modbus Serial Port |
| Status | Type: 92 |
| | ID: 0000 0001 |
| Information | Version: 4.1.0.0 |
| | Order number: - |
| | Description: A serial COM Port on a Windows PC |

9____

9.2.2 Modbus Serial Master

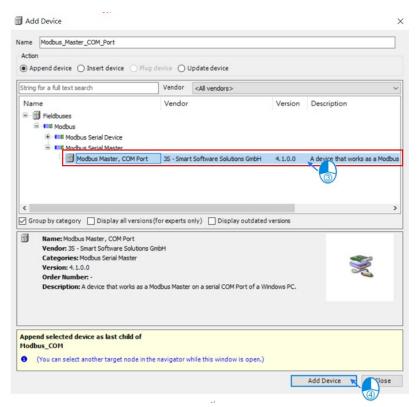
In addition to providing the standard Modbus communication protocol, the AX-8 Series PLC further executes the Delta controller internal device conversion (X, M, D devices, etc.), eliminating the need for you to check the conversion table. When AX-8 is set to act as a Modbus Serial Master, you need to first create Modbus Master COM port and then add Modbus Slave COM port to continue further settings. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus Serial Master.

9.2.2.1 Adding Delta Modbus Master/Slave COM

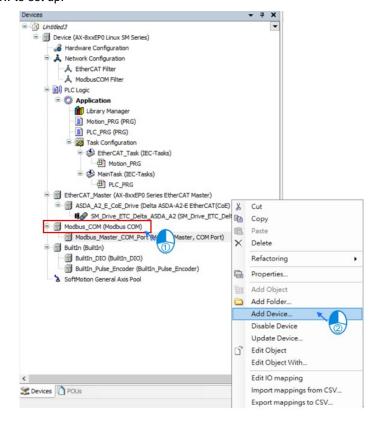
 Right-click the created Modbus_COM (Modbus COM) in the tree view to open a context menu. And click Add Device...to open the Add Device setting window.

| Devices | | → ₽ X |
|---------|---------------------------------|--|
| | s) eries E & Main X | |
| | | Add Folder |
| | - | Add Polder |
| < | G | Insert Device Disable Device Update Device Edit Object Edit Object With Edit IO mapping Import mappings from CSV |

 Find and double-click Modbus Master COM Port (Fieldbuses > Modbus > Modbus Serial Master > Modbus Master COM Port) or click Add Device to add this port in.



3. Find the added port Modbus_Master_COM_Port (Modbus Master COM Port) in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



 Find and double-click Modbus Slave COM port (Fieldbuses > Modbus > Modbus Serial Slave > Modbus Slave COM Port) or click Add Device to add this port in.

| | t | | | | | | |
|--|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|--|
| tion Append device () Insert d | | davias Ol | In data davies | | | | |
| Append device O Insert d | evice O Piug | device O | | | | | |
| ing for a full text search | full text search Vendor <all vendors=""></all> | | | | | | |
| ame | | Vendor | | Version | Description | | |
| Fieldbuses | | | | | | | |
| Modbus | | | | | | | |
| Modbus Slav | | 35 - Smart | Software Solutions GmbH | 4.1.0.0 | A generic devic | e that works a | |
| | ic, contract | 55 Sindre | | 1121010 | A generic devic | K | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Group by category | | (for experts o | only) 🗌 Display outdated | d versions | | | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft | OM Port ware Solutions G | | only) 🗌 Display outdated | d versions | | | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se | OM Port ware Solutions G | | only) 🗌 Display outdated | d versions | _ | | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft | OM Port ware Solutions G | | only) 🗌 Display outdate | d versions | | | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se Version: 4.1.0.0 | OM Port ware Solutions G rial Slave | SmbH | | d versions | | × | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | OM Port ware Solutions G rial Slave | SmbH | | d versions | | *** | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - | OM Port ware Solutions G rial Slave | SmbH | | d versions | | ×. | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 35 - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - Description: A generic | OM Port ware Solutions G rial Slave device that work | SmbH | | d versions | | % | |
| Name: Modbus Slave, C Vendor: 3S - Smart Soft Categories: Modbus Se Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - | OM Port ware Solutions G rial Slave device that work | SmbH | | d versions | | | |

9.2.2.2 Setting up Modbus Serial Master

Double-click the created Modbus Master COM Port to open the setting menu.

| vices • 4 × | Modbus_Master_COM_Port | ^ L | | |
|--|--|---|---------------|--------|
| Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | General | Modbus RTU/ASCII | | |
| Hardware Configuration A. Network Configuration | ModbusGenericSerialMaster 1/0 Mapping | Transmission mode | ● RTU ○ ASCII | MODBUS |
| EtherCAT Filter ModbusCOM Filter | ModbusGenericSerialMaster IBC Objects | Response timeout (ms) Time between frames (ms) | 1000 | |
| PLC Logic | Status | Auto-restart communicati | ion | |
| Lbrary Manager Motion_PRG (PRG) | Information | | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) Task Configuration | | | | |
| BetherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) Motion_PRG | | | | |
| | | | | |
| EtherCAT_Master (AX-8xxEP0 Series EtherCAT Master) | | | | |
| G ASDA_A2_E_CoE_Drive (Delta ASDA-A2-E EtherCAT(CoE) Drive SM) | | | | |
| SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2 (SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2) | | | | |
| R C Madrie COM (Madrie COM) | | | | |
| Modbus_Master_COM_Port (Modbus Master, COM Port) | | | | |
| Modous_Slave_COM_Port (Modous Slave, COM Port) A | | | | |
| Bultin_DIO (Bultin_DIO) | | | | |
| Builtin_Pulse_Encoder (Builtin_Pulse_Encoder) | | | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | | |

• General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Master COM Port.

| General | Modbus RTU/ASCII | | | MODDIE |
|--|---|------|---------|--------|
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster I/O Mapping | Transmission mode | RTU | ⊖ ASCII | MODBUS |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster IEC Dbjects | Response timeout (ms) Time between frames (ms) | 1000 | | |
| Status | Auto-restart communicati | ion | | |

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Auto-restart communication | Enable this option to have this port to reconnect automatically if an error occurs or connection timeout occurs. |

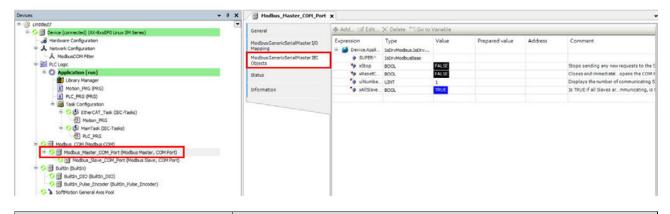
Modbus GenericSerial Master I/O Mapping

Here you can select the bus cycle task of Modbus Serial Master to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. Refer to **section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings** for more information.

| Modbus_Master_COM_Port | × | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| General | Bus Cycle Options Bus cycle task | Use parent bus cycle setting V | Recreate required tasks |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster I/O Mapping | bus cycle tusk | Use parent bus cycle setting EtherCAT_Task | , |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster IEC Objects | | MainTask | |
| Status | | | |
| Information | | | |

• Modbus Serial Master IEC Objects

Here you can check the status of Modbus Serial Master under this tab.



| Expression | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| bStop | Stop sending the Slave any new request |
| bResetComPort | Reset the COM port |
| uiNumberOfCommunicatingSlaves | The number of the Slaves that are in communication |
| bAllSlavesOk | The communication status of the Slave |

• Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| General | Modbus GenericSerial Master: | Running |
|--|------------------------------|---------|
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster I/O Mapping | ModbusSerial : | Running |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster IEC Objects | | |
| Status | | |

• Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| Modbus_Master_COM_Port | × |
|--|---|
| General | General |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster I/O Mapping | Name: Modbus Master, COM Port Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH Categories: Modbus Serial Master |
| ModbusGenericSerialMaster IEC Objects | Type: 90 ID: 0000 0002 |
| Status | Version: 4.1.0.0 Order number: - |
| Information | Description: A device that works as a Modbus Master on a serial COM Port of a Windows PC. |

Note:

- 1. Each Modbus Serial Port allows one master. A maximum of 32 slaves can be attached to a master.
- 2. Since RS-422 has no multipoint capability, only point-to-point connection is possible. And only the FIRST slave can communicate with the master. Since RS-485 has multipoint capability, RS-485 does NOT have such limitations.

9.2.2.3 Setting up Modbus Serial Slave

In the tree view, find the added port **Modbus_Slave_COM_Port (Modbus Slave COM Port)**. Double-click it to open the setting window to set up.

| Devices | - | ą | × |
|--|---|---|---|
| Untitled3 | | | • |
| Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | | |
| Hardware Configuration | | | |
| 🖶 👗 Network Configuration | | | |
| 🙏 ModbusCOM Filter | | | |
| E I PLC Logic | | | |
| E O Application | | | |
| 👘 Library Manager | | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| E Isk Configuration | | | |
| EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| Motion_PRG | | | |
| AinTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| PLC_PRG | | | |
| Modbus_COM (Modbus COM) | | | |
| Modbus_Master_COM_Port (Modbus Master, COM Port) | | | |
| Modbus_Slave_COM_Port (Modbus Slave, COM Port) | | | |
| | | | |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | |

• General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Slave COM Port, such as Slave Address, Response Timeout and Device Type.

| Modbus RTU/ASCII | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Slave address [1247] | 1 |
| Response timeout [ms] | 1000 |
| - | |
| | |
| | |
| | Slave address [1247] |

| ltem | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Slave Address | Address of a serial Modbus device |
| Response Timeout | Time interval for the master to wait for the response from the slave. This is especially configured for this slave node and overwrites the general response timeout setting of the respective master. |

• Modbus Slave Channel

Here you can define slave channels. Each channel represents a single Modbus request. You can create up to 10 channels for each slave. AX-8 Series PLC will send out Modbus request packets in chronological order. All channels share the same Modbus connection.

| eneral | | Name | Access Type | Trigger | READ Offset | Length | Error Handling | WRITE Offset |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------|--|-----------------|-------------|--------|-----------------|--------------|
| | 0 | Channel 0 | Write Multiple Registers (Function Code 16) | Cyclic, t#100ms | | | | 16#0000 |
| lodbus Slave Channel | 1 | Channel 1 | Read Coils (Function Code 01) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | |
| lodbus Slave Init | 2 | Channel 2 | Read Discrete Inputs (Function Code 02) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | |
| loubus Slave Inc | 3 | Channel 3 | Read Holding Registers (Function Code 03) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | |
| odbusGenericSerialSlave I/O | 4 | Channel 4 | Read Input Registers (Function Code 04) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | |
| apping | 5 | Channel 5 | Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) | Cyclic, t#100ms | | | | 16#0000 |
| odbusGenericSerialSlave IEC | 6 | Channel 6 | Write Single Register (Function Code 06) | Cyclic, t#100ms | | | | 16#0000 |
| bjects | 7 | Channel 7 | Write Multiple Coils (Function Code 15) | Cyclic, t#100ms | | | | 16#0000 |
| tatus | 8 | Channel 8 | Write Multiple Registers (Function Code 16) | Cyclic, t#100ms | | | | 16#0000 |
| | 9 | Channel 9 | Read/Write Multiple Registers (Function Code 23) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | 16#0000 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Device Type : Standard Modbus Device↔

Device Type : AH Series↔

| × | Modbus Channel | |
|----------|------------------------|-----|
| | Enable | |
| | Channel | |
| | Name Channel 0 | |
| v | Access Type Read Colls | ~ |
| 🖌 100 ms | Trigger Cyclic 🖌 100 | ms |
| | Comment | |
| | Read Register | |
| 0x0 | Device Address X Coil | 0x0 |
| | Length 1 | |
| 1 | | |
| | V 100 ms | |

9_

| Item | Desc | ription | | | |
|-------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Device Type | Standard Modbus Device | Delta Series Device | | | |
| Enable | Activates | this channel | | | |
| Name | Defines this | is channel name | | | |
| Access Type | Modbus function code Read Coils (0x01) Read discrete inputs (0x02) Read holding Registers (0x03) Read input Registers (0x04) Read single Coil (0x05) Write single Register (0x06) Write multiple Coils (0x0F) Write multiple Registers (0x10) Read/Write multiple Registers (0x17) | Read/Write Registers Read Coils Read Registers Write Coils Write Registers Note: PLC uses the corresponding Modbus function code according to the read/write register of the device type. | | | |
| Trigger | Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusComChannel | Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusComChannel | | | |
| Comment | Description | of the channel | | | |
| Device Address | Modbus protocol address | Delta register address (will be converted into Modbus protocl in the background) | | | |
| Length | Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 100 coils and 100 registers) | Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 256 coils and 100 registers) | | | |
| Error Handling | What to do with the data in case of a communitSet To ZEROKeep last value | cation error: | | | |

Modbus Slave Init

After the Modbus connection between AX-8 Series PLC and the slaves is established, you can use **Add Channel** button to edit the Initialization Value of the Coil/Registers.

| 1 Write Multiple Registers (Function Code 16) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 2 Write Multiple Coils (Function Code 15) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 3 Write Single Register (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC Objects Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 | | Comment | Length | Default Value | WRITE Offset | | Access Type | Line | General |
|---|--|---------|--------|---------------|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------|------|----------------------|
| 2 Write Multiple Colis (Function Code 15) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus Slave Init 3 Write Single Register (Function Code 06) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping 4 Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC Objects Status Status Image: Status Status Image: Status Status Status Image: Status Status Status Status Status Image: Status St | | | 1 | 1 | 16#0000 (=0) | rs (Function Code 16) | Write Multiple Re | 1 | |
| 4 Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC bjects Write Single Coil (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 | | | 1 | 1 | 16#0000 (=0) | unction Code 15) | Write Multiple Co | 2 | Modbus Slave Channel |
| 4 Write Single Coll (Function Code 05) 16#0000 (=0) 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | | 1 | 1 | 16#0000 (=0) | Function Code 06) | Write Single Reg | 3 | tadhua Slava Iait |
| Apping AodbusGenericSerialSlave IEC bljects | | | 1 | 1 | 16#0000 (=0) | tion Code 05) | Write Single Coil | 4 | Houbus Slave Inic |
| Dbjects Status | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| nformation | | | | | | | | | itatus |
| | | | | | | | | | nformation |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Click New, you can edit the Access Type, Device Address, Length, Initialization Value and Comment.

Click **OK** to confirm the settings.

| Initialization Value | × |
|----------------------|---|
| Access type | Write Multiple Registers (Function Code 16) $$ $$ $$ $$ |
| Register offset | 0x0000 ~ |
| Length | 1 |
| Initialization value | 1 |
| Comment | |
| | OK Cancel |

Modbus Generic Serial Slave I/O Mapping

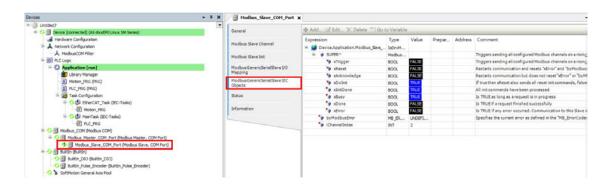
After you have added channels under the tab of **Modbus Slave COM Port**, you can find the variables and the set access types under this tab.

| ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O ************************************ | Modbus Slave Channel | General | Find | | Filter Show | all | | | - 🕂 Add FB for IO Ch | annel 😁 Go to Instan |
|--|--|----------------------|---------------|---------|-------------|---------|------|------|--|----------------------|
| Modbus Slave Init Image: Status Channel 0 %QW0 ARR Write Multiple Registers Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Image: Status Channel 1 %IB0 ARR Read Discrete Inputs Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Image: Status Channel 3 %IW1 ARRA Read Input Registers Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Image: Status Image: Status Channel 4 %IW1 ARRA Read Input Registers Status Image: Status | Modbus Slave Init Image: Channel 0 %GW0 ARA Image: Channel 1 %IB0 ARA Read Colls Read Colls Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Image: Channel 2 %IB1 ARA Read Holding Registers Image: Channel 3 %GW0 ARA Read Holding Registers Image: Channel 3 %GW0 ARA Read Holding Registers Image: Channel 4 %GW2 ARA Read Holding Registers Image: Channel 4 %GW2 ARA Read Holding Registers Image: Channel 4 %GW2 ARA Write Single Coll Image: Channel 5 %GW2 ARA Write Single Registers Image: Channel 4 %GW2 ARA Write Single Registers Image: Channel 4 %GW2 ARA Write Single Registers Image: Channel 5 %GW2 | Madhua Claus Chanad | Variable | Mapping | Channel | Address | Туре | Unit | Description | |
| Modbus Slave Init ** Channel 1 %IB0 ARR Kad Colls Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping ** Channel 2 %IB1 ARRA Read Colls Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Objects ** Channel 3 %IW1 ARRA Read Holding Registers Status ** Channel 4 %IW2 ARRA Read Input Registers Information * Channel 7 %QB2 ARRA Write Single Coll ** Channel 7 %QB6 ARRA Write Single Registers ** Channel 8 %QW4 ARRA Write Multiple Registers | Modbus Slave Init Modbus Slave Init Modbus GenericSerialSlave I/O Modbus GenericSerial | Modbus Slave Channel | B- * ø | | Channel 0 | %OW0 | ARRA | 9 | Write Multiple Registers | |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping ************************************ | ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O ModbusGenericSerialSlave IEC Objects ModbusGenericSerialSlave IEC Objects Channel 3 %IW1 ARRA Read Input Registers The second of the | Modbus Slave Init | 8-30 | 100 | Channel 1 | | | 6 | and the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second | |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O Image: Second Seco | ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O Image Mapping Channel 3 %IW1 ARRA Read Holding Registers ModbusGenericSerialSlave IEC Channel 4 %IW2 ARRA Read Input Registers Status Channel 5 %Q82 ARRA Write Single Coli Information Channel 6 %QW2 ARRA Write Single Coli Information Channel 8 %QW4 ARRA Write Multiple Registers | | - ÷ * (1 | | Channel 2 | %IB1 | ARRA | | Read Discrete Inputs | |
| Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC | Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC Channel 4 %IW2 ARRA Read Input Registers Status Channel 5 %Q82 ARRA Write Single Coll Status Channel 6 %QW2 ARRA Write Single Register Information Modbus GenericSerialSlave IEC Channel 6 %QW2 ARRA Write Single Register Information Channel 7 %Q86 ARRA Write Multiple Registers | | | | Channel 3 | %IW1 | ARRA | | Read Holding Registers | 3 |
| Objects Image: Channel S %Q82 ARR Write Single Coll Status Image: Channel S %Q82 ARR Write Single Coll Information Image: Channel S %Q82 ARR Write Single Coll Information Image: Channel S %Q82 ARR Write Multiple Colls Image: Channel S %Q84 ARR Write Multiple Registers Image: Channel S %QW4 ARR Write Multiple Registers | Objects Image: Channel S %282 ARA Write Single Coll Status Image: Channel S %282 ARA Write Single Register Information Image: Channel S %282 ARA Write Single Register Information Image: Channel S %282 ARA Write Single Register Information Image: Channel S %282 ARA Write Multiple Registers | | 1 H - 10 | | Channel 4 | %IW2 | ARRA | | Read Input Registers | Ť |
| Status Image: Channel of the status Channel of the status Verter status Write Single Register Information Image: Channel of the status Channel of the status Verter status Write Multiple Colls Information Image: Channel of the status Channel of the status Verter status Write Multiple Registers Image: Channel of the status Channel of the status Verter status Write Multiple Registers | Status Image: Stat | | B- 🍫 | | Channel 5 | %QB2 | ARRA | | Write Single Coil | 1 |
| Information Inform | Information Channel 7 %266 ARRA Write Multiple Colls Channel 8 %2W4 ARRA Write Multiple Registers Channel 9 %2W3 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | | B- * ø | | Channel 6 | %QW2 | ARRA | | Write Single Register | 1 |
| Information Channel 9 %IW3 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | Information Channel 9 %IW3 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | Status | B- 🍫 | | Channel 7 | %QB6 | ARRA | | Write Multiple Coils | 1 |
| Channel 9 %IW3 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | Channel 9 %W3 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | | B- * ø | | Channel 8 | %QW4 | ARRA | | Write Multiple Registers | 1 |
| Channel 9 %QW5 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | Channel 9 %QW5 ARRA Read/Write Multiple Registers | Information | | | Channel 9 | %IW3 | ARRA | | Read/Write Multiple Registers | |
| | | | 😟 🍫 | | Channel 9 | %QW5 | ARRA | | Read/Write Multiple Registers | 1 |
| | | | 8.5 | | Channel 9 | %QW5 | ARRA | | Read/Write Multiple Registers | |

- ① The descriptions here reflect what you have set for the Access Type in Modbus Slave Channel tab.
- ² The triggered Boolean variable for this channel. When the Trigger type is set to Rising edge in Modbus Slave Channel
- ③ The controller Coils/Registers that are read/written by this channel.

Modbus Generic Serial Slave IEC Objects

Here you can check the status of Modbus Serial Slave under this tab.



| Expression | Description |
|------------|---|
| bTrigger | Trigger all Modbus channels at one time. |
| bReset | Re-establish the connection and reset bError and ModbusRrror when the connection status shows error. And this function is only available when the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled. |

| Expression | Description |
|---------------|---|
| bAcknowledge | Re-establish the connection and continue to execute the data transmission from the Modbus channels that showed error previously. And this function is only available when the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled. |
| bDoInit | Initialized the Slave. |
| bInitDone | The initialization of the Slave is completed. |
| bBusy | This channel is in data transmission. |
| bDone | The data transmission via this channel is completed. |
| bError | Error occurs when this channel is in data transmission. |
| ModbusError | Records of the Modbus error. |
| iChannelIndex | The number of the channel that is in execution. |

• Status

Here you can find the Modbus Slave COM Port status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| Modbus_Slave_COM_Port | × | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| General | ModbusGenericSerialSlave : | Running The error has been deared. | |
| Modbus Slave Channel | Last diagnostic message | | Acknowledge |
| Modbus Slave Init | Slave Diag | Slave's diagnostic information | |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O Mapping | Request Counter 8319 Error Counter 4161 | | |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave IEC Objects | I Cast Error | | |
| Status | | | |
| Information | | | |

• Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| General | General |
|---|---|
| Modbus Slave Channel | Name: Modbus Slave, COM Port Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH |
| | Categories: Modbus Serial Slave Type: 91 |
| Modbus Slave Init | ID: 0000 0001 |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave I/O | Version: 4.1.0.0 |
| Mapping | Order number: - |
| ModbusGenericSerialSlave IEC Objects | Description: A generic device that works as a Modbus Slave on a serial bus. Configuration version: 3,5,3,0 |
| Status | |
| Information | |

9.2.3 Modbus Serial Slave

When AX-8 Series PLC is set to act as a Modbus Serial Slave, you need to add Modbus Serial Device in and set up the allowable areas for Coils/Register. If Modbus Serial Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus Serial Slave.

9.2.3.1 Adding a Modbus Serial Device

 Right-click the created Modbus_COM (Modbus COM) in the tree view to open a context menu. And click Add Device...to open the Add Device setting window.

| Devices | | - ₽ X |
|--|-------|--|
| | āsks) | |
| Modbus COM (Modbus COM) BuiltIn (BuiltIn) BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_ SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | Cut Copy Paste Delete Properties Add Object Add Folder |
| ۲ | G | Add Device Insert Device Disable Device Update Device Edit Object Edit Object With Edit IO mapping Import mappings from CSV Export mappings to CSV |

2. Find and double-click **Modbus Serial Device** (Fieldbuses > Modbus > Modbus Serial Device > Modbus Serial Device) or click **Add Device** to add this port in.

| me Modbus_Serial_Device | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|------------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|
| ction | | | | | |
| Append device O Insert device | Plug device O | Update device | | | |
| tring for a full text search | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | | | |
| Name | Vendor | | Version | Description | |
| Fieldbuses | | | | | |
| Modbus | | | | | |
| - Modbus Serial Device | | | | | |
| Modbus Serial Device | 3S - Smart Sof | tware Solutions GmbH | 4.1.0.0 | A device that works | as a Modbus S |
| | | | | | |
| | sions (for experts (| only) 🗌 Display outc | lated versions | I | |
| Group by category Display all ve | | only) 🗌 Display outc | lated versions | | |
| : Group by category 🗌 Display all ve | ions GmbH | only) 🗌 Display outc | lated versions | 1 | * |
| Group by category Display all ve Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 35 - Smart Software Solu Categories: Modbus Serial Device Version: 4.1.0.0 | ions GmbH | only) 🗌 Display outc | lated versions | - | |
| Group by category Display all ve Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 35 - Smart Software Solu Categories: Modbus Serial Device Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - | ions GmbH | | lated versions | | % |
| Group by category Display all ve Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 35 - Smart Software Solu Categories: Modbus Serial Device Version: 4.1.0.0 | ions GmbH | | lated versions | | |
| Group by category Display all ve Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 35 - Smart Software Solu Categories: Modbus Serial Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | ions GmbH | | lated versions | | * |
| Group by category Display all ve Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 35 - Smart Software Solu Categories: Modbus Serial Device Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - | ions GmbH as a Modbus Serial | | lated versions | | |

3. Find the added port **Modbus_Serial_Device (Modbus Serial Device)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.

| Devices 👻 🗸 | × | Modbus_Serial_Device X | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------------|--------------------|------------|-----------|
| Untitled3 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | • | General | 11-11 10 | | |
| Hardware Configuration An Network Configuration AndbusCOM Filter | | Modbus Serial Device I/O Mapping | Unit ID | 1 + | |
| 😑 🗐 PLC Logic | | Modbus Serial Device IEC Objects | Holding registers | 10 🔷 (%IW) | Writeable |
| Application Distance Library Manager | | Status | Input registers | 10 🔷 (%QW) | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | Information | Discrete Bit Areas | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) Task Configuration | | | Coils | 0 🌲 (%DX) | |
| | | | Discrete Inputs | 0 🗘 (%QX) | |
| PLC_PRG | | | StartAddresses | | |
| Modbus COM (Modbus COM) Modbus_Serial Device (Modbus Serial Device) | | | Coils | 0 | |
| 🖃 🍈 Builtin (Builtin) | | | Discrete inputs | 0 | |
| Builtin_DIO (Builtin_DIO) | | | Holding register | 0 | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | Input register | 0 | |

9_

9.2.3.2 Setting up the Modbus Serial Device

General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Serial Device. Set up the allowable areas for Coils/Registers. If Modbus Serial Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions.

| Modbus_Serial_Device X | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| General | Unit ID | 1 |
| Modbus Serial Device I/O Mapping | Watchdog | 500 \$ |
| Modbus Serial Device IEC Objects | Holding registers | 10 (%IW) Writeable |
| Status | Input registers | 10 🗘 (%QW) |
| Information | Discrete Bit Areas | |
| | Coils | 0 (%DX) |
| | Discrete Inputs | 0 🗘 (%QX) |
| | StartAddresses | |
| | Coils | 0 |
| | Discrete inputs | 0 |
| | Holding register | 0 |
| | Input register | 0 |

Modbus Serial Device I/O Mapping

Here you can select the bus cycle task of Modbus TCP Slave Device to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. Refer to **section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings** for more information.

| neral | Find | | Filter Show all | | | Add FB for IO Channel 🔭 Go to Ins | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-----------|------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|--|
| odbus Serial Device I/O Mapping | Variable | Mapping | Channel Holding Registers | Address %IW0 | Type ARRAY [09] OF WORD | Unit | Description | |
| odbus Serial Device IEC Objects | B- 🍫 | | Input Registers | %QW0 | ARRAY [09] OF WORD | | | |
| atus | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| formation | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Reset Ma | oping Al | ways up date variables Us | e parent d | levice setting | |
| | × − Create new varial | | Reset Ma | | ways up date variables Use | e parent c | levice setting | |
| | ✓ = Create new variat Bus Cyde Options | ie 🍫 = Ma | | | ways update variables | e parent d | levice setting | |

Modbus Serial Device IEC Objects

Here you can check the status of Modbus Serial Device under this tab.

| Modbus_Serial_Device X | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| General | 🖨 Add 🗹 Edit 🗙 Dele | ete → Go to | Variable |
| Modbus Serial Device I/O Mapping | Variable Modbus_Serial_Device | Mapping | Type IoDrvModbusSerialSlave |
| Modbus Serial Device IEC Objects | | | |
| Status | | | |
| Information | | | |

• Status

Here you can find the Modbus Serial Slave Device status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| Modbus_Serial_Device X | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-----|--|
| General | Modbus Serial Device : | n/a | |
| Modbus Serial Device I/O Mapping | | | |
| Modbus Serial Device IEC Objects | | | |
| Status | | | |
| Information | | | |

• Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

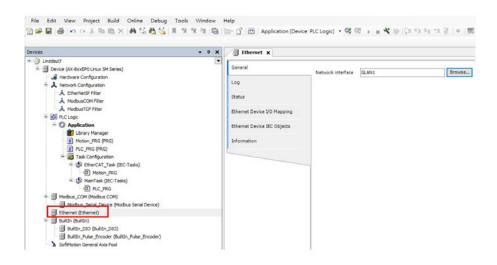
| General |
|--|
| Name: Modbus Serial Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH Categories: Modbus Serial Device |
| Type: 94 ID: 0000 0001 |
| Version: 4.1.0.0 Order number: - |
| Description: A device that works as a Modbus Serial standalone slave. Configuration version: 3.5.5.0 |
| |

9.3 Introduction to Ethernet Communication

Network-related parameters can be modified by adding new Ethernet device. All functions related to network must be adjusted under this tab (e.g. Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP). Follow the below section to set up the basic settings for communication via the Ethernet Adapter.

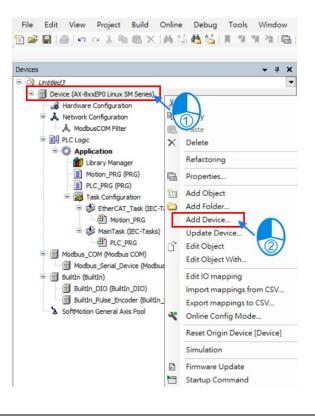
9.3.1 Ethernet

Ethernet tree diagram



9.3.1.1 Adding an Ethernet Adapter Device

1. Right-click the PLC in the tree view to see a context menu. Click Add Device...to open the setting window.



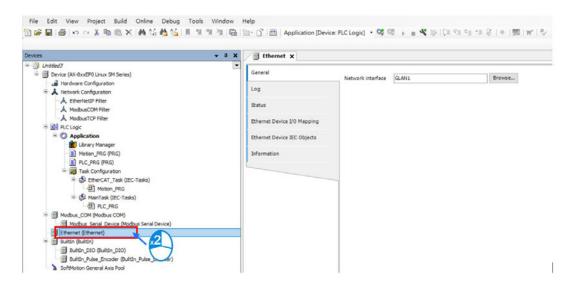
_9

2. Find and double-click Ethernet (Fieldbuses > Ethernet Adapter > Ethernet) or click Add Device to add it in.

| ame Ethernet | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------|
| Action | | | | | | |
| Append device O Ins | sert device 🔵 Plug | device Ol | Jpdate device | | | |
| String for a full text search | | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | | | |
| Name | | dor | | Version | Description | |
| Ethernet A | | mart Softwar | e Solutions GmbH | 3.5.17.0 | Ethernet Link. | |
| - 🚰 Home&Building - 🖼 Modbus | erial Port | | e Solutions GmbH | 4.1.0.0 | A serial COM Port of | 3 |
| Group by category |] Display all versions | (for experts o | only) 🗌 Display o | outdated versi | ons | |
| | | | | | | |
| Vendor: 3S - Smar | | and the second second | ernet Adapter, Hon | ne&Building Au | tomation | Ŵ |
| Vendor: 3S - Smar Categories: Ether Version: 3.5.17.0 Order Number: - | rnet Adapter, Ethernet rrnet Link. | and the second second | ernet Adapter, Hon | ne8Building Au | tomation | X |

9.3.1.2 Setting up the Ethernet

Find the added Ethernet (Ethernet) in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window for setup.



• General

| General | the second second | 19 <u></u> | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|------------|--------|
| | Network interface | GLAN1 | Browse |
| Log | | | |
| Status | | | |
| | | | |
| Ethernet Device I/O Mapping | | | |
| Ethernet Device IEC Objects | | | |
| | | | |

| Item | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Network Interface | Current communication interface |

• Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device.

| Seneral | Ethernet Device : | | Running | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|----------------|---|-------------|--|
| og | Last diagnostic message | | | Acknowledge | |
| itatus ithernet Device I/O Mapping | EthDiag Current IP '192.168.0.1 Current subnet mask '255.255.25 | | | | |
| thernet Device IEC Objects | Current gateway address | '0.0.0.0' 0 | Amount of IP configuration changes since startup (IP or gateway address or subnet mask) | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ethernet Device | The status of Ethernet Communication |
| Last Diagnostic Message | Network diagnosis |

_9

• Ethernet Device I/O Mapping

Here you can select the bus cycle task of Ethernet Device to synchronize with the communication time. Refer to **section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings** for more information.

| General | Bus Cycle Options | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| | Bus cycle task | Use parent bus cycle setting \sim | Recreate required tasks |
| og | | | |
| Status | | | |
| Ethernet Device I/O Mapping | | | |
| Therest Device IEC Objects | | | |
| Ethernet Device IEC Objects | | | |

• Ethernet Device IEC Objects

Here you can find the objects defined by Ethernet Device. "Objects" are listed that allow for access to the device from the IEC application. In online mode, you can use the table of IEC objects as a monitoring view.

| General | 🕂 Add 🗹 Edit 🗙 Delete → Go to Variable | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|----------------------------|---------|----------------|---------|--------|
| Log | Expression Expression @ Device.Application.E | Type IoDrvEthernet.IoDr | Value | Prepared value | Address | Commen |
| Status | 🍫 eState | ETHERNETSTATE | RUNNING | | | |
| Ethernet Device I/O Mapping | | | | | | |
| Ethernet Device IEC Objects | | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | | |

• Information

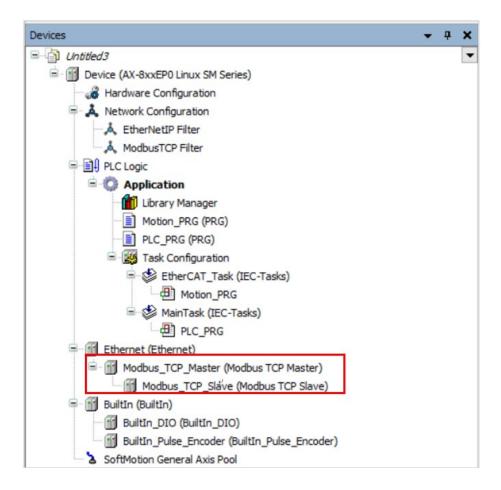
Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| General | General Name: Ethernet | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|--|
| Log | Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH | | |
| Status | Categories: Ethernet Adapter, Ethernet Adapter, Ethernet Adapter, Home&Building Automatio Type: 110 ID: 0000 0002 | | |
| Ethernet Device I/O Mapping | Version: 3.5.17.0 Order number: - | | |
| Ethernet Device IEC Objects | Description: Ethernet Link. | | |

9.3.2 Modbus TCP Master

In addition to providing the standard Modbus communication protocol, the AX-8 Series PLC further executes the Delta controller internal device conversion (X, M, D devices, etc.), eliminating the need for you to check the conversion table. When AX-8 Series PLC is set to act as a Modbus TCP Master, you need to first create Modbus TCP Master and then add Modbus TCP Slave to continue further settings. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus TCP Master.

Modbus TCP Master tree diagram

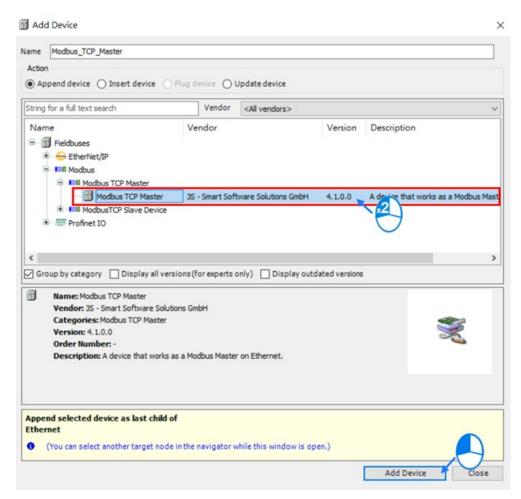


9.3.2.1 Adding a Modbus TCP Master/Slave

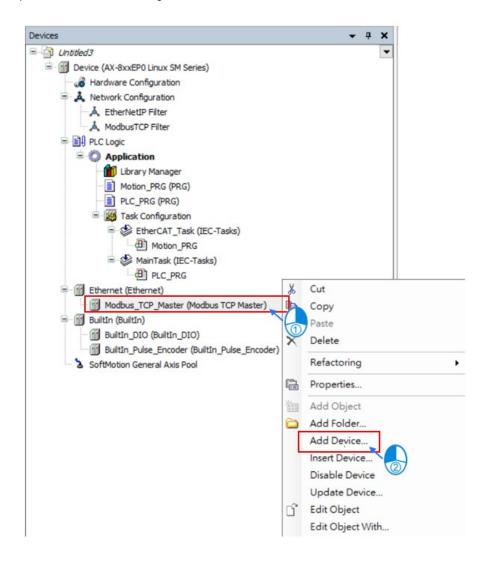
1. Right-click the **Ethernet (Ethernet)** node in the tree view to open a context menu. And click **Add Device**...to open the Add Device setting window.

| evices | | • | ą | > |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|---|---|
| Untitled3 | | | | |
| B- Device (AX-8xxEP0 | Linux SM Series) | | | |
| - 🔏 Hardware Confi | iguration | | | |
| 🖻 🙏 Network Config | uration | | | |
| K EtherNetIP | | | | |
| A ModbusTCP | Filter | | | |
| PLC Logic | | | | |
| = O Applicatio | | | | |
| Library | - | | | |
| | PRG (PRG) | | | |
| PLC_PR | | | | |
| Task Co | | and and | | |
| | erCAT_Task (IEC-T Motion_PRG | asks) | | |
| | inTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| | PLC_PRG | | | |
| Ethernet (Ether | | Cut | | |
| Builtin (Builtin) | | Сору | | |
| BuiltIn_DIO | (Builtin_D | Paste | | |
| BuiltIn_Puls | | Delete | | |
| SoftMotion Gene | eral Axis Pool | | | |
| | | Refactoring | | • |
| | 6 | Properties | | |
| | 1810 B | Add Object | | |
| | | Add Folder | | |
| | | Add Device | | |
| | | Insert Device | | |
| | | Disable Device | | |
| | | Update Device | | |
| | G | Edit Object | | |
| | | Edit Object With | | |
| | | con object with | | _ |
| | | Edit IO mapping | | |
| evices POUs | | Import mappings from CSV | | |
| | | Export mappings to CSV | | |

2. Find and double-click **Modbus TCP Master** or click **Add Device** to add this port in. After that you can find **Modbus_TCP_Master** under the Ethernet node in the tree view.

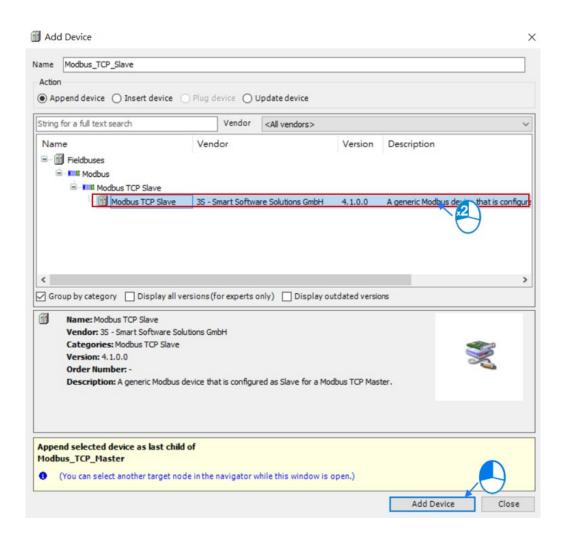


3. Right-click **Modbus_TCP_Master** under the **Ethernet** node in the tree view to open a context menu. And click **Add Device**...to open the Add Device setting window.



9_

4. Find and double-click **Modbus TCP Slave** (Fieldbuses > Modbus > Modbus TCP Slave > Modbus TCP Slave) or click **Add Device** to add it in.



9.3.2.2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Master

File Edit View Project Build Online Debug Tools Window Help 🛅 😂 🖬 🥌 🖙 🗠 🖇 🐘 🏡 🗙 🝓 🍓 🚺 🗍 🧌 🧌 🧌 🌆 🔚 🔛 🔂 🔛 🔂 Application (Device: PLC Logic) 🔹 🧐 🔶 📄 💐 🇊 🗐 🕾 😂 🔶 🛒 👘 - # X Ethernet Modbus_TCP_Master X Devices Untitled3
 Introde (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) • Modbus TCP General MODBUS Hardware Configuration Response timeout (ms) 1000 🖨 ModbusTCPMaster I/O Mapping Socket timeout (ms) A EtherNetIP Filter ModbusTCPMaster IEC Objects Auto-reconnect ModbusTCPMasterParameters Application
 Motion_PRG (PRG)
 PLC_PRG (PRG)
 Task Configuration Log Status Information EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) Motion_PRG PLC_PRG Ethernet (Ethernet)
 Modbus_TCP_Master (Modbus TCP Master)
 Modbus_TCP_Slave (Modbus TCP Slave) BuiltIn (BuiltIn) BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) SoftMotion General Axis Pool

| Expression | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Modbus TCP Master I/O Mapping | Users can select the bus cycle task of Modbus TCP Master to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. Refer to 4.2.1.6 section PLC Settings for more information. |
| Modbus TCP Master IEC Objects | You can check the status of Modbus TCP Master under this tab. bStop: TRUE > Stop sending Modbus TCP packets. bSlaveError: TRUE > connection/communication with the Slave is abnormal uiConnectedSlaves: the number of the connected Slaves e.g.(ST programming language): Modbus TCP Master.bStop:= TRUE; |
| Status | Here you can find the device status information as well as information about the card used and the internal bus system. |
| Information | Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information. |

9.3.2.3 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave

In the tree view, find the **Modbus_TCP_Slave (Modbus TCP Slave)** and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.

| Devices 👻 🕈 🗙 | Ethernet Modbus_T | CP_Master Modbus_T | CP_Slave X | |
|---|---|---|------------|--------|
| Devices - 2 X Comparison - 2 | Ceneral Modbus Slave Channel Modbus Slave Channel Modbus Slave Init Modbus TCPSlave Parameters Modbus TCPSlave IEC Objects Status Information | CP_Master Modbus_Tt Modbus TCP Slave IP address Response timeout(ms) Port | CP_Slave X | MODBUS |

• General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus TCP Slave, such as Slave Address, Response Timeout and Device Type.

| Modbus_TCP_Slave X | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| General | Modbus TCP | |
| Modbus Slave Channel | Slave IP address | 192 . 168 . 0 . 1 |
| Modbus Slave Init | Response timeout (ms) | 1000 |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | Port | 502 |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | | |
| Status | | |
| Information | | |

| ltem | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Slave IP Address | Address of the slave IP |
| Response Timeout | Time interval for the master to wait for the response from the slave. This is especially configured for this slave node and overwrites the general response timeout setting of the respective master. |
| Port | Slave communication port |

• Modbus Slave Channel

Here you can define slave channels. Each channel represents a single Modbus request. You can create up to 100 channels for each slave. AX-8 Series PLC will send out Modbus request packets in chronological order. All channels share the same Modbus TCP connection.

| Modbus_TCP_Slave X | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----------|---|-----------------|-------------|---------|-----------------|--------------|--------|
| General | | Name | Access Type | Trigger | READ Offset | Length | Error Handling | WRITE Offset | Length |
| Modbus Slave Channel | | Channel 0 | Read Coils (Function Code 01) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | | |
| | _ | Channel 1 | Read Discrete Inputs (Function Code 02) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | | |
| Modbus Slave Init | | Channel 2 | Read Holding Registers (Function Code 03) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | | |
| | 3 | Channel 3 | Read Input Registers (Function Code 04) | Cyclic, t#100ms | 16#0000 | 1 | Keep last value | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | | | | | | | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | | | | | | | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | | | | | | | | | |
| Status | | | | | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | < | | | | | | | _ | > |
| | · | | | | | | | | ' |
| | | Move Up | Move Down | | [| Add Cha | nnel De | lete E | Edit |
| | p | | | | | | | | |

| Device Type | Standard Modbus Device | Series Device | | | | | |
|----------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Enable | Activates this channel | | | | | | |
| Name | Defines this channel name | | | | | | |
| Access Type | Modbus function code • Read Coils (0x01) • Read discrete inputs (0x02) • Read holding Registers (0x03) • Read input Registers (0x04) • Read single Coil (0x05) • Write single Register (0x06) • Write multiple Coils (0x0F) • Write multiple Registers (0x10) • Read/Write multiple Registers (0x17) | Read/Write Registers Read Coils Read Registers Write Coils Write Registers Note: PLC uses the corresponding Modbus function code according to the read/write register of the device type. | | | | | |
| Trigger | Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. Application: The Modbus request is | Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. Application: The Modbus request is triggered | | | | | |

| | triggered by DFB_ModbusTCPChannel | by DFB_ModbusTCPChannel |
|-------------------|---|--|
| Comment | Descriptio | n of the channel |
| Device Address | Modbus protocol address | Delta register address (will be converted into Modbus protocl in the background) |
| Length | Number of the register to be read/written to. | Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 256 coils and 100 registers) |
| Error Handling | What to do with the data in case of a communiSet To ZEROKeep last value | cation error: |

• Modbus Slave Init

After the Modbus connection between AX-8 Series PLC and the slaves is established, you can use **Add Channel** button to edit the Initialization Value of the Coil/Registers.

| General | Line | Access Type | WRITE Offset | Default Value | Length | Comment | | | |
|----------------------------|------|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------|---------|-----|--------|--|
| Modbus Slave Channel | 1 | Write Multiple | 16#0000 (=0) | 1 | 1 | | | | |
| Modbus Slave Init | | | | | | | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | | | | | | | | | |
| 1odbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | | | | | | | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | | | | | | | | | |
| Status | | | | | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | M | ove Up | Move Down | | | | New | Delete | |

• Modbus TCP Slave I/O Mapping

After you have added channels under the tab of Modbus Slave Channel, you can find the variables and the set access types under this tab.

| Modbus Slave Channel Variable Mapping Channel Address Type Unit Description Modbus Slave Init Channel ValiB0 ARRAY [00] OF BYTE Read Cols Modbus TCPSlave Parameters Channel 1 ValiB1 ARRAY [00] OF BYTE Read Holding Registers Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Channel 2 ValiW1 ARRAY [00] OF WORD Read Input Registers Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Channel 3 ValiW2 ARRAY [00] OF WORD Read Input Registers Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Read Input Registers Z Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Read Input Registers Z Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Katuang Katuang Katuang Katuang Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Katuang Katuang Katuang Katuang Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping Katuang Katuang Katuang Katuang Katuang Katuang | General | Find | | Filter Show | all | | • A | dd FB for IO Channel 🔭 Go to I | nstance |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------|-------------|---------|--------------------|------|--------------------------------|---------|
| Modbus Slave Init ** Channel 1 %IB1 ARRAY [00] OF BYTE Read Discrete Inputs Modbus TCPSlave Parameters ** Channel 2 %IW1 ARRAY [00] OF WORD Read Holding Registers Modbus TCPSlave I/O Mapping ** Channel 3 %IW2 ARRAY [00] OF WORD Read Input Registers Status Status ** ** ** ** ** ** | Modbus Slave Channel | | Mapping | Channel | Address | Туре | Unit | Description | |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects Status | | | | Channel 0 | %IB0 | ARRAY [00] OF BYTE | | Read Coils | |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters Read Input Registers Channel 3 %IW2 ARRAY [00] OF WORD Read Input Registers 2 ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects Status | Modbus Slave Init | | | Channel 1 | %IB1 | ARRAY [00] OF BYTE | | Read Discrete Inputs | |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects Status | | | | Channel 2 | %IW1 | ARRAY [00] OF WORD | | Read Holding Registers | |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects Status | ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | Channel 3 | %IW2 | ARRAY [00] OF WORD | | Read Input Registers | |
| Status | ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | | | | | | | | |
| | ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | | | | | | | | |
| Information | Status | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | Information | | | | | | | | |
| | information | | | | | | | | |

- ① The descriptions here reflect what you have set for the **Access Type** in Modbus Slave Channel tab.
- ② The controller registers that are read/written by this channel.
- ③ Timing for the data refreshing; refer to section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings for more information.

Modbus TCP Slave IEC Object

You can check the status of Modbus TCP Slave under this tab.

| General | Add | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------|----------------|---------|---|--|--|--|
| Modbus Slave Channel | Expression | Type IoDrvModbusTCP.M | Value | Prepared value | Address | Comment | | | |
| Modbus Slave Init | SUPER^ | ModbusTCPSlaveBase | | | | | | | |
| | 🍫 xInitDone | BOOL | FALSE | | | | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | 🍫 xBusy | BOOL | FALSE | | | Is TRUE as long as a request is in progress | | | |
| | 🍫 xDone | BOOL | FALSE | | | Is TRUE if a request finished successfully | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | * xError | BOOL | TRUE | | | Is TRUE if a request finished unsuccessfully | | | |
| | byModbusError | MB_ERRORCODES | TCP_COMMUNI | | | Specifies the current error as defined in the " | | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | 🖲 🍫 ComSettings | ModbusTCPComSetti | | | | | | | |
| | ComState | MODBUSTCPCOMST | SOCKET_ERROR | | | | | | |
| Status | 🍫 iChannelIndex | INT | -1 | | | | | | |
| | ₩ xConfirmError | BOOL | FALSE | | | continue processing at rising edge | | | |
| Information | * xDoInit | BOOL | TRUE | | | If true then xConfirmE also sends all reset | | | |

| Expression | Description |
|---------------|--|
| bConfirmError | If the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled, during the data transmission, any channel that showed error stops. After the bConfirmError shows "TRUE", the channel that showed error previously continues to execute. |
| bDolnit | Initialized the Slave. |

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Expression | Description | | | | | |
|---------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| bInitDone | The initialization of the Slave is completed. | | | | | |
| bBusy | This channel is in data transmission. | | | | | |
| bDone | The data transmission via this channel is completed. | | | | | |
| bError | Error occurs when this channel is in data transmission. | | | | | |
| ModbusError | Records of the Modbus error. | | | | | |
| iChannelIndex | The number of the channel that is in execution. | | | | | |

• Status

Here you can find the Modbus TCP Slave status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| Modbus_TCP_Slave X | | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| General | ModbusGenericSerialMa | aster: | Runnin | 9 | |
| Modbus Slave Channel | ModbusTCPSlave | 40 | Runnin | g The error has been deared. | |
| Modbus Slave Init | Last diagnostic message | , | | | Acknowledge |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | Slave Diag | | Slave's diagnostic informatio | n | |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | - ComState Request Counter | OFF 2833 | Not active | | |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | Error Counter | 5666 | | | |
| Status | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | |

• Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| General | General Name: Modbus TCP Slave |
|----------------------------|---|
| Modbus Slave Channel | Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH Categories: Modbus TCP Slave Type: 89 ID: 0000 0005 |
| Modbus Slave Init | |
| ModbusTCPSlave Parameters | Version: 4.1.0.0 Order number: - |
| ModbusTCPSlave I/O Mapping | Description: A generic Modbus device that is configured as Slave for a Modbus TCP Master Configuration version: 3.5.11.0 |
| ModbusTCPSlave IEC Objects | |
| Status | |

9.3.3 Modbus TCP Slave

If AX-8 Series PLC is set to act as a Modbus TCP Slave, you need to add Modbus TCP Slave Device in and set up the allowable areas for Coils/Registers. If Modbus TCP Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus TCP Slave.

• Modbus TCP Slave tree diagram

| Devices | | | × |
|---|--|---------|---|
| Untitled3 | | | • |
| 🖻 🍿 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | | |
| Hardware Configuration | | | |
| 🖃 🍌 Network Configuration | | | |
| 📥 EtherNetIP Filter | | | |
| 📥 🙏 ModbusTCP Filter | | | |
| E II PLC Logic | | | |
| 🖻 🔘 Application | | | |
| Library Manager | | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| 🖻 🌃 Task Configuration | | | |
| 😑 🍪 EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| - D Motion_PRG | | | |
| 🖃 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| DIC_PRG | | | |
| Ethernet (Ethernet) | | | |
| ModbusTCP_Slave_Device (ModbusTCP Slave Device) | | | |
| BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | | |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | |

9.3.3.1 Adding a Modbus TCP Slave Device

1. Right-click the **Ethernet (Ethernet)** node in the tree view to open a context menu. And click **Add Device**...to open the Add Device setting window.

| Devices | | ▼ ₽ | × |
|------------------------------------|--------|------------------|---|
| □ □ Untitled3 | | | - |
| Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | | |
| - 🔏 Hardware Configuration | | | |
| 🖻 👗 Network Configuration | | | |
| A EtherNetIP Filter | | | |
| A ModbusTCP Filter | | | |
| PLC Logic | | | |
| Application | | | |
| Library Manager | | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| Task Configuration | - | | |
| EtherCAT_Task (IEC | -lasks | 5) | |
| Bintask (IEC-Tasks | 3 | | |
| | 9 | | |
| Ethernet (Ethernet) | x | Cut | |
| BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | Сору | |
| BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIC) | 8 | Paste | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn | × | Delete | |
| - 🏅 SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | Delete | |
| | | Refactoring | • |
| | G | Properties | |
| | 1000 | Add Object | |
| | | Add Folder | |
| | | Add Device | |
| | | Insert Device | |
| | | Disable Device | |
| | | Update Device | |
| | ß | Edit Object | |
| | | Edit Object With | |

2. Find and double-click **Modbus TCP Slave Device** or click **Add Device** to add this port in.

| me ModbusTCP_Slave_Device | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| tion | | | | | |
| Append device O Insert device O P | lug device 🔾 | Update device | | | |
| ring for a full text search | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | | | |
| lame | Vendor | Technological and the second se | Version | Description | |
| Fieldbuses | | | | | |
| 🕸 👄 EtherNet/IP | | | | | |
| S- Modbus | | | | | |
| Hodbus TCP Master | | | | | |
| ModbusTCP Slave Device | | | | | |
| | | | 4.1.0.0 | A device that works as a Modbus TCF | D Slave |
| ModbusTCP Slave Device | e 3S - Smart | Software Solutions GmbH | 4.1.0.0 | | |
| Profinet IO | | | | |) |
| Group by category Display all version | | | | |) |
| Group by category Display all version | ons (for experts o | | | |) Jiava. |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution | ons (for experts o | | | |)) olive |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device | ons (for experts o | | | | 3 |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 | ons (for experts o | | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | ons (for experts o ns GmbH te | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4.1.0.0 | ons (for experts o ns GmbH te | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | ons (for experts o ns GmbH te | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | ons (for experts o ns GmbH te | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4.1.0.0 Order Number: - Description: A device that works as | ons (for experts o ns GmbH ce a Modbus TCP SI | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |
| Group by category Display all version Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solution Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device Version: 4. 1.0.0 Order Number: - | ons (for experts o ns GmbH ce a Modbus TCP SI | only) 🗌 Display outdate | | | |

9.3.3.2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave Device

General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus TCP Slave Device. Set up the allowable areas for Coils/Registers. If Modbus TCP Slave uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions.

| General | Configured Parameters | | | | |
|--|---|-----|----|--------|------------------|
| | Watchdog | 500 | 0 | (ms) | 🗹 dose TCP socke |
| Serial Gateway | Slave port | 502 | \$ | Bind 1 | to adapter |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device I/O Mapping | Holding registers | 10 | - | (%IW) | Writeable |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device IEC | Input registers | 10 | \$ | (%QW) | |
| Objects | Discrete Bit Areas | | | | |
| Status | Coils | 0 | - | (%DX) | |
| Information | Discrete Inputs | 0 | 0 | (%QX) | |
| | | | | | |
| | Data Model | | | | |
| | Data Model | | | | |
| | Deta Model Start addresses Colis | 0 | | | |
| | Startaddresses Coils | | • | | |
| | Start addresses Coils Discrete inputs | 0 | - | | |
| | Startaddresses Coils | | | | |

Modbus TCP Slave Device I/O Mapping

Here you can select the bus cycle task of Modbus TCP Slave Device to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. Refer to **section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings** for more information.

| General | Find | | Filter Show all | | - + | Add FB f | or IO Channel |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| Serial Gateway | Variable | Mapping | Channel Holding Registers | Address %IW0 | Type ARRAY [09] OF WORD | Unit | Description |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device I/O Mapping | B- * | | Input Registers | %QW0 | ARRAY [09] OF WORD | | |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device IEC Objects | | | | | | | |
| Status | | | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Reset Ma | Always update | variables | Use parent de |
| | 🍫 = Create new va | riable 🍫 = Ma | p to existing variable | e | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | Bus Cycle Options | | | | | | |
| | Bus Cycle Options Bus cycle task | Use parent bus cycle se Use parent bus cycle set | | create require | ed tasks | | |

• Status

Here you can find the Modbus TCP Slave Device status information, for example **Running** or **Stopped**, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.

| Seneral | Modbus TCP Slave Device : | | Running | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|----|---|------------|
| Serial Gateway | Last diagnostic message | | | Acknowledg |
| Aodbus TCP Slave Device I/O Apping | Status | | Device's status information | |
| | Connections | 1 | Number of active TCP-Client Connections | |
| lodbus TCP Slave Device IEC bjects | TCP-Port Status | OK | | |
| ojecto | Request Counter | 61 | Total number of incomming client requests | |
| atus | Modbus Exception Counter | 0 | Number of Request that have been rejected with Exception Code | |

• Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

| General | General |
|-----------------------------|--|
| | Name: ModbusTCP Slave Device |
| Serial Gateway | Vendor: 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH |
| | Categories: ModbusTCP Slave Device |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device I/O | Type: 115 |
| Mapping | ID: 0000 0002 |
| Modbus TCP Slave Device IEC | Version: 4.1.0.0 |
| Objects | Order number: - |
| Status | Description: A device that works as a Modbus TCP Slave |
| 010100 | Configuration version: 3.5.16.0 |

9.4 EtherNet/IP

Network-related parameters can be modified by adding new Ethernet device. All functions related to network must be adjusted under this tab (e.g. Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP). Follow the below section to set up the basic settings for communication via the Ethernet Adapter.

9.4.1 Introduction to EtherNet/IP

9.4.1.1 EtherNet/IP Overview

Ethernet Industrial Protocol (EtherNet/IP) is an open industrial networking standard, managed by ODVA (Open DeviceNet Vendors Association).

EtherNet/IP works on a TCP/UDP/IP based Ethernet network and uses most widely deployed collections of Ethernet standards to provide a broad range of applications in different industries that require high-speed and stability including Factory Automation (FA), Building Automation (BA), Process Automation (PA) and many more.

Delta covers a full range of controller and drive products supported by EtherNet/IP, including Programmable Logic Controllers (PLC), inverters, Human Machine Interfaces (HMI) and so on. Refer to **section 9.4.5** for a full product list supported by EtherNet/IP. In addition, users can also use the EDS file to connect to the EtherNet/IP devices of other brands.

| Term | Definition |
|------------------|---|
| ODVA | Open DeviceNet Vendor Association for EtherNet/IP |
| EIP | EtherNet/IP, an industrial Ethernet network, provides interoperability for system providers. IP stands for Industrial Protocol. The term "EIP" (EtherNet/IP) will be used throughout this manual. |
| I/O Connection | Via the I/O connection to connect to EtherNet/IP and to exchange data cyclically |
| Explicit Message | Connect to EtherNet/IP and to exchange data non-cyclically. Data will be exchanged piece by piece via instructions. |
| RPI | Requested Packet Interval, via the I/O connection to connect to EtherNet/IP to exchange data at regular time intervals |
| ACD | Address Conflict Detection to detect IP address duplications. |
| P/C TAG | Produced / Consumed TAG. A produced TAG sends its data to consumed TAGs (consumers) without using logic.TAGs are the methods used for assigning and referencing memory locations for Rockwell PLCs, the same as the registers for Delta PLCs. |
| EDS | Electronic Data Sheets; EDS files are simple text files used by EtherNet/IP network configuration tools to help you identify EtherNet/IP products and easily commission them on a network. |
| Data Mapping | Exchange data between devices. |

9.4.1.2 Definition

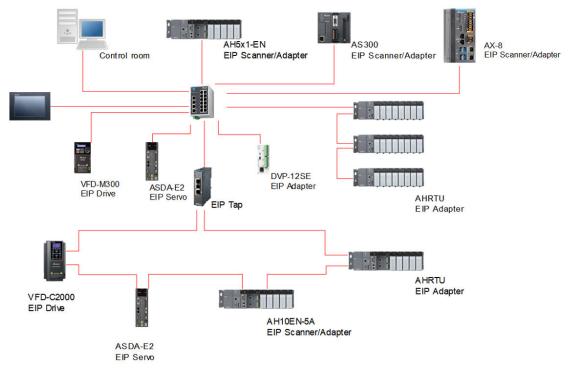
Π

| EIP Scanner | The master station is called Scanner in EtherNet/IP. |
|-------------|---|
| EIP Adapter | The slave station is called Adapter in EtherNet/IP. |
| MODBUS TCP | MODBUS TCP is a MODBUS communication protocol, widely used on Ethernet. |

9.4.1.3 Features of Ethernet

9.4.1.3.1 Delta EIP Structure

This typical Delta EIP architecture includes EIP Scanner and Adapter; data mapping can be achieved between devices via an I/O connection and explicit message.



9.4.1.3.2 Features of EIP

• Flexibility

- Flexible topology: EIP devices may include an Ethernet single port as well as Ethernet dual port, and provide applicable networks such as linear topology, ring topology and ring topology for faster expansion and easier management.
- Network compatible: IT specialists are not required for Internet connection setup, while the Wi-Fi connection is provided.

• Simplicity

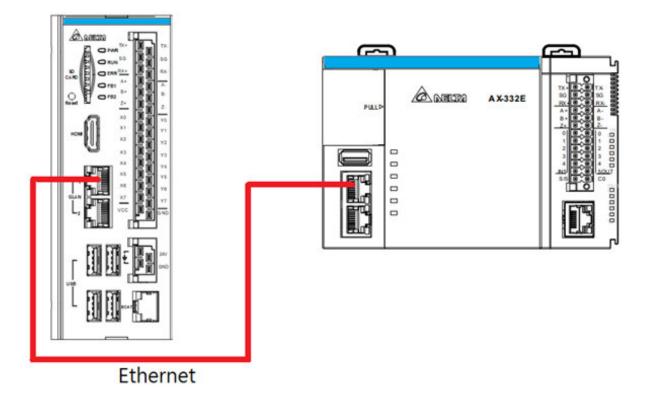
- Via a connector: Delta provides a full range of product line, including human machine interfaces (HMI), programmable logic controllers (PLC) and inverter drives, for application in an industrial operation. Simply via a RJ-45 connector, a network can be built up, saving costs on cables and other connecting tools.
- Single network: In replace with the 3-tier industrial architecture, single network architecture provides 100Mbps high-speed cyclical and non-cyclical data mapping function, ensuring a complete network diagnosis and effectively shortening debugging time.

9.4.2 EtherNet/IP Scanner Function

9.4.2.1 Setting up AX-8 Series PLC

9.4.2.1.1 Hardware Configuration

This application example is to connect AX-8 Series PLC to AX-332 via Ethernet.



9.4.2.1.2 Read-Write Setting for Implicit Messages

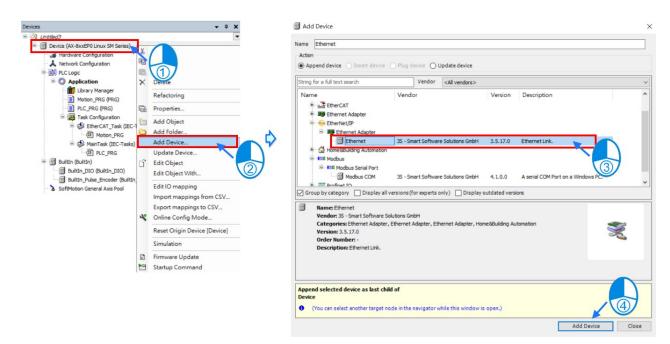
Map the read/write address to the register in option card via the master station (Scanner) to exchange data cyclically and one-time read/write data via the register for implicit messages in EtherNet/IP.

• Example for creating EIP

The IP address of the devices applied in this example are shown as follows:

| Devieee | AX-8 | 192.168.1.10 (default) |
|---------|--------|------------------------|
| Devices | AX-332 | 192.168.1.11 |

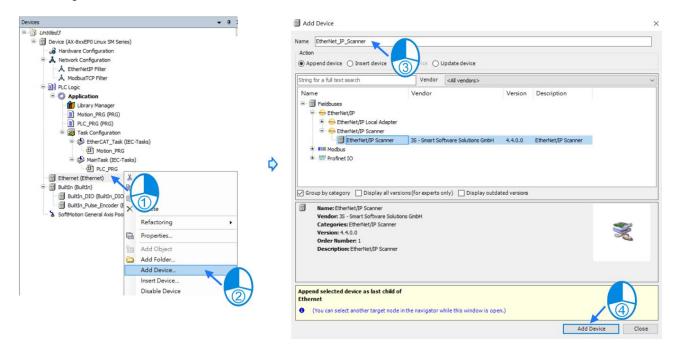
1. Right-click the PLC in the tree view to see a context menu. Click **Add Device**...to open the setting window and create Ethernet Device.



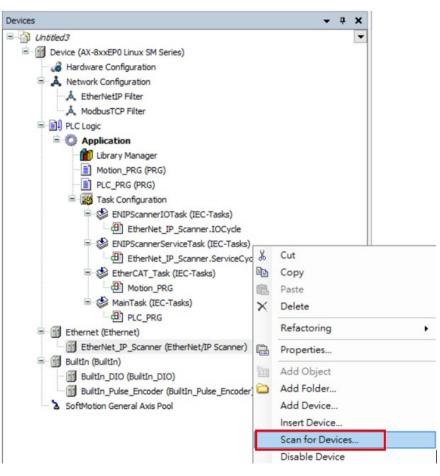
2. Create Interface. Go to Ethernet (Ethernet) > General.

| Devices | • # X | Ethernet X | | |
|---|-------|---|--|---|
| Gild Unsted: Gomected] (AX-BocEP0 Linux SM Series) Gild Hardware Configuration A Etherhold: Pitter A Etherhold: Pitter | | General Log Status | work interface Browse | |
| R.C.Logic Reference in the interval of the interval o | | Ethernet Device I/O Mapping Ethernet Device IEC Objects Information | Network Adapters Intrifaces Name Description 10 127.0.0.1 ECAT 0.0.0.0 OLAN1 152168.0.10 OLAN2 152168.1.10 | × |
| Buttin (Builtin) Builtin (Builtin) Builtin (Builtin) Builtin (Builtin) Builtin (Builtin) Builtin (Builtin) Softwatan General Aus Pool | | | IP eldress 152.168.0.10 Subset mesk 255.255.0 Default getway 0.0.0.0 MAC eldress 001823.96 8B DA | |

3. Right-click the **Ethernet (Ethernet)** node in the tree view to see a context menu. Click **Add Device**...to open the setting window and create **EtherNet/IP Scanner**.



4. Adapters can be created via Scan for Devices.



9.4.2.1.3 CIP Object Read-Write for Explicit Messages

Please refer to **Appendix A <EtherNet/IP Service and Object>** in VFD EtherNet/IP Application Manual to check the objects supported by the option card and make sure to understand read-write methods for explicit messages before using this function. The master is allowed to configure the setting values of drives directly with the relevant Object Class address. The object class code is 0x300 for drives and the address is formatted as the following shown.

EIP communication data format

| Object clas | S | Instance | | Attribute |
|-------------|---|-----------|---|------------|
| 0x300 | + | Pr. Group | + | Pr. Number |

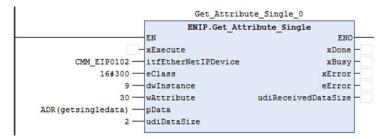
• Read-write Example

To read and write parameter 09-30 (decoding with Ethernet/IP):

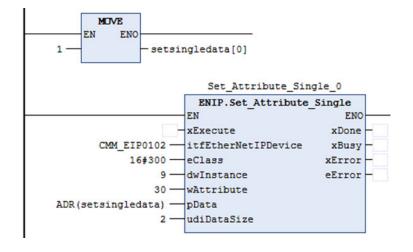
Declare function blocks and variables.

```
PROGRAM PLC_PRG
VAR
Get_Attribute_Single_0: ENIP.Get_Attribute_Single;
Set_Attribute_Single_0: ENIP.Set_Attribute_Single;
getsingledata: ARRAY[0..999] OF BYTE;
setsingledata: ARRAY[0..999] OF BYTE;
END_VAR
```

Read parameter 9-30 via the function block as shown below.



■ Write 1 to parameter 9-30 via the function block as shown below.



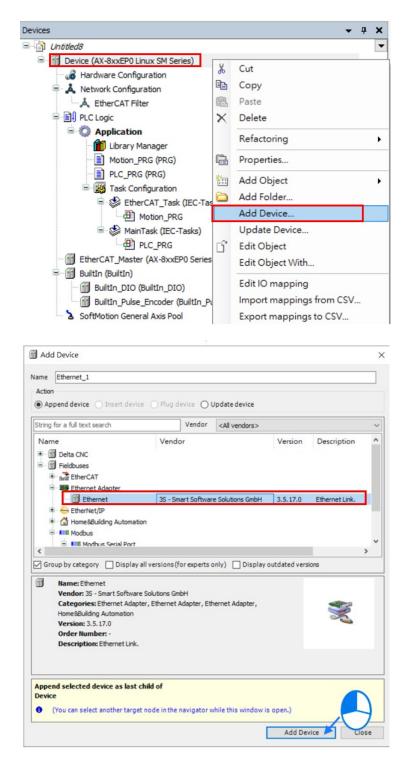
9.4.3 Adapter Function

This section will explain how to add an adapter and set up its data structure. Refer to the following steps for configuration.

9.4.3.1 Create an EDS File

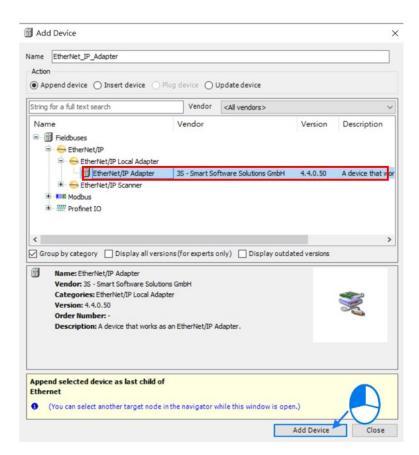
This section will introduce how AX-8 Series PLC creates an EDS File.

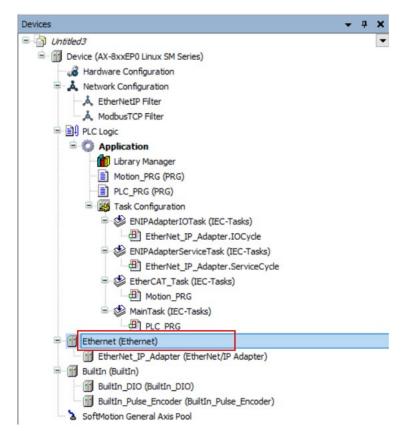
• Add an Ethernet Device

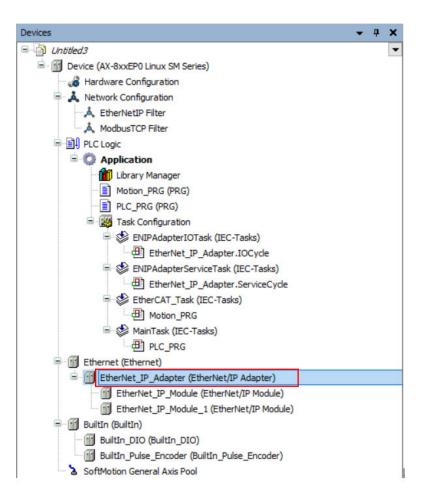


_9

• Add EtherNet_IP_Adapter Device







■ General- EDS File Settings

| General | EDS File | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------|--------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Tags | Vendor name | 3S - Smart S | oftware Solutions GmbH | EtherNet/IP |
| Log | Vendor ID | 1285 | - | Etherivet/ II |
| | Product name | EtherNet/IP | Adapter | |
| EtherNet/IP Adapter I/O Mapping | Product code | 120 | - | |
| EtherNet/IP Adapter IEC Objects | Major revision | 1 | - | |
| Status | Minorrevision | 1 | - | |
| Information | Support ACD | \square | | |
| Inormation | Enable ACD | | | |
| | Enable LLDP | \checkmark | | |
| | Install to Devic | e Repository | Export EDS File | |

| Item | Description | Default |
|------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Vender name | The name of the supplier | 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH |
| Vendor ID | Supplier ID | 1285 |
| Product name | The name of the product | EtherNet/IP Adapter |
| Product code | Product code | 120 |
| Major revision | Major revision | 1 |
| Minor revision | Minor revision | 1 |
| Install to Device Repository | In case that a device with the same device identification has already been installed, you would be asked whether the device should be overwritten. If the device is taken as the remote adapter inserted directly below the EtherNet/IP scanner, you would be asked to update the device automatically. | |
| Export EDS File | The EDS file is created and stored on the local computer. In this way, the EDS file can be used in an external configuration file. | |

• Add EtherNet/IP Module to create data file

| String for a full text search | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | | |
|--|---------------------|------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Name Fieldbuses EtherNet/IP Comparison | Vendor | | Version | Description |
| EtherNet/IP Module | 35 - Smart Sof | ware Solutions GmbH | 4.1.0.0 | A device that work |
| < ☑ Group by category ☐ Display all ve Please select | rsions (for experts | | dated version | ns |
| Group by category Display all ve | | | dated version | |
| Group by category Display all ve | | | dated version | |
| Group by category Display all ve | | | dated version | |

| Devices | - | ą | × |
|---|---|---|---|
| S Untitled3 | | | - |
| 🖮 🔟 Device (AX-8xxEP0 Linux SM Series) | | | |
| - 🔏 Hardware Configuration | | | |
| 😑 🍌 Network Configuration | | | |
| A, EtherNetIP Filter | | | |
| A ModbusTCP Filter | | | |
| 😑 🗐 PLC Logic | | | |
| Application | | | |
| Library Manager | | | |
| Motion_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| PLC_PRG (PRG) | | | |
| Task Configuration | | | |
| 🖃 🍪 ENIPAdapterIOTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| EtherNet_IP_Adapter.IOCycle | | | |
| ENIPAdapterServiceTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| EtherNet_IP_Adapter.ServiceCycle | | | |
| 🖻 🍪 EtherCAT_Task (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| Motion_PRG | | | |
| 🖻 🍪 MainTask (IEC-Tasks) | | | |
| PLC_PRG | | | |
| Ethernet (Ethernet) | | | |
| EtherNet_IP_Adapter (EtherNet/IP Adapter) | | | |
| EtherNet_IP_Module (EtherNet/IP Module) | | | |
| EtherNet_IP_Module_1 (EtherNet/IP Module) | | | |
| BuiltIn (BuiltIn) | | | |
| 👔 BuiltIn_DIO (BuiltIn_DIO) | | | |
| BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder (BuiltIn_Pulse_Encoder) | | | |
| SoftMotion General Axis Pool | | | |

• Export EDS File

After the configuration is completed, export the EDS file and store the EDS file – EtherNet_IP Adapter.eds in the PC.

| General | EDS File | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Tags | Vendor name | 3S - Smart Software Solutions GmbH | EtherNet/IP |
| Log | Vendor ID | 1285 | Luien et/ir |
| , | Product name | EtherNet/IP Adapter | 7 |
| EtherNet/IP Adapter I/O Mapping | Product code | 120 | |
| EtherNet/IP Adapter IEC Objects | Major revision | 1 | |
| Status | Minorrevision | 1 | |
| | Support ACD | \checkmark | |
| Information | Enable ACD | | |
| | Enable LLDP | \square | |

9.4.3.2 Import an EDS File

1. Choose **Tools > Device Repository**.

| 월 달 달 종 요 여 김 백 隆 × 44 44 44 | ebug Tools Window Help Package Manager Library Repository Device Repository |
|--|---|
| Devices | Image: System |

2. Choose Install and select the target EDS file to download: EtherNet_IP Adapter.eds.

| ocation | System Repositor (C:\ProgramData | y \Delta Industrial Automation\DIAStudio\D | | cations | | | | |
|------------|--|---|--|---------|----------|------------------------|-----------|---|
| nstalled D | Device Descriptions | | | | | | | |
| String for | a full text search | Vendor <all vendors=""></all> | , v Ins | tall | | | | |
| | Nelta CNC Nelta Localbus Master Function Cards /O Modules NLCs Naver Supply Modules | | | nsse! | | | | |
| Install D | evice Description | 8 | | | | | | 1 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| ÷ . | * 个 🦲 > This P | C> :Local Disk(D:) > project > PAC | > AX8 > AX8 LINUX > | | ~ Ö | , ○ Search | AX8 LINUX | |
| 合管理 | 新增資料実 | | | | | | 100 - | |
| Dor | cuments 🖈 ^ | □ 名稱 ^ | 修改日期 | 調査 | 大小 | | | |
| | tures 🖈 | AX8-DIADESIGNER file | 2023/5/17 1:47 PM | | | | | |
| CH | | check version | 2023/5/17 1:47 PM 2023/5/16 8:58 AM | | | | | |
| CH | | CIP | 2023/2/17 6:34 PM | | | | | |
| CH | | data exchange | 2023/5/29 4:30 PM | | | | | |
| dor | | EIP | 2023/5/29 11:07 AM | | | | | |
| 00 | ne | FW | 2023/5/22 6:29 PM | | | | | |
| Onel | Drive - Delta | issue | 2023/6/1 11:34 AM | r i | | | | |
| This | PC | motion | 2023/3/6 10:40 AM | | | | | |
| | | Noise simulator | 2023/5/29 11:17 AM | r) | | | | |
| - | Objects | OPC UA | 2023/3/16 10:48 AM | R. | | | | |
| | wnloads | quality | 2023/3/7 5:01 PM | | | | | |
| - | cuments | runtime firmware | 2023/3/8 4:58 PM | | | | | |
| | usic | SaveRetain | 2023/4/21 12:00 PM | | | | | |
| | sktop | SDDD | 2023/6/6 3:49 PM | | | | | |
| Fic Pic | tures | SRS | 2023/6/6 3:49 PM | | | | | |
| Vid | leos | Startup command TCP MODBUS | 2023/5/22 2:18 PM | | | | | |
| 11-5 1 | cal Disk(C) | PLC | 2023/6/6 4:11 PM 2023/2/23 10:12 AM | | | | | |
| LOC | cal Disk(D:) | EtherNet_IP Adapter.eds | 2023/4/12 5:43 PM | | EDS File | 2 KB | | |
| _ | | | | _ | | | | |
| _ | ~ | | | | | - | | |

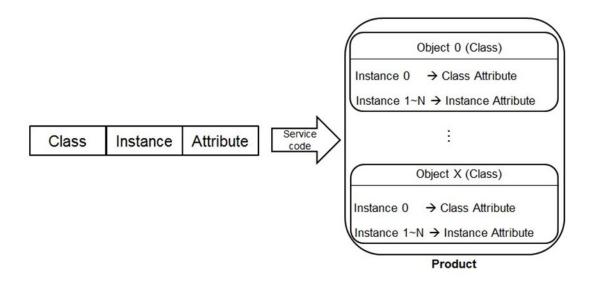
3. Import successfully when you see Device "EtherNet/IP Adapter" installed to device repository.

| cation | System Repository | | | ~ | Edit Locations | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------------|--|----------------|----------------|--|
| | (C:\ProgramData\Delta Indus | trial Automatic | on\DIAStudio\DIADesigne | er-AX\Devices) | | |
| stalled D | evice Descriptions | | | | · | |
| tring for | a full text search | Vendor | <all vendors=""></all> | ~ | Install | |
| Name | | Ver | ndor | ^ | Uninstall | |
| | AX-332EP0MB1T | | a electronics, inc. | | Export | |
| | AX-TEST | | a electronics, inc. a Electronics, Inc. | | | |
| | CMM-EIP01 | | a Electronics, Inc. | | | |
| < | | | | > [×] | | |
| = 0 D | : project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINUX\E | therNet IP Ada | pter.eds | | | |
| 🤇 | Device "EtherNet/IP Adapter" | installed to dev | ice repository | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | Details | |
| | | | | | Deconom | |

9.4.4 CIP Object

9.4.4.1 Object list

In EtherNet/IP, object is referred to as a set of parameters that is structured accordingly by Class, Instance and Attribute. For example, Instance 0 contains basic information of every object, e.g. version and length. While Instance 1~N creates connection or status of required parameters for each product. Users can obtain product parameters from the supported service code via objects (see diagram below).



Read or write objects by using EtherNetIP Services.library or explicit message tool. The supported EtherNet/IP objects are listed below. Refer to the **section 9.4.4.2** for the data type definition. Refer to the **section 9.4.4.3** ~ **9.4.4.6** for object contents.

| Object Name | Function | Class ID |
|-------------------------|---|------------|
| Identity Object | Provides information including manufacturer, device types and versions. | 1 (H'01) |
| Assembly Object | Defines parameter of I/O connection data exchange | 4 (H'04) |
| TCP/IP Interface Object | Displays methods of IP configuration and interface | 245 (H'F5) |
| Ethernet Link Object | Shows the connection status of each Ethernet port on the device. | 246 (H'F6) |

9.4.4.2 Data Type

| Data Type | | | | | Des | crip | tion | | | | | |
|---------------------|---|-------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------|------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------|----------------|----------|------|---------|
| BOOL | False (H'00) | or True(| H'01) | | | | | | | | | |
| | SINT(1 byte |) · INT (2 | 2 bytes |) · DIN | T (4 b | ytes |) · LIN | IT (8 b | ytes) | | | |
| | Num ber 1 | st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | ו ו | 5th | | 6th | 7th | | Bth |
| | | SB | | | | | | | | | | |
| SIGNED | | | | 2LSB | 3LS | D | | | | | | |
| INTEGER | | | LSB LSB | 2LSB 2LSB | | | 4LSE | 3 5 | | 6LSE | 3 7 | _SB |
| | E.g. DINT valu | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Number | | 1st | | 2 | 2nd | | : | 3rd | | 4th | I |
| | DINT | | 78 | | | 56 | | | 34 | | 12 | |
| UNSIGNED INTEGER | USINT(1 byte E.g. UDINT va Number | | | | | (4 t 2nd | oytes) | | T (8 b 3rd | ytes) | 4th | 1 |
| | UDINT | | DD | | СС | | | BB | | AA | · | |
| | ASCII, 1 or 2 by | /tes chara | | unt + 1 t harcount | - | e character Contents (String c | | | | ng conte | nts) | |
| | STRING | 04 | | 00 | | | 4D | 69 |) | 6C | | 6C |
| | STRING2 : 2 I | oytes char | acter c | ount + 2 | byte cl | hara | cter | 1 | 1 | | I | |
| STRING | | | ntents arcount | t) | | | Conte | Contents (String conter | | | | |
| | STRING2 | 04 | 0 | 00 | 4D | 00 | 69 | 00 | 6C | 00 | 6C | 00 |
| | SHORT_STRI | NG:1 by | e char | acter co | unt + 1 | byte | charac | ter | | | | |
| | | Conter | nts(C | harcount |) | | С | ontents | (Strir | ng conte | nts) | |
| | STRING | | 04 | | | | 4D | 69 |) | 6C | | 6C |

This section will provide an overview of the supported data types by objects.

9____

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Data Type | | | | | Desc | riptic | on | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|--------------------|---|--|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| | BYTE (1 byte) | WORD |) (2 b) | , ∕tes) · D\ | NORE | D (4 | bytes) · | LWORD | (8 bytes) | |
| | 1st | | 2nd | 3rd | 4tł | | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th |
| Fixed LENGTH | Byte 7 |) · | | | | | | | | |
| BIT STRING | WORD 7 | 0 15 | 58 | | | | | | | |
| BITOTICING | DWORD 7 | 0 15 | 58 | 2316 | 31 | 24 | | | | |
| | LWORD 7 | 0 15 | 58 | 2316 | 31 | 24 | 3932 | 4740 | 5548 | 6356 |
| | A single string co | nsists mi | ultiple | language | repres | enta | tion. | | | |
| | Name | | [| Data Type | | | | Mea | ning | |
| | Number | | USINT | | | The number of internationalized character strings | | | | character |
| | Strings | | Array Struc | | | Arr cha | ay of aracter st | individu rings | al interna | ationalized |
| | LanguageChar1 | | USINT | | | The first ASCII character of the ISO 639- 2/T language | | | | |
| | LanguageChar2 | USINT | | | The second ASCII character of the ISO 639-2/T language | | | | | |
| | LanguageChar3 | ar3 USINT | | | | The third ASCII character of the ISO 639- 2/T language | | | | |
| STRINGI | CharStringStruc | t | USINT | | The structure of the character string · limited to the Elementary Data type value 0xD0 (STRING) · 0xD5 (STRING2) · 0xD9 (STRINGN) and 0xD4 (SHORT_STRING) | | | alue 0xD0 2) · 0xD9 | | |
| | CharSet | | UINT | UINT | | The character set which the character string is based on which comes from IANA MIB Printer Code (RFC 1759) . | | | from IANA | |
| | InternationalStri | ng | Defin Char | ied StringStruc | in ct | | - | | elements w naracter stri | |
| | ISO 639-2/T langu | lage : | | | | 1 | | | | |
| | Language | Fi | irst Ch | aracter | | Seco | nd Chara | cter | Third Cha | aracter |
| | English | | e | ÷ | | | n | | G | |
| | French | | f | : | | | r | | е | |
| | Spanish | | s | \$ | | | р | | а | |

| Data Type | | | | De | scripti | on | | | | | | |
|-----------|---|---|------|-----|---------|----|-----|-------------|---------------|--------|--|--|
| | Italian | | i | | | t | | | | | | |
| | | TRUCT of : Any Data Type composes the structure. .g. STRUCT of { BOOL · UINT · DINT } = { TRUE · H'1234 · H'56789ABC } | | | | | | | | | | |
| STRUCT | | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4 | th | 5th | 6th | 7th | | | |
| | Byte | 01 | 34 1 | | В | С | 9A | 78 | 56 | | | |
| | Array of:Ar E.g. ARRAY | | | - | '. | | | | | | | |
| ARRAY | Number | 1st | 2nd | 3 | rd | 4 | th | 5th | 6th | | | |
| | Array | 01 | 00 | (|)2 | C | 00 | 03 | 00 | | | |
| EPATH | It's a path th another obje E.g. Identity | ect. | | - | | | | ass, instan | ce and attrib | ute of | | |

9.4.4.3 Identity Object (Class ID: 01 Hex)

Identity information is stored in the Identity Object and consists of the Vendor ID, Device Type, Product Code and Major Revision for your device.

• Service Code

| Sonvico | Service | | bute | |
|---------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| code | Service Name | Class Attribute | Instance Attribute | Description |
| H'01 | Get_Attributes_All | х | V | Read all attributes. |
| H'05 | Reset | Х | V | Reset. |
| H'0E | Get_Attribute_Single | Х | V | Read a single attribute. |

• Class

Class ID : H'01

Instance

- H'01 : Instance Attribute
- When Instance =1, Instance Attribute are listed below:

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------|---|---|------|------------------------------------|
| H'01 | Vendor ID | Get | UINT | H'31F | Delta Electronics, Inc. | | |
| H'02 | Device Type | Get | UINT | H'0C | Data Type: Communication Adapter | | |
| H'03 | Product Code | Get | UINT | H'4002 | Product code | | |
| | Revision | | STRUCT | | Revision of this device: Major, Minor. | | |
| H'04 | Major Revision | Get | Get | Get | USINT | H'01 | Major Revision Range: H'01~H'7F |
| | Minor Revision | | USINT | H'01 | Minor Revision Range: H'01~H'FF | | |
| H'05 | Status | Get | WORD | H'64 | Status ^{*1} | | |
| H'06 | Serial Number | Get | UDINT | H'2374F75C | The last 8 characters of the MAC address 23: 74: f7: 5C | | |
| H'07 | Product Name | Get | SHORT_STRING | The maximum number of a product name is 32 words. (Data length +Product Name) | | | |

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------------|------|----------------|-----------|--------|-----------------|
| | | | | (H'0D |) AX-816EP0ME1T |

*1 : Status Description (H'05)

| Bit(s) | Name | Description |
|--------|---------------------------|--|
| | | Display if the device has an owner connection. |
| 0 | Owned | 0: No |
| | | 1: Yes |
| 1 | Reserved | 0:Always OFF |
| | | Display if the device is configured or not. |
| 2 | Configured | 0: No |
| | | 1: Yes |
| 3 | Reserved | 0:Always OFF |
| | | 0 : Self-Testing |
| | Extended Device Status | 1 : Firmware Update |
| | | 2 : At least one faulted I/O connection |
| | | 3 : No I/O connections established |
| 4-7 | | 4 : Non-Volatile Configuration bad |
| | | 5 : Major Fault |
| | | 6 : At least one I/O connection in run mode |
| | | 7 : At least one I/O connection established \cdot all in |
| | | idle mode |
| | | 8-15 : Reserved |
| 8 | Minor Recoverable Fault | 0: No minor recoverable fault detected |
| | | 1: Minor recoverable fault detected |
| 9 | Minor Unrecoverable Fault | 0: No minor unrecoverable fault detected |
| 9 | | 1: Minor unrecoverable fault detected |
| 10 | Major Pocovorable Fault | 0: No major recoverable fault detected |
| | Major Recoverable Fault | 1: Major recoverable fault detected |
| | Major Upropovorabla Fault | 0: No major unrecoverable fault detected |
| 11 | Major Unrecoverable Fault | 1: Major unrecoverable fault detected |

9.4.4.4 Assembly Object (Class ID: 04 Hex)

Assembly Objects are used to aggregate data for the input data and output data associated with I/O connections.

• Service Code

| Service | Service Name | Attri | Description | |
|---------|---------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Code | Service Name | Class Attribute | Instance Attribute | Description |
| H'0E | Get_ Attribute_ Single | Х | V | Read a single attribute. |

Class

Class ID : H'04

Instance

- H'64 : Output assembly
- H'65 : Input assembly
- H'66 : Dummy (needed for compatibility)
- When Instance = 64~66, Instance Attribute are listed below:

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|--------------------|------|----------------|---------------|--------|--------------------|
| H'03 | Data | Get | ARRAY of BYTE | H'2 | IO Connection Data |

• Example of reading and writing objects

■ To read Output assembly data, write the data as shown below

Service code : H'0E Class ID : H'04 Instance ID : H'64 Attribute ID : H'03

To read Input assembly data, write the data as shown below

Service code : H'0E Class ID : H'04 Instance ID : H'65 Attribute ID : H'03

9.4.4.5 TCP/IP Interface Object (Class ID: F5 Hex)

Service Code

| Service | Service Name | Attri | Description | |
|---------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Code | Service Marile | Class Attribute | Instance Attribute | Description |
| H'0E | Get_Attribute_ Single | V | V | Read a single attribute |
| H'10 | Set_Attribute_ Single | Х | V | Set values of a single attribute |

• Class

■ Class ID = H'F5

Instance

- H'00 : Class Attribute
- H'01 : Instance Attribute
- When Instance = 0, Class Attribute are listed below:

| Class Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------|----------|----------------|-----------|--------|-----------------|
| H'01 | Revision | Get | UINT | H'4 | Object revision |

■ When Instance = 1, Instance Attribute are listed below:

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------|--------|---|
| H'01 | Status | Get | DWORD | H'2 | IP Status ^{*1} |
| H'02 | Configuration Capability | Get | DWORD | H'20 | Configuration capability ^{*2} |
| H'03 | Configuration Control | Get/Set | DWORD | H'0 | Configuration control*3 |
| | Physical Link Object : | | STRUCT of | | Path to physical link object |
| H'04 | Path Size | Get | UINT | H'0 | Size of Path |
| | Path | | EPATH | | Logical segments identifying the physical link object |
| H'05 | Interface | Get/Set | STRUCT | | TCP/IP network |

9_

AX-8 Series Operation Manual

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-------------------|--|
| | Configuration : | | of | | interface configuration. |
| | IP Address | | UDINT | 192.168.1.5 | The device's IP address |
| | Network Mask | | UDINT | 255.255.255 .0 | The device's network mask |
| | Gateway Address | | UDINT | 0 | Default gateway address |
| | Name Server | | UDINT | 0 | Primary name server |
| | Name Server 2 | | UDINT | 0 | Secondary name server |
| | Domain Name | | STRING | 00 00 | Default domain name |
| H'06 | Host Name | Get | STRING | AX- 8xxxxxxx | Device name |
| H'13 | Encapsulation Inactivity Timeout | Get/Set | UINT | 120 | EIP equipment connection time; unit: seconds; range of values: 0~3600 |

When the master is communicating, the instance attribute H'03 and H'05 cannot be written.

• Example of reading and writing objects

■ To read Instance Attribute H'03, write the data as shown below

Service code : H'0E Class ID : H'F5 Instance ID : H'01 Attribute ID : H'03

■ To read Instance Attribute H'05, write the data as shown below

Service code : H'10 Class ID : H'F5 Instance ID : H'01 Attribute ID : H'05 Data Byte[0~3] : IP Address=192.168.1.5 Byte[4~7] : Network Mask=255.255.255.0 Byte[8~11] : Gateway Mask=0.0.0 Byte[12~15] : Name Server =0 Byte[16~19] : Name Server2 =0

*1 : Interface status

| Status | Description |
|--------|--|
| 0 | Interface Configuration attribute has not been configured. |
| 1 | The Interface Configuration attribute contains valid configuration obtained from BOOTP, DHCP or non- volatile memory. |
| 2 | The Interface Configuration attribute contains valid configuration obtained from hardware. |

*2 : Interface capability flags

| Bit | Description |
|-----|---|
| 0 | BOOTP Client |
| 1 | DNS Client |
| 2 | DHCP Client |
| 3 | DHCP-DNS Update |
| 4 | Configuration Settable |
| 5 | Hardware Configurable |
| 6 | Interface Configuration Change Requires Reset |

*3 : Interface Configuration Control

| Status | Description |
|--------|--|
| 0 | The device shall use the interface configuration values previously stored (for example, in non-volatile memory or via hardware witches). |
| 1 | The device shall obtain its interface configuration values via BOOTP. |
| 2 | The device shall obtain its interface configuration values via DHCP upon start-up. |

9.4.4.6 Ethernet Link Object (Class ID : F6 Hex)

Service Code

| Service | Service Nome | Att | Description | |
|---------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Code | Service Name | Class Attribute | Instance Attribute | Description |
| H'0E | Get_Attribute_Single | V | V | Read a single attribute |

• Class

Class ID : H'F6

Instance

- H'00 : Class Attribute
- H'01 : Instance Attribute
- When Instance = 0, Class Attribute are listed below:

| Class Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------|----------|----------------|-----------|--------|-----------------|
| H'01 | Revision | Get | UINT | H'04 | Object revision |

■ When Instance =1, Instance Attribute are listed below:

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|---|---|
| H'01 | Interface Speed | Get | DWORD | 0 | Interface speed (indeterminate) |
| H'02 | Interface Flags | Get | DWORD | H'0D | Ethernet port status ^{*1} |
| H'03 | Physical Address | Get | ARRAY of 6 USINTs | By Product | MAC address |
| | Interface Capability | | STRUCT of : | | Capabilities of Ethernet interface ^{*2} |
| | Capability Bits | DWORD | H'02000 000 | The definition of Ethernet interface capability | |
| H'0B | Speed/Duplex Options | Get | STRUCT of : | | The definition of speed and duplex options of Ethernet interface. |
| | Speed/Duplex | | USINT | H'00 | The count of speed/ duplex |

| Instance Attribute | Name | Access Rule | Data Type | Values | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------|--|
| | Array Count | | | | options. |
| | Speed/Duplex Array | | ARRAY of STRUCT | | Speed and duplex settings |
| | | | of : | | |
| | Interface Speed | | UINT | H'00 | Ethernet interface speed. For example, 10 bps and 100 bps would be H'0A and H'64 accordingly. |
| | Interface Duplex Mode | | USINT | H'00 | Duplex mode capability of Ethernet interface. For example, half and full duplex would be H'00 and H'01 accordingly. |

*1 : Interface Flag Table

| Bit(s) | Name | Description | |
|--------|-------------------------|--|--|
| 0 | Link Status | 0 indicates an inactive link | |
| 0 | | 1 indicates an active link | |
| 1 | | 0 indicates half duplex | |
| I | Half/Full Duplex | 1 indicates full duplex | |
| | | 0 : Auto-negotiation in progress | |
| | Negotiation Status | 1 : Auto-negotiation and speed detection failed | |
| 2-4 | | 2 : Auto negotiation failed but detected speed | |
| | | 3 : Successfully negotiated speed and duplex | |
| | | 4 : Auto-negotiation not attempted. Forced speed and duplex. | |
| 5 | Manual Setting Requires | shall be set zero | |
| | Reset | | |
| 6 | Local Hardware Fault | 0 indicates the interface detects no local hardware fault | |
| | | 1 indicates a local hardware fault is detected | |
| 7-31 | Reserved | 0 | |

*2 : Interface Capability Bits

| Bit(s) | Name | Description |
|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| 0 | Manual Setting Requires Reset | Indicates whether or not the device requires a reset when instance attribute #6 (Interface Control attribute) changes. 0 indicates the device does not require a reset 1 indicates the device requires a rest |
| 1 | Auto-negotiate | 0 indicates the interface does not support auto-negotiation 1 indicates the interface supports auto-negotiation |
| 2 | Auto-MDIX | 0 indicates the interface does not support auto MDIX operation 1 indicates the interface supports auto MDIX operation |
| 3 | Manual Speed/Duplex | 0 indicates the interface does not support to set speed/duplex.(Instance attribute #6, Interface Control attribute)1 indicates the interface supports to set speed/duplex |
| 4-31 | Reserved | shall be set 0 |

9.4.5 Delta EIP Product List

| 9.4.5.1 | Delta EIP | Product List | (Adapters | Supported) |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 7. I.O. I | | | (Auguer 5 | |

| Positioning | Product | Version |
|------------------|---|-----------------|
| | AHCPU501-EN \ AHCPU511-EN \ AHCPU521-EN \ AHCPU531-EN | V2.00 |
| | AHCPU560-EN2 | V1.00 |
| | AH10EN-5A | V2.00 |
| | AHRTU-ETHN-5A | V1.00 |
| Midrongo | AH10EMC-5A | V1.00 |
| Mid-range PLC | AS300 Series | V1.00 |
| | AS200 Series | V1.00 |
| | AS300 Series (AS-FEN02 communication card) | V1.06 (V1.00) |
| | AS00SCM-A (AS-FEN02 communication card) | V2.02 (V1.00) |
| | AX-3 Series | V1.01 |
| | AX-8 Series | V1.01 |
| | DVPES2-E Series | V3.60 |
| Small PLC | DVP26SE | V1.00 |
| | DVP-ES3 Series | V1.00 |
| | CMM-EIP01/02 communication card (VFD-M300 Series) | V1.00 |
| Inverter | CMC-EIP01 communication card (VFD-C2000 Series) | V1.06 |
| | CMM-EIP03 communication card (VFD-M300 Series) | V1.00 |
| | CMC-EIP02 communication card (VFD-C2000 Series) | V1.00 |

9.4.5.2 Delta EIP Product List (Scanners Supported)

| Positioning | Product | Version |
|-------------|---|---------|
| | AHCPU501-EN \ AHCPU511-EN \ AHCPU521-EN \ AHCPU531-EN | V2.00 |
| | AHCPU560-EN2 | V1.00 |
| Mid-range | AH10EN-5A | V2.00 |
| PLC | AS300 Series AS200 Series | V1.00 |
| | AX-3 Series | V1.01 |
| | AX-8 Series | V1.01 |
| Small PLC | DVP-ES3 Series | V1.00 |

9_

9.5 Network Security

We suggest you to use closed network or use local network with a firewall to secure and prevent the Ethernet network as well as our products from any unwanted attacks.



Appendix A Troubleshooting

Table of Contents

| A.1 Tr | roubleshooting | A-2 |
|--------|---|-----|
| A.1.1 | Basic Troubleshooting Steps | A-2 |
| A.1.2 | Clear Error States | A-2 |
| A.1.3 | Troubleshooting SOP | A-3 |
| A.1.4 | Viewing Log | A-3 |
| A.2 Tr | roubleshooting of CPU Modules | A-5 |
| A.2.1 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds | A-5 |
| A.2.2 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 2 Seconds | A-6 |
| A.2.3 | ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 1 Second | A-6 |
| A.3 Tr | roubleshooting of Function Blocks | A-7 |
| A.3.1 | DL_CmpAX8xxEDrv | A-7 |
| A.3.2 | Motion Control Related Instructions | A-8 |

A.1 Troubleshooting

A.1.1 Basic Troubleshooting Steps

This section introduces the types of errors which might occur during operation and their causes as well as resolutions. Complete the checklist below before looking further into the errors.

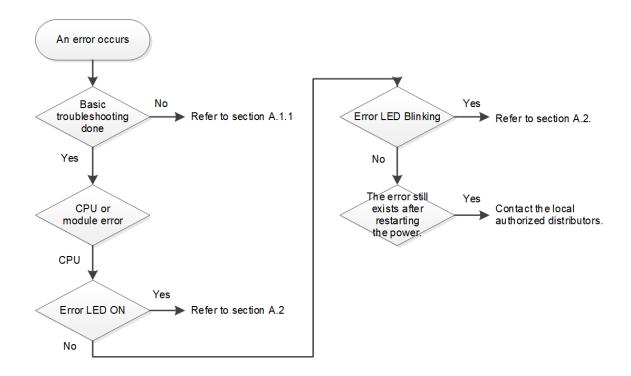
- 1. Check the following items:
 - The controller is operating under the specified conditions (considering the environmental, electronic, vibration safety and so on).
 - Power supply is connected properly to the controller.
 - The modules, terminals and cables are installed correctly.
 - All LED indicators work properly.
 - Set all the switches correctly.
- 2. Check the operational functions:
 - Check and eliminate errors from external devices.
 - Check system operation and logs through System Log in DIADesigner-AX.
- 3. Identify possible causes based on examination in point 1 and 2.
 - AX-8 Series
 - CPU
 - Parameter or program settings

A.1.2 Clear Error States

This section introduces the methods to clear the error states. The system will keep going into error mode if the source errors are not resolved.

- 1. Turn off the CPU and restart again.
- 2. Perform Reset Warm to clear the error logs through DIADesigner-AX.
- 3. Perform Reset Origin to reset CPU to default and redownload the program through DIADesigner-AX.

A.1.3 Troubleshooting SOP



A.1.4 Viewing Log

When an error occurs, the corresponding error codes are generated and stored in the controller. On the **Log** tab of the **Device** pane, you are able to check all the events recorded during system startup and shutdown, application download and loading of boot application, custom entries, log entries from I/O drivers and from data source. Refer to **section 4.2.1.5** for more information on Log.

1. Log Tab (Device > LOG)

| Communication Settings | 1 3 warnin | g(s) 🖸 0 error(s) 📒 0 භ | coeption(s) • 285 information(s) • 27 debug | message(s) <al components=""></al> | | |
|------------------------|------------|--------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|--|
| Applications | Offline I | Offline logging UTC time | | | | |
| | Severity | Time Stamp | Description | Component | | |
| Backup and Restore | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:05:31 | [CAN]EVT_StartDone!! | IoDrvDeita | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:05:31 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!! | IODrvDeltaModbusTCPS | | |
| Files | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:05:31 | [CAN]EVT_PrepareStart!! | IoDrvDelta | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:05:31 | [MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart!! | IODrvDetaModbusTCPS | | |
| Log | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CODESYS Control ready | CM | | |
| Di C Calificaci | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_FINISHED | CmpDeltaConnHandler | | |
| PLC Settings | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Application [Application] not started | СтрАрр | | |
| PLC Shell | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Application [Application] denied to start ev | СтрАрр | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_COMM | CmpDeltaConnHandler | | |
| Users and Groups | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_COMM | IoDrvAX308_Counter_Timer | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_COMM | IoDrvAX308_Capture_Compare | | |
| Access Rights | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_TASKS | CmpDeltaConnHandler | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_TASKS | IoDrvAX308_Counter_Timer | | |
| Symbol Rights | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | CH_INIT_TASKS | IoDrvAX308_Capture_Compare | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Setting router 2 address to (2ddc:c0a8:0 | CmpRouter | | |
| System Parameters | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Setting router 1 address to (0000) | CmpRouter | | |
| | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Setting router 0 address to (0005) | CmpRouter | | |
| Task Deployment | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | IoDrvEthernetIP | IoDrvEtherNetIP | | |
| Charles | • | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Retain size in config changed, or retain are | CmpRetain | | |
| Status | 0 | 01.01.1970 08:00:13 | Bootproject of application [Application] loa | CmpApp | | |

2. Files

Log files (.csv) are generated after shutdown of the controller or when the log exceeds 64KB. The log files can be found on the **Files** tab of the **Device** pane.

| Device × | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|------|-----------|----|---|---------|-----------|
| Communication Settings | Host Location | | • 🖿 🗙 4 | > | Runtime Location | | • I 🖿 🗙 💠 |
| Applications | Name | Size | Modified | | Name <click icon="" on="" refresh="" td="" the="" to<=""><td>Size</td><td>ified</td></click> | Size | ified |
| Backup and Restore | 🖙 D:\ | | | | | C | |
| Files | □ E:\ | | | | | | |
| Log | | | | | | | |
| PLC Settings | | | | | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | | | |
| Users and Groups | | | | | | | |
| Access Rights | | | | | | | |
| Symbol Rights | | | | >> | | | |
| System Parameters | | | | | | | |
| Task Deployment | | | | << | | | |
| Status | | | | | | | |
| 50005 | | | | | | | I. |
| | | | | | | | |
| Device × | | | | | | | |
| Communication Settings | Host Location | | - m × - | > | Runtime Location 🛅 / | | • 🗀 X 👳 |
| Applications | Name | Size | Modified | 1 | Name | Size | Modified |
| Backup and Restore | C:\ | | | | PlcLogic cert | | |
| iles | 🖙 E:\ | | | 6 | 🔄 Log | | |
| Log | | | | | r | | |
| PLC Settings | | | | - | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Users and Groups | | | | | | | |
| Access Rights | | | | | 1 | | |
| Symbol Rights | | | | >> | | | |
| System Parameters | | | | << | | | |
| Task Deployment | | | | | - | | |
| Status | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Device × | | | | | | | |
| Communication Settings | Host Location | | - 🖿 🗙 4 | > | Runtime Location 🛅 / | | • 🗀 🗙 🕹 |
| Applications | Name | Size | Modified | | Name | Size | Modified |
| Backup and Restore | 🖙 D:\ | | | | StdLogger52276_19700: | | 1980/1/ |
| Files | 🖙 E:\ | | | | StdLogger52277_19700 | | |
| Log | | | | | StdLogger52279_19700: | | |
| PLC Settings | | | | | StdLogger5219700: | 64.50 K | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | StdLogger52 : 19700: | 64.50 K | 1980/1/ |
| | | | | | StdLogger52 19700 StdLogger52 19700 | 64.50 K | 1980/1/ |
| Users and Groups | | | | | StdLogger5219700 | | 1980/1/ |
| | | | | | | | 1980/1/ |
| Users and Groups Access Rights Symbol Rights | | | | | 1 | | 1980/1/ |
| Access Rights Symbol Rights | | | | >> | | | 1980/1/ |
| Access Rights Symbol Rights System Parameters | | | | >> | | | 1900/1/ |
| Access Rights Symbol Rights | | | | | | | 1900/1/ |

Α

A.2 Troubleshooting of CPU Modules

Check the LED indicators and the error codes from the CPU modules, and refer to the following table for troubleshooting.

A.2.1 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds

• CPU error

| Error Code (16#) | Description | Solution |
|---------------------|--|---|
| 0x2000 | CPU memory access is denied | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors. |
| 0x2001 | CPU external memory access is denied | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors. |
| 0x2002 | Either OS file or firmware-related file is corrupted or system backup is activated | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x2005 | GPIO failed to initialize | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x2006 | Semaphore failed to establish | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x2007 | Task failed to establish | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x2008 | Unable to access data file | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x2009 | PowerIC failed to initialize | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x200A | FPGA done condition mismatched | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x200B | Ethernet IP failed to initialize | Redownload the project and select Apply IP settings while download. |
| 0x200C | PLC ID access denied | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors or update the firmware. |
| 0x200D | Error detected in the check sum of %M device | Check whether the 24V power supply is sufficient or not. Amplify 24V power supply if the problem persists. |
| 0x200E | The MRAM position set by the cfg file and FW do NOT match. | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors |

| 0x200F | Codesyscontrol file is missing or corrupted. | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors |
|--------|--|---|
| 0x2100 | The number of MODBUS TCP connections exceed the range. | Please refer to section 2.2 CPU Module Specifications and adjust the connection to the maximum. |
| 0x3000 | Hardware access error | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors. |
| 0x3002 | SSD lifespan reached limit. | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors |

A.2.2 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 2 Seconds

| Error Code (16#) | Description | Solution |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 0x2004 | The external 24V power supply is in | Check whether the power supply connected to the module is stable or not. |
| | low voltage. | module is stable of not. |

A.2.3 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 1 Second

| Error Code (16#) | Description | Solution |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---|
| 0x3001 | Factory test info error | If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors. |

A.3 Troubleshooting of Function Blocks

A.3.1 DL_CmpAX8xxEDrv

The following errors are specified as warnings. No error indicators will appear and the CPU can still run.

| Error code | | _ | |
|------------|--|-------------------------------|--|
| (16#) | Item | Description | Solution |
| 0 | DFB_NO_ERROR | No error | N/A |
| 0.45 | DFB_CAP_SOURCE_OU | Capture trigger source is out | Source range is between BuiltIn_DIO |
| 0x5 | T_ RANGE | of range. | X0~X3 |
| 0x6 | DFB_CAP_SOURCE_IS_ | Capture trigger source is | Please check if any other function block |
| 0x0 | ACTIVE | already active. | has used the same trigger source. |
| 0x7 | DFB_PWM_INPUT_OUT_ | DFB_PWM Input is out of | Please check if the parameters of |
| 0.007 | RANGE | range or values are invalid. | DFB_PWM are correct |
| | | | Please check if any other function block |
| 0x8 | DFB_PWM_DO_OTH_FU | DO is already in use for | has used the same DO for other |
| 0,0 | N_ACT | other function. | function or PWM is already active in |
| | | | other function block. |
| | | Counter number (0~7) | |
| 0x9 | DFB_UDC_COUNTER_N UM_MISSMATCH_MODE | mismatched with counter | Please check if the counter number has |
| | | mode. | supported this counter mode. |
| | | | |
| 0xA | DFB_UDC_MODE_OUT_ | Counter mode is out of | Please check if the parameters of |
| | RANGE | range. | DFB_Counter are correct. |
| | | Channel of counter number | |
| 0xB | DFB_UDC_COUNTER_N | has been active or counter | Disable other DFB_Counter function |
| UXD | UM_IS_ACT | mode is already set by other | blocks or set up the same settings. |
| | | function block. | |
| 0xC | DFB_TCMP_FIFO_FULL | Compare FIFO position table | Please reset FIFO table. |
| 0.00 | DFB_TOMF_FIFO_FOLL | is full. | riedse iesel rir O lable. |
| | DFB_TCMP_OS_TIME_O | rOneShotTime or | rOneShotTime range of 5000 ~ |
| 0xD | UT_RANGE | byTimeExten is out of | 0.0003(ms) |
| | | range. | byTimeExten range of 1~15 |
| | | | Please check if any other function block |
| 0xE | DFB_TCMP_DO_OTH_FU | DO is already in use for | has used the same DO for other |
| | N_ACT | other function. | functions or PWM is already active in |
| | | | other function block. |

| Error code | 11 | Description | 0 - kuti - m |
|------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| (16#) | Item | Description | Solution |
| 0xF | DFB_TCMP_FIFO_WRITE _ACT | FIFO table is writing. | Please check if any other function block has used other functions. |
| 0x10 | DFB_TCMP_ACT | TCMP function is active. | Please check if any other function block has used other functions. |
| 0x11 | DFB_TCMP_TABLE_SIZE _OUT_RANGE | TCMP table size is out of range. | Range: 1~255 |
| 0x12 | DFB_DVR_GET_VER_ER ROR | Get device version error | Not supported in FPGA version |
| 0x14 | DFB_SRT_TYPE_ERROR | Retain type error | Please check if the parameter Retain Type of DFB_SetRetainType is correct. |
| 0x15 | DFB_SRD_PASSWORD_ ERROR | Password value error | Please check if the parameter sPassword of DFB_SetRestorePwd is correct. |
| 0x16 | DFB_SIPC_LAN_PORT_I NVAILD | Lanport number error | Please check if the parameter LanPort of DFB_SetIPConfig is correct. |
| 0x17 | DFB_SIPC_MASK_INVAIL D | Mask address value error | Please check if the parameter SubnetMask of DFB_SetIPConfig is correct. |
| 0x18 | DFB_SIPC_GATEWAY_IN VALID | Gateway address value error | Please check if the parameter Gateway of DFB_SetIPConfig is correct. |
| 0x19065 | DFB_SSI_INPUT_OUT_R ANGE | DFB_SSI_Encoder Input is out of range or values are invalid. | Please check if the parameter of DFB_SSI_Encoder is correct. |
| 0x19066 | DFB_SSI_CONF_ERROR | Serial communication mode config error | Change device parameter Serial communication mode settings to SSI. |
| 0x19067 | DFB_SSI_NOT_SUPPOR TED | Device does not support this function. | Check if the FPGA version is v0x25 or later. |
| 0x19068 | DFB_SSI_IS_ACTIVE | SSI Encoder is already active | SSI Encoder is already active. |

A.3.2 Motion Control Related Instructions

The errors which occur in DL_MotionControl or DL_MotionControlLight are specified as warnings; however, no error indicators will appear and the CPU can still run. Refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual** for the troubleshooting of DL_MotionControl.



Appendix B BIOS Settings

Table of Contents

| B.1 | Basic Settings and Operation of BIOS | В-2 |
|-------|--------------------------------------|------|
| B.1.1 | Main | |
| B.1.2 | Advanced | B-4 |
| B.1.3 | Chipset | B-5 |
| B.1.4 | Security | B-8 |
| B.1.5 | Boot | B-9 |
| B.1.6 | Save & Exit | B-10 |
| | | |

B.1 Basic Settings and Operation of BIOS

When the computer boots up, following with the message **Press or <F2> to enter setup** on the screen, click either the **Del** key or the **F2** key to enter BIOS settings.

1. BIOS keyboard shortcuts

| Кеу | Function | Key | Function |
|--|----------------------------------|-----|---|
| $\uparrow \downarrow \leftarrow \rightarrow$ | Move among items | F1 | Keys operation support |
| Enter | Enter or select the current item | F2 | Restore device to the previous settings |
| + - | Adjust values | F3 | Restore device to factory settings |
| Esc | Escape | F4 | Save current settings |

2. Menu bar

| Aptio Setup Utility – Main Advanced Chipset Security | Copyright (C) 2018 American Boot Save & Exit | Megatrends, Inc. |
|---|--|---|
| BIOS Information BIOS Vendor Core Version Compliancy Project Version Build Date and Time | American Megatrends 5.010 UEFI 2.4; PI 1.3 X17_NON_ECC 10/29/2018 18:19:15 | Choose the system default language |
| CPU Configuration Microcode Patch BayTrail SoC | 909 D1 Stepping | |
| KSC Information KSC Version | N/A | ++: Select Screen |
| Memory Information Total Memory | 4096 MB (DDR3L) | †↓: Select Item Enter: Select +/−: Change Opt. |
| GOP Information Intel(R) GOP Driver | [N/A] | F1: General Help F2: Previous Values F3: Optimized Defaults |
| TXE Information Sec RC Version TXE FW Version | 00.05.00.00 01.01.05.1162 | F4: Save & Exit ESC: Exit |
| System Language | [English] | |

Version 2.17.1246. Copyright (C) 2018 American Megatrends, Inc.

| Menu | Function | Menu | Function |
|----------|--------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Main | Basic settings | Security | Security settings |
| Advanced | Settings of advanced functions | Boot | Startup settings |
| Chipset | Chipset settings | Save & Exit | Save changes and exit |

(Use the $\leftarrow \, {}^{\textstyle \checkmark} \rightarrow$ key to browse each menu.)

B.1.1 Main

Here you can find information such as Total Memory, System Language, etc. in the Main menu:

| Main Advanced Chipset | Aptio Setup – AMI Security Boot Save & Exit | |
|---|---|---|
| BIOS Information BIOS Vendor Core Version Compliancy Project Version Build Date and Time Access Level | American Megatrends 5.19 UEFI 2.7; PI 1.6 1AXRR 0.14 x64 06/08/2022 16:16:35 Administrator | |
| FSP Information FSP version RC version Build Date FSP Mode | 0A.00.66.11 0A.E0.66.11 Dispatch Mode | |
| Board Information Board Name Board ID Fab ID LAN PHY Revision | Default string N/A Default string N/A | <pre>++: Select Screen f↓: Select Item Enter: Select +/-: Change Opt. F1: General Help F2: Previous Values</pre> |
| Processor Information Name Type | TigerLake ULT 11th Gen Intel(R) Core(TM) i5–1145GRE @ 2.60GHz | F3: Optimized Defaults F4: Save & Exit ESC: Exit |
| | Version 2.22.1282 Copyright (C) 203 | 22 AMT |

| Item | Default | Description |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|
| System Language | English | N/A |
| System Date | N/A | Settings of system date |
| System Time | N/A | Settings of system time |

В

B.1.2 Advanced

Here you can find information such as CPU Configuration, Power & Performance, etc. in the Advanced menu.

| ▶ RC ACPI Settings | ▲ System ACPI Parameters. |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Connectivity Configuration | |
| CPU Configuration | |
| Power & Performance | |
| PCIE Configuration | |
| PCH-FW Configuration | |
| Thermal Configuration | |
| ▶ Platform Settings | |
| ▶ ACPI D3Cold settings | |
| AMT Configuration | |
| BCLK Configuration | |
| Intel(R) Time Coordinated Computing | |
| Functional Safety Configuration | |
| Debug Settings | ++: Select Screen |
| Debug Configuration | ↑↓: Select Item |
| Trusted Computing | Enter: Select |
| ▶ ACPI Settings | +/-: Change Opt. |
| SMART Settings | F1: General Help |
| UEFI Variables Protection | F2: Previous Values |
| Serial Port Console Redirection | F3: Optimized Defaults |
| Intel TXT Information | F4: Save & Exit |
| Acoustic Management Configuration | ESC: Exit |
| Switchable Graphics | |
| AMI Graphic Output Protocol Policy | |

Version 2.22.1282 Copyright (C) 2022 AMI

| Item | Default | Description |
|-----------------------------------|---------|---|
| CPU Configuration | N/A | Settings of CPU parameters |
| Power & Performance | N/A | Settings of CPU and GPU power performance |
| Thermal Configuration | N/A | Settings of Thermal parameters |
| Intel® Time Coordinated Computing | N/A | Settings of Intel TCC |
| ACPI Setting | N/A | Settings of ACPI |
| USB Configuration | N/A | Settings of USB parameter |

B.1.3 Chipset

Here you can find information such as System Agent Configuration, PCH-IO Configuration, etc. in the Chipset menu:

| Aptio Setup – AMI Main Advanced <mark>Chipset</mark> Security Boot Save & Exit | |
|---|--|
| | System Agent (SA) Parameters ++: Select Screen fl: Select Item Enter: Select +/-: Change Opt. F1: General Help F2: Previous Values F3: Optimized Defaults F4: Save & Exit ESC: Exit |
| Version 2.22.1282 Copyright (C) 2022 | AMI |

| Item | Default | Description |
|----------------------------|---------|--------------------------|
| System Agent Configuration | N/A | Settings of system agent |
| PCH-IO Configuration | N/A | Settings of PCH-IO |

• System Agent Configuration

Here you can find information such as Memory Configuration and Graphic Configuration in the **System Agent Configuration** view:

| Chipset | | |
|---|------------|--------------------------------|
| System Agent (SA) Configuration | | Memory Configuration Parameter |
| VT-d | Supported | |
| Memory Configuration | | |
| Graphics Configuration | | |
| DMI/OPI Configuration | | |
| PEG Port Feature Configuration | | |
| TCSS setup menu | | |
| VMD setup menu | | |
| Display setup menu | | |
| PCI Express Configuration | | |
| Stop Grant Configuration | [Auto] | ++: Select Screen |
| VT-d | [Enabled] | ↑↓ : Select Item |
| X2APIC Opt Out | [Disabled] | Enter: Select |
| DMA Control Guarantee | [Enabled] | +/-: Change Opt. |
| Thermal Device (B0:D4:F0) | [Disabled] | F1: General Help |
| Cpu CrashLog (Device 10) | [Enabled] | F2: Previous Values |
| GNA Device (B0:D8:F0) | [Enabled] | F3: Optimized Defaults |
| CRID Support | [Disabled] | F4: Save & Exit |
| WRC Feature | [Disabled] | ESC: Exit |
| VCRt mapping to PEG | [Disabled] | |
| Above 4GB MMIO BIOS assignment MIPI Camera Configuration | [Enabled] | |

Version 2.22.1282 Copyright (C) 2022 AMI

| Item | Default | Description |
|------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| Memory Configuration | N/A | Settings of memory parameters |
| Graphics Configuration | N/A | Settings of graphics output |
| Display setup Menu | N/A | Settings of display interface |

• PCH-IO Configuration

Here you can find information such as PCIE, SATA and USB Configuration in the PCH-IO Configuration view:

| Item | Default | Description |
|----------------------------|-----------|--|
| PCI Express Configuration | N/A | PCIE settings |
| SATA And RST Configuration | N/A | SATA settings |
| USB Configuration | N/A | USB settings |
| Serial IO Configuration | N/A | Serial I/O settings |
| Status After G3 | S0 Status | Settings of auto startup in power-on state |

B.1.4 Security

Here you can find information such as Administrator Password and User Password in the Security menu:

| Main Advanced Chipset | Aptio Setup – A Security Boot Save & Exit | |
|--|---|---|
| Password Description | | Set Administrator Password |
| If ONLY the Administrator then this only limits acce only asked for when enteri If ONLY the User's passwor is a power on password and boot or enter Setup. In Se have Administrator rights. The password length must b in the following range: Minimum length | ss to Setup and is ng Setup. d is set, then this must be entered to tup the User will e 3 | |
| Maximum length | 20 | ++: Select Screen |
| Administrator Password | | ↑↓: Select Item |
| User Password | | Enter: Select +/-: Change Opt. |
| ▶ Secure Boot | | F1: General Help F2: Previous Values F3: Optimized Defaults F4: Save & Exit ESC: Exit |

| /ersion | 2.22. | 1282 | Copyr | right | (C) | 2022 | AMI |
|---------|-------|------|-------|-------|-----|------|-----|
|---------|-------|------|-------|-------|-----|------|-----|

| Item | Default | Description |
|------------------------|---------|---|
| Administrator Password | N/A | Settings of the administrative password |
| User Password | N/A | Settings of the user password |
| Secure Boot | N/A | Secure boot menu |

B.1.5 Boot

Here you can find information such as Setup Prompt Timeout, Bootup NumLock State, etc. in the Boot menu:

| Main Advanced Chipset Secu | Aptio Setup – AMI unity <mark>Boot</mark> Save & Exit | |
|--|--|--|
| Boot Configuration Setup Prompt Timeout Bootup NumLock State Quiet Boot | <mark>1 [</mark> [Off] [Enabled] | Number of seconds to wait for setup activation key. 65535(0xFFFF) means indefinite waiting. |
| Boot Option Priorities Fast Boot | [Disabled] | |
| | | |
| | | <pre>++: Select Screen f↓: Select Item Enter: Select +/-: Change Opt.</pre> |
| | | F1: General Help F2: Previous Values F3: Optimized Defaults F4: Save & Exit |
| | | ESC: Exit |
| Ver | rsion 2.22.1282 Copyright | (C) 2022 AMI |

| Item | Default | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| Setup Prompt Timeout | 1 | N/A |
| Bootup NumLock State | nLock State off N/A | |
| Quiet Boot | t Enabled N/A | |
| Boot Option Priorities | N/A | Setting the boot order for devices |
| Fast Boot | Disabled | N/A |

Β

B.1.6 Save & Exit

Here you can find information such as Save Changes and Exit, Discard Changes and Exit, etc. in the Save & Exit menu:

| Save Options Save Changes and Exit | Exit system setup after savin the changes. |
|---|---|
| Discard Changes and Exit | |
| Save Changes and Reset | |
| Discard Changes and Reset | |
| Save Changes | |
| Discard Changes | |
| Default Options | |
| Restore Defaults Save as User Defaults | |
| Restore User Defaults | ++: Select Screen |
| Boot Override | ↑↓: Select Item Enter: Select |
| bobt over the | +/-: Change Opt. |
| | F1: General Help |
| | F2: Previous Values F3: Optimized Defaults |
| | F4: Save & Exit |
| | ESC: Exit |
| | |

Version 2.22.1282 Copyright (C) 2022 AMI

| Item | Default | Description | |
|---------------------------|---------|---|--|
| Save Changes and Exit | N/A | Save the current changes and exit | |
| Discard Changes and Exit | N/A | Restore device to the previous settings and exit | |
| Save Changes and Reset | N/A | Save the current changes then reset the PC | |
| Discard Changes and Reset | N/A | Restore device to the previous settings then reset the PC | |
| Save Changes | N/A | Save the current changes | |
| Discard Changes | N/A | Restore device to the previous settings | |
| Restore Defaults | N/A | Restore device to factory settings | |
| Save as User Defaults | N/A | Save the current user settings as defaults | |
| Restore User Defaults | N/A | Restore the user defaults | |
| Boot Override | N/A | Force reboot the device | |

С

Appendix C Settings and Operation of Windows/Linux

Table of Contents

| C.1 | Bas | sic Settings of UWFC-2 |
|-----|-----|---|
| C.1 | .1 | UWF Execution via PAC_ToolC-2 |
| C.1 | .2 | Read Current Status |
| C.1 | .3 | Enable UWF C-3 |
| C.1 | .4 | Disable UWFC-4 |
| C.1 | .5 | Fix UWFC-4 |
| C.2 | Dis | play Language SettingsC-5 |
| C.3 | υw | /F Exclusion SettingsC-6 |
| C.4 | Re | place Original Project with USB Backup ProjectC-7 |
| C.4 | .1 | Retrieve a Project from PLCC-7 |
| C.4 | .2 | Create a Project from DIADesigner-AXC-8 |
| C.4 | .3 | Create an USB Backup Project C-9 |
| C.4 | .4 | Project Mode C-10 |
| C.4 | .5 | Project Replacement C-11 |
| C.5 | Wi | ndows System OperationC-12 |
| C.6 | IP | Address SettingsC-13 |
| C.6 | .1 | Modify through Project Download C-13 |
| C.6 | .2 | Modify through Windows Settings C-13 |
| C.7 | Re | set IP AddressC-14 |
| C.7 | .1 | Connection Denied to PLC C-14 |
| C.7 | .2 | Restore PLC C-15 |
| C.8 | Re | place Original Project with Backup ProjectC-16 |
| C.8 | .1 | Retrieve a Project C-16 |
| C.8 | .2 | Create a Backup Project C-16 |
| C.8 | .3 | Project Replacement C-17 |
| C.9 | Lin | ux System OperationC-18 |

C.1 Basic Settings of UWF

In factory settings, the Unified Write Filter (UWF) is turned on to protect Windows system from file corruptions in abnormal power outages or crashes.

If you need to turn off UWF for software installation or parameter adjustment reasons, be sure to turn it on again right after the installation or settings are completed.

When UWF is switched off, the LED indicator on AX-8 Series PLC, FB1 and FB2, will flash consecutively to alert the user that UWF is currently off.

C.1.1 UWF Execution via PAC_Tool

The main function of PAC_Tool is to protect the C drive in Windows system. When UWF is turned on, the data written to the C drive will be stored in the memory and it will be removed once the device is rebooted. To perform this function, click **PAC_Tool.exe** on the computer desktop.



C.1.2 Read Current Status

Open PAC_Tool and the Current Status will be shown as below:

• Disabled: UWF is currently turned off and changes will be saved after power outages.

| MAC Tool 64.19.0528.1 | | - | | \times |
|--|--------|---|---------|----------|
| Write Filter Current Status Disabled | Enable | | Disable | |
| Command Status Response Status | Fix | | Reboot | |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel Language Switch English 简体中文 繁體中文 Please Click the language 请点选欲变更语系 請點邊欲變更語系 | ζ | | | |

С

• Enabled: UWF is currently turned on and changes will not be saved after power outages.

| PAC Tool 64.19.0528.1 | | - | | × |
|---|--------|---|---------|---|
| Write Filter | | _ | | |
| Current Status Enabled | Enable | | Disable | |
| Command Status | | | | |
| Response Status | Fix | | Reboot | |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel Language Switch English 简体中文 繁體中文 Please Click the language 请点选欲变更语系 請點選欲變更語系 | | | | |

C.1.3 Enable UWF

Refer to the following steps to activate UWF.

- 1. Click Enable.
- 2. Click Reboot to restart.

| PAC Tool 64.19.0806.1 | 1 | | - 🗆 X |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------|---------|
| Write Filter | | | |
| Current Status | Disabled | Enable | Disable |
| Command Status | Enable | | |
| Response Status | Reboot to enable UWF | Fix | Reboot |
| Language Exclus | sion Touch Panel | | 2. |
| English | 简体中文繁體中 | 文 | |
| Please Click the | language | | |
| 请点选欲变更语系 | | | |
| 請點選欲變更語系 | Ŕ | | |
| | | | |

C.1.4 Disable UWF

Refer to the following steps to deactivate UWF.

- 1. Click Enable.
- 2. Click Reboot to restart.

| PAC Tool 64.19.0806.1 | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| Write Filter | | |
| Current Status Enabled | Enable | Disable |
| Command Status Disable | Ti. | |
| Response Status Reboot to disable UWF | Fix | Reboot |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel | | 2. |
| Language Switch | | |
| English 简体中文 繁體中又 | Х Х | |
| Please Click the language | | |
| 请点选欲变更语系 | | |
| 請點選欲變更語系 | | |

C.1.5 Fix UWF

Refer to the following steps to fix UWF.

- 1. Click Fix.
- 2. Click Reboot to restart.

| PAC Tool 64.19.0806.1 | | > | |
|---|--------|-------------------|--|
| Write Filter Current Status Command Status Fix UWF Basesenes Status Reheat to fix UWE | Enable | Disable Reboot | |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel 1, 2, | | | |
| English 简体中文 繁體中 Please Click the language 请点选欲变更语系 請點選欲變更語系 | × | | |

C.2 Display Language Settings

Refer to the following steps to switch display languages.

- If the Current Status is **Disabled**:
 - 1. Select the preferred language.
 - 2. Click **Reboot** to restart.

| MAC Tool 64.19.0528.1 | | | | | × | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------|--|---------|---|--|
| Write Filter | | | | | | |
| Current Status | Disabled | Enable | | Disable | | |
| Command Status | 語系変更为简体中文 | | | | | |
| Response Status | 重新启動後生效 | Fix | | Reboot | | |
| Language Exclu | Language Exclusion Touch Panel 2 | | | | | |
| Language Switch | | | | | | |
| English 简体中文 繁體中文 | | | | | | |
| Please Click the language 请点选欲变更语系 | | | | | | |
| 請點選欲變更語系 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

- If the Current Status is **Enabled**, you should turn off UWF in advanced.
 - 1. Click Disable.
 - 2. Click Reboot to restart.
 - 3. Select the preferred language.
 - 4. Click **Reboot** to restart.

| PAC Tool 64.19.0528.1 | | - <u>1</u> . |
|--|--------|--------------|
| Current Status Enabled | Enable | Disable |
| Command Status Response Status Need disable first | Fix | Reboot |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel Language Switch English 简体中文 繁體中文 | ζ | 2 ~ 4. |
| Please Click the language 请点选欲变更语系 請點選欲變更語系 | 3 . | |

C.3 UWF Exclusion Settings

Refer to the following steps to exclude folders or files from write protection while the UWF is enabled.

- If the Current Status is **Enabled**.
 - 1. Click Add Folder to select the folders or files to be excluded.
 - 2. Click Reboot to restart.

| С | PAC Tool 64.19 |
|---|----------------|
| | Write Filter |
| | Current Status |
| | Command Stat |
| | Response Stat |
| | |

| PAC Tool 64.19.0528.1 | | - 🗆 X |
|--|--------|---|
| Write Filter | | |
| Current Status Enabled | Enable | Disable |
| Command Status | | |
| Response Status | Fix | Reboot |
| Language Exclusion Touch Panel ^{*1.} C:\EtherCAT\AutoConf ^{*2.} | 1. | 2 J Add Folder Add File Remove |

- *1: The Touch Panel tab is not available here since it is exclusively for Panel devices.
- *2: In some models the storage path is set to be in the D drive; hence, files and data could be lost due to unexpected shutdown of the device.

C.4 Replace Original Project with USB Backup Project

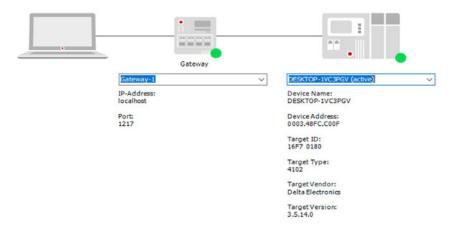
This section introduces how to create an USB backup project and the way to replace the ongoing project in AX-8 Series PLC with the USB backup project.

C.4.1 Retrieve a Project from PLC

- 1. Directly go to Windows desktop or DIADesigner-AX software to retrieve the project.
- 2. Enter Windows desktop via AX-8 Series PLC HDMI connection or remote desktop.
- 3. PLC project is stored in the PlcLogic folder (path: D:\Delta Industrial Automation\AX8xxE \PlcLogic).

| Name | Date modified | Туре | Size |
|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------|------|
| .pki | 11/25/2019 8:44 PM | File folder | |
| cert | 11/25/2019 8:44 PM | File folder | |
| - PlcLogic | 10/7/2021 10:35 PM | File folder | |
| CODESYSControl_User.cfg | 10/13/2021 9:02 PM | CFG File | 1 KE |
| SysFileMap.cfg | 10/13/2021 9:02 PM | CFG File | 1 KE |
| targetvisuextern.cfg | 10/13/2021 9:02 PM | CFG File | 1 KE |

- 4. The PIcLogic folder of AX-8 Series PLC also can be accessed through DIADesigner-AX.
- Open new project to check if the connection with the PLC has been established (path: Device > Communication Setting > Scan Network).

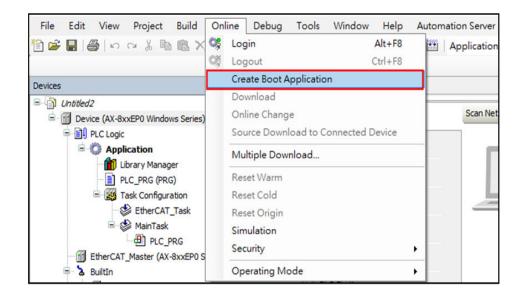


 Check the AX-8 Series PLC folder system through the path: Device > Files. Click the button marked below to retrieve the PlcLogic folder.

| Name | Size | Name | Size | Modified |
|------|------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| C:/ | 0120 | Cert | on the | mounied |
| D:\ | | PicLogic | | |
| F:\ | | CODESYSControl_User.cf | g 110 bytes | 2021/10/26下 |
| | | PicLog.csv | 17.41 KB (17,82 | |
| | | PicLog_0.csv | | 2021/10/25上 |
| | | PicLog_1.csv | | 2021/10/25 下 |
| | | SysFileMap.cfg | 125 bytes | 2021/10/26下 |
| | | SystemLog.csv | 0 bytes | 2021/10/24下 |
| | | targetvisuextern.cfg | 320 bytes | 2021/10/26下 |
| | | | | |
| | | >> | | |
| | | << | | |

C.4.2 Create a Project from DIADesigner-AX

1. Online > Create Boot Application.



2. Create folder structure PlcLogic\Application and drag Boot Application into the Application folder.

| | | ~ | ē |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------|---|
| 名稱 ^ | 修改日期 | 領型 | |
| Application.app | 2021/10/27 下午 01:48 4 | APP 檔 | 案 |
| Application.crc | 2021/10/27 下午 01:48 0 | CRC 檔 | 案 |

C.4.3 Create an USB Backup Project

Software: PBT

Operating system: Windows 7 (Service Pack 1 or higher) / 8 / 10 (32 / 64 Bit)

Download path: <u>https://downloadcenter.deltaww.com/downloadCenterCounter.aspx?DID=41632&DocPath=1&hl=zh-TW</u> Use the zip tool, PBT.exe, to compress PIcLogic folder mentioned earlier into PIcLogic.zip.

| 名稱 ^ | 修改日期 | 類型 | 大小 |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------|----------|
| 🗟 7za.dll | 2019/2/22 上午 12:00 | 應用程式擴充 | 263 KB |
| 📧 7za | 2019/2/22 上午 12:00 | 應用程式 | 723 KB |
| 7zxa.dll | 2019/2/22 上午 12:00 | 應用程式擴充 | 155 KB |
| BMC_GENERIC.dll | 2021/1/14 下午 01:30 | 應用程式擴充 | 612 KB |
| MRAMtoData | 2021/8/18 下午 04:34 | 應用程式 | 6,002 KB |
| 🖂 РВТ | 2023/4/10 下午 05:17 | 應用程式 | 1,764 KB |

| Folder | D:\0-AX | \AX8\專案社 | 還原\PlcLogic | | |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|----------|-------------|-------|-----|
| Zip File | ile D:10-AX\AX8\專案還原\PlcLogic.zip | | | | |
| Passwor | d | | | | |
| Passwor | d Check | | | Unzip | Zip |
| Сору Ма | ax Count | 10 | | | Dip |
| Retain Ty | лре | • InSRAI | M 🔿 InFil | le | |
| Clean Re | etain | Clean | | | |
| assword | | | | | |
| assword | | | | | |

- 1. Folder: folder to restore
- 2. Zip File: location to generate the zip file
- 3. Password: password of the zip file (optional)
- 4. Password Check: password confirmation (only for Windows system)
- 5. Copy Max Count: maximum times of the project to be restored. When exceeding the limit, the restored file will be removed.
- 6. Clean Retain: Whether current MRAM needs to be removed before the project restore.

To write the password, you can also call DFB_SetRestorePwd in the CODESYS project to store the matching password in the PLC. Password length is limited to 20 characters.

C.4.4 Project Mode

1. Normal mode: restore PLC project

| Normal mode | ○Restore m | ode | | |
|----------------|------------|----------|----------|-----|
| Zip Folder | | | | |
| Zip File | | | | |
| Password | | | | |
| Password Check | | | 11. | 7. |
| Copy Max Count | 10 | | Unzip | Zip |
| RetainType | • InSRAM | ◯ InFile | | |
| Clean Retain | Clean | | | |
| Password | | | | |
| | | Write I | Password | |
| RetainType | | | | |

Folder: folder to restore

Zip File: location to generate the zip file

Password: password of the zip file (optional)

Password Check: password confirmation (for Windows system only)

Copy Max Count: maximum time of the project to be restored. When exceeding the limit, the restored file will be removed.

Clean Retain: whether the current MRAM needs to be removed before project restoration.

2. Restore mode: remove PLC project

|)Normal mode Zip | Restore mode | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------|-----|
| Folder Zip File | | | |
| Password | | | |
| Password Check | | Unzip | Zip |
| Copy Max Count | 10 | - naip | arp |
| RetainType | ● InSRAM ○ InFile | | |
| Clean Retain | Clean | | |
| Password | | | |
| | Write | Password | |
| RetainType | | | |

Zip File: location to generate the zip file

Password: password of the zip file (optional)

Password Check: password confirmation

3. AX-8 project password settings

| Password | | |
|----------|----------------|--|
| | Write Password | |

Write password: write the password into the AX-8 Series PLC MRAM.

Users can write the password directly on the AX-8 Series PLC (for Windows only). There is also a corresponding function block (DFB_SetRetainType& DFB_SetRestorePwd) can be written into through PLC.

4. Retain Type

| RetainType | | |
|-------------|-------------|--|
| InSRAM Mode | InFile Mode | |

InSRAM: save in MRAM and the size is 96KB.

InFile: save in M.2 and the size is 10MB.

C.4.5 Project Replacement

- 1. Make sure to follow steps above to create an USB backup project.
- 2. In the power-off mode, insert the USB flash drive into the PLC and then turn the power on.
- 3. If the zip file is encrypted, the password for decompression should be written onto the PLC (refer to section C.4.3).
- 4. After the AX-8 Series PLC is powered on, replacement will be executed automatically with intermittent buzzing sounds to remind users.
- 5. Remove the USB flash drive after hearing buzzing sounds.
- 6. After the USB flash drive is removed, the PLC will reboot automatically and then replacement is completed.
- 7. Repeat step 2 to 6 if the project replacement fails.

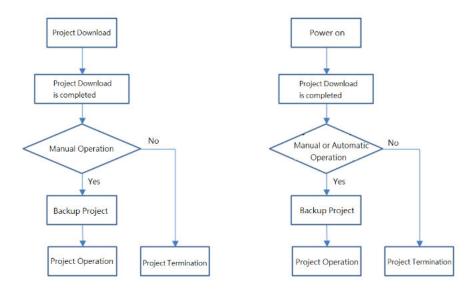
C.5 Windows System Operation

Refer to the following steps for operation of PLC with Windows operating system.

- 1. When users are creating or writing files, the file path should be set in external devices such as SD cards or USB flash drives. Storing in the device itself does not guarantee file integrity and accuracy.
- 2. As for recipe management, complete file path and exact file extension of the external storage devices (SD card, USB flash drive) are required for saving the recipe file. Storing in the device itself does not guarantee file integrity and accuracy.

| orage | General | | | | |
|-------|-----------------|------------|-------------|------------------|--|
| Sto | rage type | Textual | | | |
| File | path | | | | |
| File | extension | .txtrecipe | 2 | | |
| Sep | arator | | | | |
| 01 | Tab | | O Semicolon | O Comma | |
| 0 | Space | | • := | 01 | |
| Ava | ilable Colum | ns | > | Selected Columns | |
| | Гуре | | >> | Variable | |
| 1.1 | Name Comment | | < | Current Value | |
| | Minimal Valu | e | | | |
| 1 | Maximal Valu | ue | << | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

3. If the project downloaded from DIADesigner-AX software has been executed before, the project is backed up automatically to the backup area to avoid unexpected file damage or loss. However, users should avoid power outages to ensure that the download procedure is completely correct.



- 4. Avoid creating or writing files manually when accessing the PLC with remote desktop.
- 5. Please follow the procedures stated in section C.1.3 to turn on UWF as the PLC is in operation.

C.6 IP Address Settings

C.6.1 Modify through Project Download

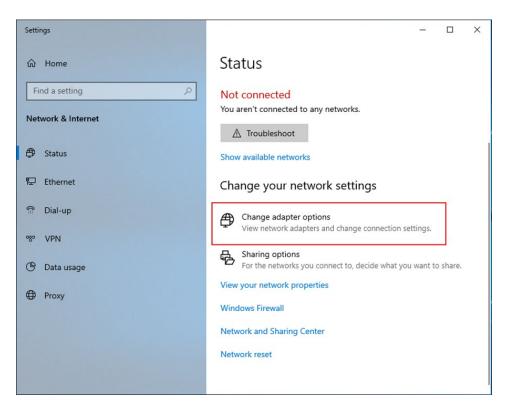
The IP address of AX-8 Series PLC can be modified by downloading the project. To Enter the IP settings page, go to **Device > Parameters**. IP-related settings can be adjusted in the **Value** column of the respective network interface. After the completion, download the project to the AX-8 Series PLC and the settings take effect immediately.

| Parameter | Туре | Value | Default Value | Unit | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------|---|
| Application Run Mode | BOOL | false | false | | [True]:Enable Run Mode [False]:Disable Run Mode |
| Serial Communication Mode | Enumeration of BYTE | RS-485 | RS-485 | | Choose Serial Communication Mode |
| 🖃 🚞 GLAN1 NetworkInterface | | | | | |
| GLAN1 NetworkInterfaceMode | Enumeration of BOOL | static-IP | static-IP | | Configure NetworkInterface Mode of the Controller on the EtherNet GLA |
| GLAN1 IPAddress | ARRAY[03] OF BYTE | [192, 168, 0, 10] | [192, 168, 0, 10] | | Configure IP Address of the Controller on the EtherNet GLAN1 (IP). |
| GLAN1 SubnetMask | ARRAY[03] OF BYTE | [255, 255, 255, 0] | [255, 255, 255, 0] | | Configure IP Address of the Controller on the EtherNet GLAN1 (Mask). |
| 😑 🚞 GLAN2 NetworkInterface | | | | | |
| GLAN2 NetworkInterfaceMode | Enumeration of BOOL | static-IP | static-IP | | Configure NetworkInterface Mode of the Controller on the EtherNet GLA |
| GLAN2 IPAddress | ARRAY[03] OF BYTE | [192, 168, 1, 10] | [192, 168, 1, 10] | | Configure IP Address of the Controller on the EtherNet GLAN2 (IP). |
| GLAN1 SubnetMask | ARRAY[03] OF BYTE | [255, 255, 255, 0] | [255, 255, 255, 0] | | Configure IP Address of the Controller on the EtherNet GLAN2 (Mask). |

C.6.2 Modify through Windows Settings

To enter Windows desktop, you can either go through remote desktop connection^{*1} or through HDMI cable connected to the PLC.

After Windows desktop is accessed, go to Settings > Network & Internet to change the IP address^{*2}.



*1: The default IP address of GLAN1 is 192.168.0.10 while the default IP address of GLAN2 is 192.168.1.10.

*2: When UWF is on and the AX-8 Series PLC is rebooted, the IP address modified through Windows system will be replaced by the previous settings.

C.7 Reset IP Address

If the IP address^{*1} is unable to be confirmed due to project lost or other factors, users can restore the system to factory settings and connect to the PLC with the default IP address or replace the project in the PLC with a backup one.

*1: The default IP addresses are 192.168.0.10 for GLAN 1 and 192.168.1.10 for GLAN 2.

C.7.1 Connection Denied to PLC

When the PC with DIADesigner-AX software and the AX-8 Series PLC are in the same network domain, users can detect the PLC through **Device** > **Communication Settings** > **ScanNetwork**; download the new project to change the IP address of the PLC.

| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway * Device * | | |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| pplications | | | |
| ackup and Restore | · | | |
| iles | | •••• | |
| og | Gateway | | |
| | Gateway-1 | [000A] (active) | ~ |
| LC Settings | Select Device | | |
| LC Shell | Select the network path to the controller: | | |
| sers and Groups | Gateway-1 (scanning) | Device Name: ^ RootfsDebian | Scan Network |
| cess Rights | D KoottsDebian [000A] | Device Address: | Wink |
| mbol Rights | | 000A | |
| arameters | | Block driver: | |
| | | UDP | |
| C Objects | | Number of | |
| ask Deployment | | channels: 4 | |
| tatus | | Serial number: | |
| formation | | 0018233AF888 | |
| | | Target ID: 16F7 0417 | |
| | | 10-7 0417 | |

On the contrary, the AX-8 Series PLC will not be detected by the abovementioned scan function if it is not located in the same domain where the PC exists.

| Communication Settings | Scan Network Gateway * Device * | | | |
|------------------------|--|--------|---------------------------|--------------|
| Applications | | | | |
| Backup and Restore | | | : | |
| iles | | • | • | |
| og | Gateway-1 | ateway | 0A] (active) | |
| LC Settings | Select Device | - | ord former | |
| LC Shell | Select the network path to the controller: | | | |
| sers and Groups | Gateway-1 | | Device Name: Gateway-1 | Scan Network |
| ccess Rights | | | Driver: | Writis, |
| ymbol Rights | | | TCP/IP | |
| Parameters | | | IP-Address: localhost | |
| EC Objects | | | Port: | |
| ask Deployment | | | 1217 | |
| tatus | | | | |
| formation | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | Cancel |

When it is unable to confirm the IP address, refer to **section C.7.2**. **Restore PLC**; the IP address will be restored to default after restoration. Or refer to **C.8 Replace Original Project with Backup Project**; the IP address will be the backup project IP address after replacement.

C.7.2 Restore PLC

Refer to the following steps to restore the device:

- 1. Use the zip tool PBT.exe, select Restore mode to generate a zip file PIcLogic.zip for restoration, and store this file in the root directory of the USB flash drive.
- 2. Insert the USB flash drive into the AX-8 Series PLC and turn the power on (it is acceptable if the PLC is already on).
- 3. Few seconds after, the PLC will be restored to the default settings and the original project will be removed, along with the PLC buzzing intermittently and each LED indicator keeping flashing.
- 4. Remove the USB flash drive and the PLC will reboot automatically. And after rebooting, you can use the default IP address for connection.

When the zip file is encrypted, execute DFC_SetRestorePwd on the PLC in advance to store the matching password in the PLC. Password length is limited to 20 characters.

| A PBT 2022-12-13 — | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| ○ Normal mode | |
| Zip File D:0-AX\AX8\專案還原\PlcLogic.zip | |
| Password | |
| Password Check Unzip | Zip |
| Copy Max Count 10 | ZAP |
| RetainType 💿 InSRAM 🔿 InFile | |
| Clean Retain 🔲 Clean | |
| Password | |
| Write Password | |

C.8 Replace Original Project with Backup Project

Users can save the project in the USB flash drive and retrieve it from the PLC. This section is about project backup and project restoration to the PLC.

C.8.1 Retrieve a Project

Projects are stored in the PlcLogic folder which can be found on the page **Device** > **Files** in DIADesigner-AX software.

| Applications | Name | Size | Modified | | Name | Size | Modified |
|--------------------|----------|------|----------|----|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Backup and Restore | 🖂 D:\ | | | | Cert | | |
| Files | E:\ F:\ | | | | delta_backup SysFileMap.cfg | 158 bytes | 2020/9/9下午 0 |
| Log | | | | | CODESYSControl_User.cfg | 96.00 KB (98,30 121 bytes | 2020/6/9 上午 0 2020/9/9 下午 0 |
| PLC Settings | | | | | | | |
| PLC Shell | | | | | | | |
| Users and Groups | | | | >> | | | |
| Access Rights | | | | | | | |

C.8.2 Create a Backup Project

Use the zip tool PBT.exe to compress the PlcLogic.zip folder generated in **section C.8.1** into PlcLogic.zip. Save this compressed folder to the directory and the USB flash drive with which you can switch among devices.

| 🔏 PBT 2022-1 | 2-13 — | | \times | | | | |
|---------------------|--|-----|----------|--|--|--|--|
| ●Normal mode Zip | e ORestore mode | | | | | | |
| Folder D:V | -AX\AX8\專案還原\PlcLogic | | | | | | |
| Zip File D:W | Zip File D:10-AX\AX8\專案還原\PlcLogic.zip | | | | | | |
| Password | | | | | | | |
| Password Ch | eck Unzip | Zip | | | | | |
| Сору Мах Со | | LAP | | | | | |
| Retain Type | ● InSRAM ○ InFile | | | | | | |
| Clean Retain | Clean | | | | | | |
| Password | | | | | | | |
| | Write Password | | | | | | |

C.8.3 Project Replacement

Refer to the following steps to replace the original project:

- 1. Insert the USB flash drive into the AX-8 Series PLC and turn the power on (it is acceptable if the PLC is already on).
- 2. After few seconds, the original project will be replaced by the backup project with the buzzer sounding intermittently and the LED indicators keeping flashing.
- 3. Remove the USB flash drive then the PLC will reboot automatically.
- 4. After restarting the CPU, the IP address of the backup project can be connected.

When the zip file is encrypted, execute DFC_SetRestorePwd on the PLC in advance to enter the matching password. Password length is limited to 20 characters.

Failure to process the backup project in the USB will be accompanied with buzzing sounds and flashing Error LED indicators. Remove the USB flash drive and the PLC will reboot automatically. After rebooting, the PLC will return to the state before replacement.

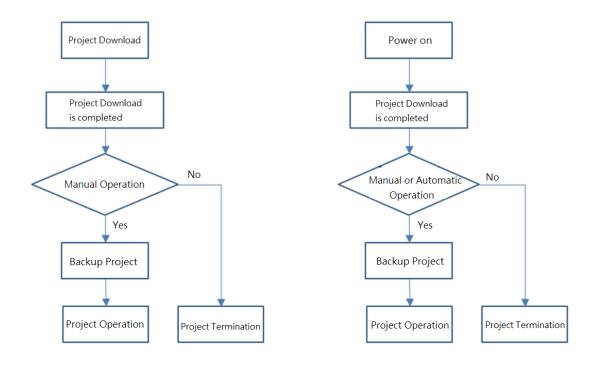
C.9 Linux System Operation

Refer to the following steps for operation of PLC with Linux operating system.

- 1. When users are generating or writing the file, the target path should be set in the external devices (SD Card, USB flash drive). Storing in the PLC does not guarantee file integrity and accuracy.
- 2. On the Recipe Manger page, users need to enter complete file path and exact file extension of the external devices (SD Card, USB flash drive) in the fields for storage. Storing in the PLC does not guarantee file integrity and accuracy.

| R | ecipe Man | ager X | | | |
|--------------|---|---------|-------------|------------------|------|
| orage | General | | | | |
| File File | rage type path extension arator Fab | Textual |) Semicolon |) Comma | |
| 0 | Space | | • := | 01 | |
| *** | ilable Colum Type Name Comment Minimal Valu Maximal Valu | e | >>>< | Selected Columns | |
| Sav | e as Defaul | t | | Up | Down |

 If the project downloaded from DIADesigner-AX software has been executed before, the PLC will automatically back up the project to avoid unexpected file damage or loss. However, users should avoid power outages to ensure that the download procedure is completed correct.





Appendix D Firmware Package Updater Operation

Table of Contents

| D.1 | Firmware Package Updater Operation | D-2 |
|-------|------------------------------------|-----|
| D.1.1 | Firmware Package Updater | D-3 |
| D.1.2 | Firmware Path | D-3 |
| D.1.3 | Online Device | D-4 |
| D.1.4 | Update | D-4 |

D.1 Firmware Package Updater Operation

Open DIADesigner-AX 1.5. Click Tools on the toolbar and select Firmware Update as shown below.

• Drop-down menu



| File | Edit | View | Project | t Bui | ld | Online | Del | bug | Тоо | ls Window Help |
|------|------|-------------------------------|--|---|---------------------|------------------|-----|------------|-----|---|
| 1 | | 3 6 | CH X I | h ß | \times | 1 🐴 🖓 | 4 | 1 | 0 | Package Manager |
| | Devi | e_ <i>update</i> ce (AX-8) | | x SM Ser | | | | ▼ ₽ | | Library Repository Device Repository Visualization Style Repository License Repository |
| | L | 2 | Configurat CAT Filter | | | | | | | OPC UA Information Model Repository License Manager |
| | | Appl | | | | | | | | Firmware Update |
| | | EtherCAT Builtín (Br | Ibrary Man Iotion_PRC LC_PRG (F ask Config EtherC Mo MainTa PLC Master (| G (PRG) PRG) Juration AT_Task tion_PR(sk (IEC- C_PRG AX-8xxE iltIn_DIC | G Tasks P0 Se |) ries Ether(| | | | Resource Monitor Parameter Backup and Restore PLC ID Startup Command Extension Download Customize Options Import and Export Options Scripting Miscellaneous |
| | | | n General | | | <u>,</u> , usc_E | | | | System Parameters System IEC Objects Task Deployment Status |

D.1.1 Firmware Package Updater

The setting window, **Firmware Package Updater**, allows you to set up **Path** (firmware file path) and **Online Device** (device update).

| Firmware Package Updater | | _ | | × |
|--------------------------|------|---------|---------|---|
| Firmware Package | | | | |
| Path: | Y Pr | otected | Package | ₹ |
| Vendor: | | | | |
| Device Type: | | | | |
| Device ID: | | | | |
| Device Version: | | | | |
| Mini FW Version: | | | | |
| Integrity Details | | | | |
| Online Device | | | | |
| ~ | | | | |
| Device Name: | | | | |
| Device Address: | | | | |
| Device Type: | | | | |
| Device ID: | | | | |
| Device Version: | | | | |
| ⊿ Update Progress | | | | |
| Progress: | | | | |
| | | | Undete | |
| | | | Update | - |

D.1.2 Firmware Path

You can set up the path for storage of firmware files under Firmware Path.

| | 🖾 Firmware Package Updater | _ | | \times |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----------|---------|----------|
| | Firmware Package | | | |
| | Path: D:\project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINU. | Protected | Package | <u>+</u> |
| Browse | | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINUX\FW\AX8_Lir | nux_CNC_1_0_4_0.fwpkg | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINUX\TGL\FW\AX | 8_Linux_nHSIO_1_0_1_2.fwpkg | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AXC\FW\AX_C12EB0MD1T_1 | _0_2_19\AX_212EB0MD1T_1_0_2_19.fwpkg | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AXC\FW\AX_212EB0MD1T_1 | _0_2_18.fwpkg | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AX332\FW\AX3_Linux_1_0_5 | _5.fwpkg | | | |
| D:\project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINUX\FW\AX8_Lir | nux_1_0_4_22.fwpkg | | | |
| | Online Device | | | |
| | ~ | | | |
| | Device Name: | | | |
| | Device Address: | | | |
| | Device Type: | | | |
| | Device ID: | | | |
| | Device Version: | | | |
| | ⊿ Update Progress | | | |
| | Progress: | | | |
| | | | Update | е |
| | | | | |

D

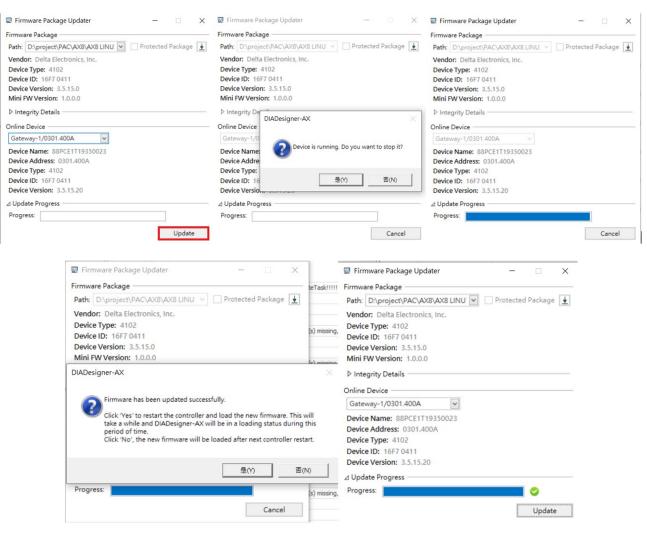
D.1.3 Online Device

Select the device for update under Online Device.

| 🖾 Firmware Package Updater 🛛 – 🗆 🗙 | Select Device | × |
|--|---|--------------|
| Firmware Package | Select the Network Path to the Controller | |
| Path: D:\project\PAC\AX8\AX8 LINU. 🔽 🗌 Protected Package 🛓 | Gateway-1 | Add Gateway |
| Vendor: Delta Electronics, Inc. | B8PCE1T19350023 [0301.400A] 88PCE1T19350023 | Add Device |
| Device Type: 4102 | Device Address: | |
| Device ID: 16F7 0411 | 0301.400A | Delete |
| Device Version: 3.5.15.0 | | Scan Network |
| Mini FW Version: 1.0.0.0 | Block driver: | Wink |
| ▷ Integrity Details | | |
| Online Device | Number of channels: | |
| Browse | 8 | |
| Device Name: | Serial number: | |
| Device Address: | 001823868BD6 | |
| Device Type: | | |
| Device ID: | Target ID: 16F7 0411 | |
| Device Version: | | |
| ⊿ Update Progress | Target Name: | |
| Progress: | | |
| | | Cancel |
| Update | OK | Cancel .: |

D.1.4 Update

Click Update to start firmware update.





Industrial Automation Headquarters

Delta Electronics, Inc. Taoyuan Technology Center No.18, Xinglong Rd., Taoyuan District, Taoyuan City 330477, Taiwan TEL: +886-3-362-6301 / FAX: +886-3-371-6301

Asia

Delta Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd. No.182 Minyu Rd., Pudong Shanghai, P.R.C. Post code : 201209

TEL: +86-21-6872-3988 / FAX: +86-21-6872-3996 Customer Service: 400-820-9595

Delta Electronics (Japan), Inc. Industrial Automation Sales Department 2-1-14 Shibadaimon, Minato-ku Tokyo, Japan 105-0012 TEL: +81-3-5733-1155 / FAX: +81-3-5733-1255

Delta Electronics (Korea), Inc. 1511, 219, Gasan Digital 1-Ro., Geumcheon-gu, Seoul, 08501 South Korea TEL: +82-2-515-5305 / FAX: +82-2-515-5302

Delta Energy Systems (Singapore) Pte Ltd. 4 Kaki Bukit Avenue 1, #05-04, Singapore 417939 TEL: +65-6747-5155 / FAX: +65-6744-9228

Delta Electronics (India) Pvt. Ltd. Plot No.43, Sector 35, HSIIDC Gurgaon, PIN 122001, Haryana, India

TEL: +91-124-4874900 / FAX: +91-124-4874945

Delta Electronics (Thailand) PCL.

909 Soi 9, Moo 4, Bangpoo Industrial Estate (E.P.Z), Pattana 1 Rd., T.Phraksa, A.Muang, Samutprakarn 10280, Thailand TEL: +66-2709-2800 / FAX: +66-2709-2827

Delta Electronics (Australia) Pty Ltd.

Unit 2, Building A, 18-24 Ricketts Road, Mount Waverley, Victoria 3149 Australia Mail: IA.au@deltaww.com TEL: +61-1300-335-823 / +61-3-9543-3720

Americas

Delta Electronics (Americas) Ltd. 5101 Davis Drive, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, U.S.A. TEL: +1-919-767-3813

Delta Electronics Brazil Ltd.

Estrada Velha Rio-São Paulo, 5300 Eugênio de Melo - São José dos Campos CEP: 12247-004 - SP - Brazil TEL: +55-12-3932-2300 / FAX: +55-12-3932-237

Delta Electronics International Mexico S.A. de C.V.

Gustavo Baz No. 309 Edificio E PB 103 Colonia La Loma, CP 54060 Tlalnepantla, Estado de México TEL: +52-55-3603-9200

EMEA

Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.

Sales: Sales.IA.EMEA@deltaww.com Marketing: Marketing.IA.EMEA@deltaww.com Technical Support: iatechnicalsupport@deltaww.com Customer Support: Customer-Support@deltaww.com Service: Service.IA.emea@deltaww.com TEL: +31(0)40 800 3900

Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.

Automotive Campus 260, 5708 JZ Helmond, The Netherlands Mail: Sales.IA.Benelux@deltaww.com TEL: +31(0)40 800 3900

Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.

Coesterweg 45, D-59494 Soest, Germany Mail: Sales.IA.DACH@deltaww.com TEL: +49 2921 987 238

Delta Electronics (France) S.A.

ZI du bois Challand 2,15 rue des Pyrénées, Lisses, 91090 Evry Cedex, France Mail: Sales.IA.FR@deltaww.com TEL: +33(0)1 69 77 82 60

Delta Electronics Solutions (Spain) S.L.U

Ctra. De Villaverde a Vallecas, 265 1º Dcha Ed. Hormigueras – P.I. de Vallecas 28031 Madrid TEL: +34(0)91 223 74 20 Carrer Llacuna 166, 08018 Barcelona, Spain

Carrer Llacuna 166, 08018 Barcelona, Spair Mail: Sales.IA.Iberia@deltaww.com

Delta Electronics (Italy) S.r.l.

Via Meda 2–22060 Novedrate(CO) Piazza Grazioli 18 00186 Roma Italy Mail: Sales.IA.Italy@deltaww.com TEL: +39 039 8900365

Delta Greentech Elektronik San. Ltd. Sti. (Turkey)

Şerifali Mah. Hendem Cad. Kule Sok. No:16-A 34775 Ümraniye – İstanbul Mail: Sales.IA.Turkey@deltaww.com TEL: + 90 216 499 9910

Eltek Dubai (Eltek MEA DMCC)

OFFICE 2504, 25th Floor, Saba Tower 1, Jumeirah Lakes Towers, Dubai, UAE Mail: Sales.IA.MEA@deltaww.com TEL: +971(0)4 2690148